

Eye  ounds.org

The Best Hits Bookshelf

Volume 2: Popular Tutorials

First Edition

March 2018



copyright 2018.

The University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology & Visual Sciences
Iowa City, Iowa

About this Book

This first edition book is a compilation of 50 case and tutorial articles featured on our website, EyeRounds.org. These articles have the most online “hits” and were hand-selected for their popularity and impact. They are among some of our most recent and high-yield content. Popularity will, of course, change over time so future editions will likely contain a different mixture of articles.

The content is arranged first by type (case or tutorial) and then subspecialty (Cornea and External Disease, Cataract, Glaucoma, Neuro-Ophthalmology, Oculoplastics, Pediatrics and Strabismus, Retina and Vitreous, and On-Call and Trauma.)

About EyeRounds.org

Ophthalmology Grand Rounds and EyeRounds.org is a website of the University of Iowa Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences in Iowa City, Iowa. On EyeRounds.org, you will find case reports from our daily morning rounds, high-quality atlas images, videos, and online tutorials. EyeRounds.org is an ever-growing resource for students, residents, physicians, and patients. Over time, EyeRounds has gained momentum, now impacting learners all over the globe. Daily, the website receives thousands of hits from over 40 countries.

EyeRounds.org Content

The content on EyeRounds.org is produced by our physicians and is intended for medical students, residents, and physicians.

What is not in this book?

EyeRounds.org atlas images and videos, though very popular with our users, have been excluded from this compilation due to their nature. We invite you to explore the EyeRounds atlas at EyeRounds.org/atlas where you will find hundreds of pages of interesting and educational short items with images of interest. EyeRounds videos can be found at EyeRounds.org/video. Videos have been collected from a variety of sources created over the years by residents, faculty, and fellows of the University of Iowa Department of Ophthalmology & Visual Sciences.

Think before you act...

Disclaimer

Content is made available for review purposes only.

Much of the material from EyeRounds.org is gathered from Grand Rounds presentations.

The intent of Grand Rounds is to initiate discussion and stimulate thought, as a result, EyeRounds articles may contain information that is not medically proven fact and ***should not be used to guide treatment***.

Opinions expressed are not necessarily those of the University of Iowa, the Carver College of Medicine, nor the Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences.

For more details, see our terms of use at EyeRounds.org/TOS.htm

Funding Support

EyeRounds.org is partially supported by unrestricted funds from The University of Iowa Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences and from The Iowa Eye Association, neither of whom have influence on the content of this site.

March 8, 2018



Dedication of this Work

Patricia (Trish) Duffel has a B.S. in Pharmacy from the University of Texas, Austin (1976) and an M.A. in Library and Information Science from the University of Iowa (1991). Having earned her pharmacy degree in the days before the Pharm D degree became generally accepted, Trish is a registered pharmacist (RPh). Since 1991, she has been the solo librarian for the Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences at the University of Iowa and the Executive Director and Editor of EyeRounds.org since 2007. In her almost 27 years in the department, she has held many roles including library manager, literature searcher, information chaser, newsletter writer/editor, copy editor, webmaster, and educator.

Trish goes above and beyond, working tirelessly to support and see to the success of residents, fellows, scientists and physicians in the department. Her powerful work ethic, contagious energy, can-do attitude, and unwavering devotion to those around her has made her a favorite among faculty and trainees. She is a treasure trove of knowledge, a forever learner, and a truly incredible human being. For all that she has done for education at the University of Iowa Department of Ophthalmology and Vision Sciences and EyeRounds.org, we dedicate this work to Trish.

EyeRounds Board 2017-2018

Lorraine A. Provencher, MD

Chief Medical Editor, June 2017 - present
Editorial Board Member, July 2016 - present
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Ophthalmology Resident

Lindsay M. DeAndrade, MD

Editorial Board Member, July 2016 - present
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Ophthalmology Resident

Benjamin J. Janson, MD

Editorial Board Member January 2018 - present
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Ophthalmology Resident

Brittini Scruggs, MD, PhD

Editorial Board Member, July 2017 - present
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Ophthalmology Resident

Heather A. Stiff, MD

Editorial Board Member January 2018 - present
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Ophthalmology Resident

Daniel Terveen, MD

Editorial Board Member, July 2017 - present
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Ophthalmology Resident

Thomas A. Oetting, MD

Editor and Co-Founder, EyeRounds.org
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Professor of Clinical Ophthalmology

Wallace L.M. Alward, MD

Editorial Board Member
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Professor of Ophthalmology

Mark Greiner, MD

Editorial Board Member
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Assistant Professor of Ophthalmology

Pavlina Kemp, MD

Editorial Board Member
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Assistant Professor of Clinical Ophthalmology

Patricia G. (Trish) Duffel, RPh, MA

Executive Director and Editor, EyeRounds.org
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Librarian

Kelsey Hunold, BFA

Assistant Director and Editor, EyeRounds.org
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Web and Social Media Coordinator

Advisory Members

Andrew Doan, MD, PhD

Co-Founder EyeRounds.org
Comprehensive Ophthalmology & Ocular Pathology
San Diego, California

Jordan M. Graff, MD

Editorial Board Member
Alumnus, Resident (2007), Vitreoretinal Fellow (2009)
Arizona

Matthew C. Weed, MD

Editorial Board Member
Alumnus, Resident (2014), Ophthalmic Genetics Fellow (2015), Pediatric Ophthalmology Fellow (2016)
Pediatric Ophthalmologist
Spokane, WA

Thomas A. Weingeist, MD, PhD

Editor and Co-Founder, EyeRounds.org
University of Iowa
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences
Emeritus Head
Professor of Ophthalmology

Contents

Volume 1: CASE PRESENTATIONS	1-142
Cornea and External Disease	1-18
Salzmann’s Nodular Corneal Degeneration.....	2-8
Treatment of Epithelial Basement Membrane Dystrophy with Manual Superficial Keratectomy.....	9-13
Acute Corneal Hydrops.....	14-18
Cataract.....	19-33
Marfan Syndrome	20-23
Posterior Polar Cataract	24-28
True Exfoliation Syndrome	29-33
Glaucoma.....	34-59
Aphakic Glaucoma.....	35-39
Uveitis Glaucoma Hyphema (UGH) Syndrome	40-44
Aqueous Misdirection	45-49
Hypotony: Late hypotony from trabeculectomy & Ahmed Seton	50-55
Posner-Schlossman Syndrome (Glaucomatocyclitic Crisis)	56-59
Neuro-Ophthalmology.....	60-82
Functional Visual Loss	61-65
Ocular Tilt Reaction	66-70
Ethambutol Toxicity and Optic Neuropathy	71-76
Optic Neuritis	77-82
Oculoplastic Surgery.....	83-106
“ I Can’t Open My Eyes”: A Case of Blepharospasm and Apraxia of Eyelid Opening.....	84-86
Carotid Cavernous Fistula.....	87-90
Chalazion: acute presentation and recurrence in a 4-year-old female	91-95
Bell’s Palsy Treated with Facial Nerve Decompression	96-102
Vertical Oscillopsia: A Case of Superior Oblique Myokymia.....	103-106
Pediatric Ophthalmology & Strabismus	107-118
Orbital Cellulitis in a Child	108-111
Congenital dacryocystocele with spontaneous resolution.....	112-114
Phlyctenular Keratoconjunctivitis: 12-year-old Female with Staphylococcal Blepharitis	115-118
Retina and Vitreous.....	119-142
Intraocular Foreign Body: A Classic Case of Metal on Metal Eye Injury	120-123
Idiopathic Juxtafoveal Telangiectasia Type II (Macular Telangiectasia type 2)	124-130
Vitreous Syneresis: An Impending Posterior Vitreous Detachment (PVD)	131-135
Fungal endophthalmitis.....	136-142

Volume 2: TUTORIALS.....	143-331
Cornea and External Disease	143-187
Corneal Imaging: An Introduction	144-155
Introduction to Corneal Transplantation	156-167
Epithelial-Stromal and Stromal Corneal Dystrophies	168-176
Ocular Surface Tumors	177-187
Cataract.....	188-193
Patient Communication during Cataract Surgery	189-191
Ten Tips to Prevent and Treat Iris Prolapse	192-193
Glaucoma.....	194-214
Medical Management of Glaucoma	195-200
MIGS: Minimally Invasive Glaucoma Surgery	201-214
Neuro-Ophthalmology.....	215-244
Visual Field Testing	216-223
Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension (Pseudotumor Cerebri)	224-235
Nystagmus and Saccadic Oscillations	236-244
Oculoplastic Surgery.....	245-289
Benign Lesions of the External Periocular Tissues	246-253
Malignant Lesions of the External Periocular Tissues	256-261
Thyroid Eye Disease.....	262-279
Nasolacrimal Stents.....	280-286
Retrobulbar Block, Peribulbar Block, and Common Nerve Blocks Used by Ophthalmologists	287-289
Pediatric Ophthalmology & Strabismus	290-305
Pediatric Spectacle Prescription and Retinoscopy Made Simple.....	291-296
Binocular Vision.....	297-308
Retina & Vitreous	306-319
Intravitreal Injection Technique.....	307-314
Full Thickness Macular Hole.....	315-319
On-Call and Trauma	320-331
Bedside Ocular Exam.....	321-322
Ocular Ultrasound: A quick reference guide for the on-call physician	323-327
Emergent Evaluation of Eyelid Lacerations.....	328-331

EyeRounds.org

Tutorials

Cornea and External Disease

Corneal Imaging: An Introduction

Miles F. Greenwald, BS, Brittini A. Scruggs, MD, PhD, Jesse M. Vislisel, MD, Mark A. Greiner, MD

October 19, 2016

Introduction

Imaging techniques for assessing the structure and function of the cornea and anterior segment are crucial for diagnosing and treating a wide variety of ocular diseases. There is a huge variety of diagnostic testing available to ophthalmologists, and learning how to interpret these tests can seem daunting. For those beginning training in ophthalmology, the utilization of common diagnostic tests provides quicker and more accurate diagnosis and management of corneal diseases. The goal of this tutorial is to explain the basics of the most commonly used corneal imaging techniques at the University of Iowa, including an overview of how they work and how each modality is used in clinical practice.

Corneal Topography and Tomography

Basic Principles

Corneal topography is used to characterize the shape of the cornea, similar to how one would characterize a mountain using a topographic map. Originally, corneal topography was only used to describe the anterior surface of the cornea. Devices now are able to characterize both the anterior and posterior corneal surfaces, creating a three dimensional map. Advances in digital photography and computer processing have vastly increased the utility of corneal topography (1).

The first advancement in assessing the shape of the anterior corneal surface was made in the late 1800s with the development of the Placido disc (Figure 1A) (1-2). This technique characterizes the corneal surface by assessing the reflection of a set of concentric rings off the anterior corneal surface. As the image from the Placido disc is projected on the cornea, some of the light is reflected off the tear film-air interface like a mirror. The pattern of light reflection reveals the shape of the anterior surface of the cornea (1). Similarly, hand-held keratoscopes (Figure 1B-C) are practical instruments that display concentric rings at the slit lamp for quick assessment of topographical changes (*e.g.*, astigmatism induced by sutures). The posterior corneal surface cannot be characterized using Placido disc technology or a hand-held keratoscope. Many topography machines rings (*e.g.*, Atlas, NIDEK OPD-Scan) still utilize Placido discs but take the technique a step further, providing a computerized quantitative assessment of the corneal surface to provide more detailed information than one can appreciate by simply looking at the reflected.

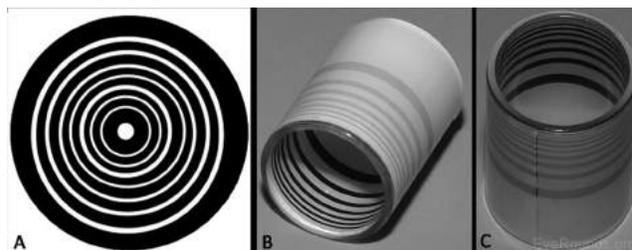


Figure 1. Qualitative corneal topography. A. Placido disc with concentric white circles. B-C. The Van Loenen cylindrical hand-held keratoscope when placed in front of a patient's eye at the slit lamp will reflect seven rings onto the corneal surface to quickly assess for qualitative topographical changes

A second technique for corneal topographic assessment is the scanning slit technique (*e.g.*, Orbscan). This method uses rapidly scanning projected slit beams of light and a camera to capture the reflected beams to create a map of the anterior and posterior corneal surface. A third technique, known as Scheimpflug imaging, uses a rotating camera to photograph corneal cross-sections illuminated by slit beams at different angles (*e.g.*, Pentacam). This method corrects for the non-planar shape of the cornea and, thus, allows greater accuracy and resolution in creating a 3-D map of the cornea (2-3).

Placido disc interpretation

Placido disc images can be interpreted both qualitatively and quantitatively. The projected concentric rings are referred to as "mires." The shape of the corneal surface can be inferred by inspection of these mires. Similar to a topographic map of a mountain, areas where the mires appear closer together correspond to steeper corneal curvature. Areas where the mires are more widely spaced are flatter. The mires can also give information regarding the quality of the surface. Distinct, well-formed mires are referred to as "crisp" and suggest the underlying corneal surface to be regular and smooth.

As an ideal sphere, the cornea should have mires equally spaced over its entire surface (Figure 2A). Minor, insignificant variations are present in every cornea but may not be detectable on qualitative inspection of a Placido disc image. For example, distorted or wavy mires suggest surface irregularities, such as those caused by surface dryness (Figure 2B). Regular astigmatism results in mires that appear ovoid (Figure 2C). If irregular astigmatism is present, this may be seen as an irregularly distorted reflection of the

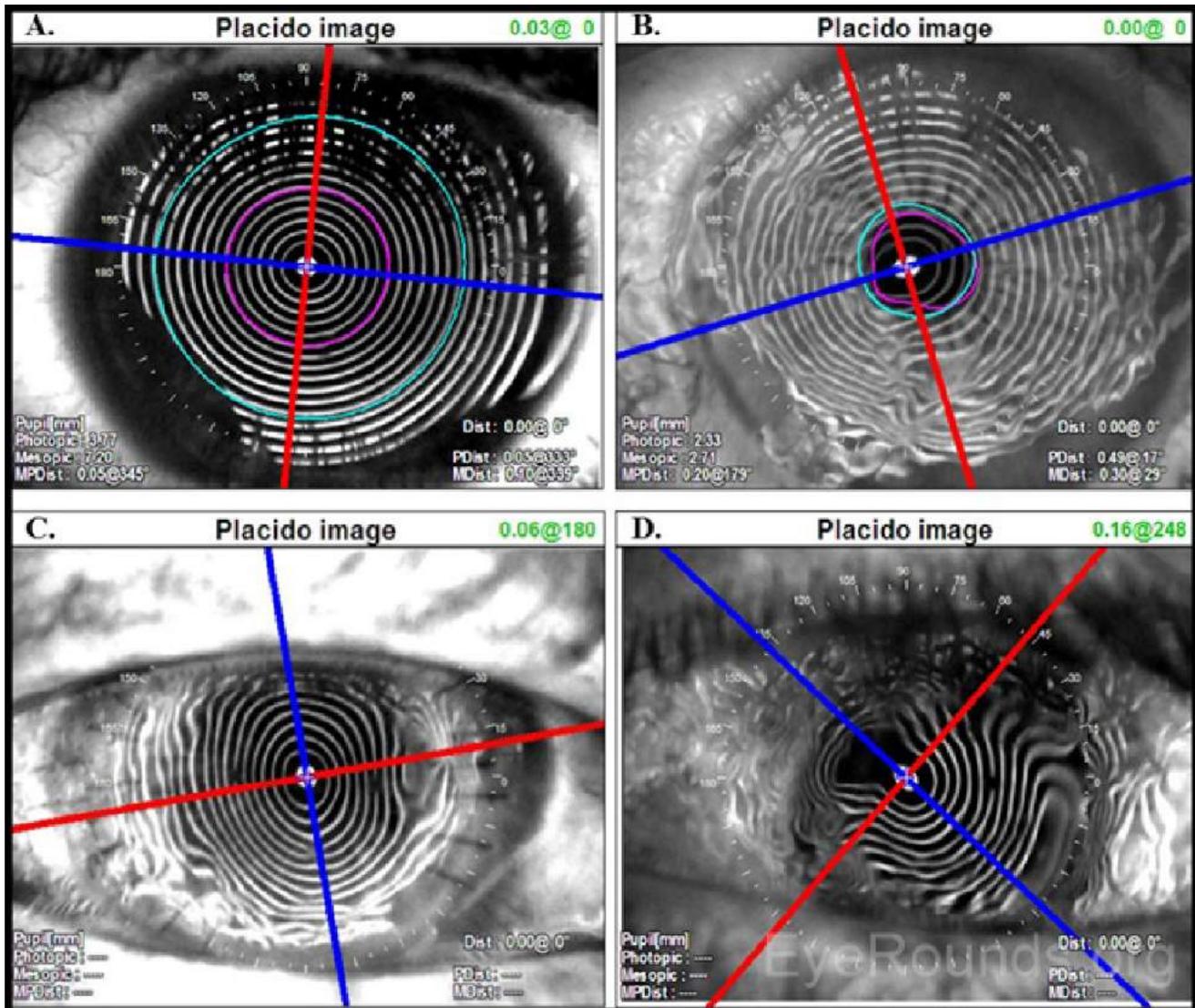


Figure 2. Projection of Placido disc mires on (A) a normal cornea with crisp mires and minimal astigmatism, (B) a cornea with surface dryness, (C) a cornea with regular against-the-rule astigmatism within a full-thickness corneal transplant, and (D) a cornea with irregular astigmatism within a full-thickness corneal transplant. Placido images can help guide selective suture removal; for example, the sutures in (C) could be removed at 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock, clinical course permitting, to reduce the post-operative astigmatism.

mires (Figure 2D). Placido disc evaluation can also be used to guide suture removal following penetrating keratoplasty. Selectively removing sutures can reduce post-operative astigmatism (Figure 2C).

Zeiss Atlas and NIDEK OPD-Scan Interpretation

The Zeiss Atlas and NIDEK OPD-Scan are Placido disc-based topographers. As shown in Figure 3, the Zeiss Atlas report includes a Placido disc image and several maps that provide information regarding tangential curvature, axial curvature, and elevation. A tangential, or instantaneous, map is very similar to an axial map. It is a slightly more accurate way of characterizing the corneal curvature but appears more "noisy" and irregular. Axial maps are less

sensitive at measuring the corneal curvature and, thus, are used mainly for screening purposes (4-5).

Similar to a Zeiss Atlas report, the NIDEK imaging report (figure 4) provides an axial curvature map and a Placido disc image. The NIDEK instrument also provides keratometry data, which are simulated measurements providing the dioptric refractive power in the two primary meridians. The patient's refractive error is approximated using both the autorefraction (REF) and wavefront (WF) measurements, and this refraction estimate is available in the auto-refraction window of the NIDEK report. Two additional maps are included from the NIDEK testing that are not available by other modalities: the Optical Path Difference (OPD) and the Internal OPD maps. The OPD specifically detects the total refractive error (in diopters) in the eye, including aberrations in the cornea, lens and other

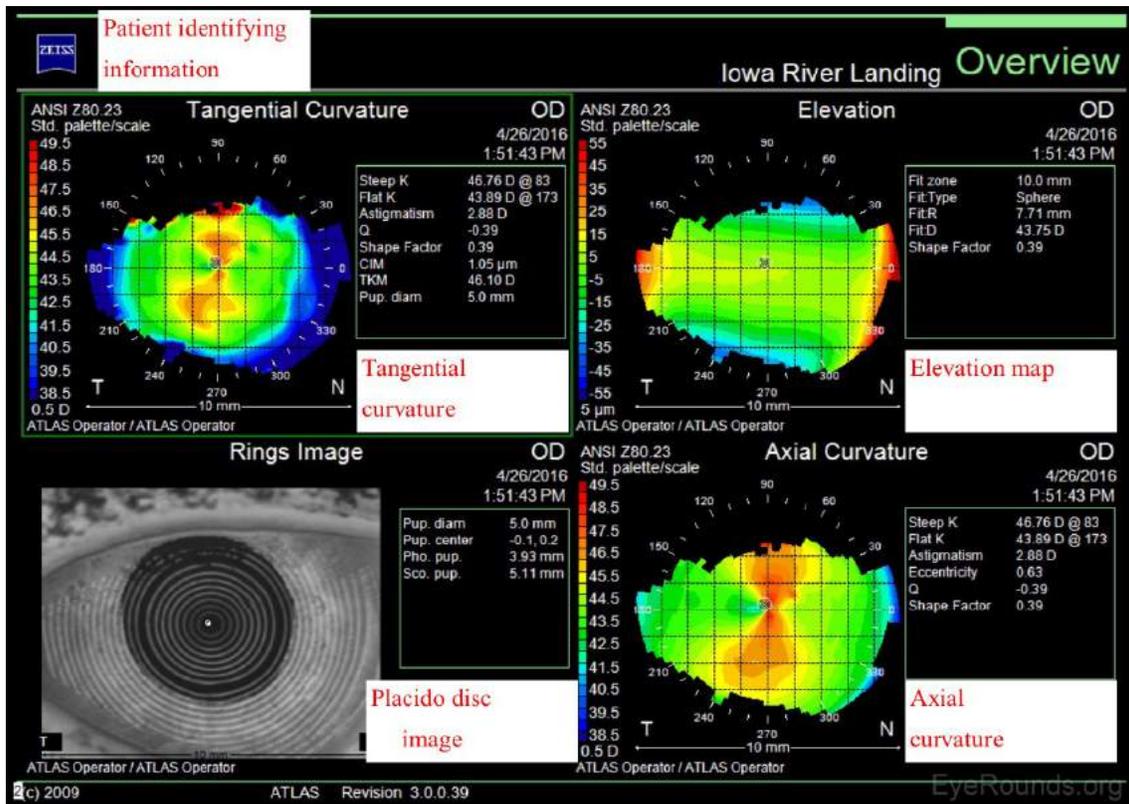


Figure 3. Zeiss Atlas Report. The tangential and axial curvature maps both show with-the-rule corneal astigmatism with more plus power in the vertical meridian. Specifically, the steepest meridian is at 083 degrees, and there are 2.88 diopters of astigmatism. The Placido disc image shows regular, concentric mires, indicating a healthy corneal surface.

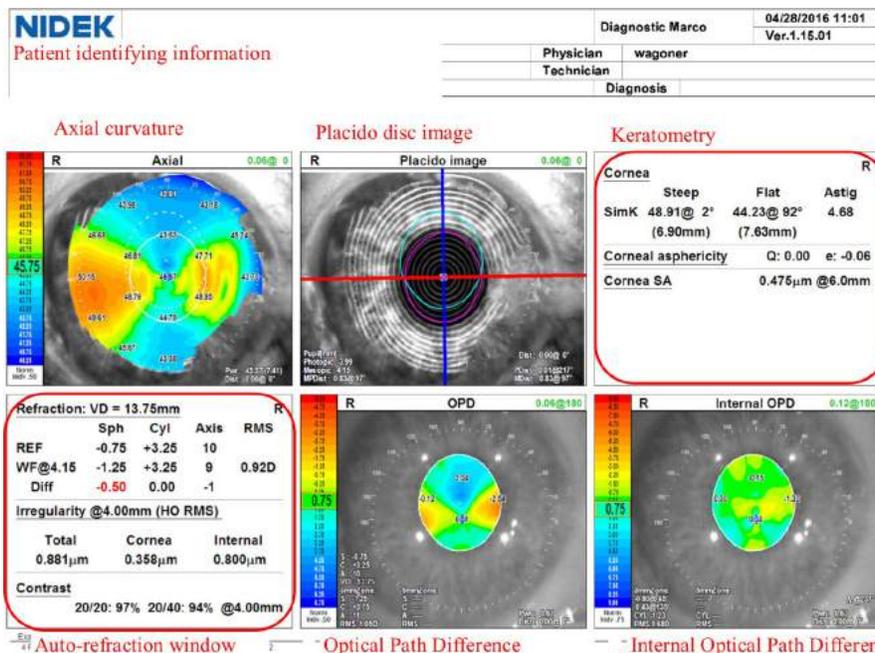


Figure 4. NIDEK Report. Upper panes: The axial curvature map shows against-the-rule corneal astigmatism with more plus power in the horizontal meridian. The Placido disc image shows concentric mires with some irregularity in the inferonasal region of the cornea. The steepest meridian is at 002 degrees, and there are 4.68 diopters of astigmatism. Lower panes: Both the autorefractometer (REF) and wavefront (WF) measurements estimate the patient having mild myopia (-0.75 to -1.25) with significant astigmatism correction (+3.25) in the horizontal meridian (009 to 010 degrees). The total refractive error is estimated using the optical path difference (OPD) to be -0.75 diopters with +3.25 of astigmatism at axis 010.

structures, whereas the Internal OPD map captures the refractive error contributed by *internal* structures of the eye by subtracting the corneal refractive power from the total OPD. Also measured in diopters, this measurement helps differentiate the effects of corneal and surface refractive error from internal aberrations (e.g., lenticular anomalies).

Pentacam Interpretation

The Oculus Pentacam utilizes Scheimpflug technology to create topographic reports. The reports contain a great deal of information, and samples of the overview report and the 4 maps report are provided below (Figure 5A-B). Specifically, the overview report provides the Scheimpflug image, which is a cross-sectional image showing the cornea, anterior chamber, iris, and lens. A 3-D representation of the patient's corneal shape is also provided. The density of the cornea is evaluated using densitometry, which is an objective measurement of light scatter in the cornea. Any densitometry value less than ~30 is considered normal; thus, a condition resulting in decreased corneal clarity (e.g., corneal edema) will increase the densitometry value. There is also a convenient summary of the keratometry, pachymetry, and other numeric measurements in this report. A pachymetry color map indicates corneal thickness.

The Pentacam 4 maps report also provides a summary of keratometry, pachymetry with map, and other numeric measurements. Similar to the NIDEK report, the Pentacam report includes an axial map that depicts the curvature of the anterior corneal surface in dioptric values for each point.

Anterior float and posterior float images, which are elevation maps, are generated on the Pentacam report. Instead of displaying the refractive power of the cornea, elevation maps display the shape of the cornea by comparing it to a computer-generated best-fit sphere (i.e., a perfect sphere that best approximates the corneal shape on average). Posterior float, similar to the anterior float, shows the shape of the posterior cornea compared to a best-fit sphere.

Clinical Uses of Corneal Topography

Screening for corneal ectasia

Keratoconus [EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/keratoconus/index.htm](https://www.eyerounds.org/atlas/pages/keratoconus/index.htm), the most common corneal ectasia, is a progressive corneal condition characterized by central thinning and steepening of the cornea. Early keratoconus often looks normal on slit lamp examination, and manual keratometry, which assesses the central 3 mm, may give an insufficient assessment. Because of this, topography has become the gold standard for screening patients for keratoconus and other corneal ectasias (Figures 6-8).

Corneal ectasia monitoring and treatment

Once an ectasia (e.g., keratoconus, Pellucid marginal corneal degeneration [EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Pellucid-marginal-degeneration/](https://www.eyerounds.org/atlas/pages/Pellucid-marginal-degeneration/)) is diagnosed, topography may be

useful for monitoring disease progression. With regular surveillance topography, it can be determined when patients are at risk for progression and complications, and this precise monitoring allows early intervention with treatments such as collagen cross-linking or keratoplasty. Topographic warning signs include high central corneal power, a large difference between the two corneas of a patient, and a large disparity between the refractive power at the apex and the periphery (Figures 6-8) (5).

Refractive surgery screening and monitoring

Laser refractive surgeries such as photorefractive keratectomy (PRK) [EyeRounds.org/video/Cornea/PRK.htm](https://www.eyerounds.org/video/Cornea/PRK.htm) and laser assisted in situ keratomileusis (LASIK) [EyeRounds.org/video/Cornea/LASIK.htm](https://www.eyerounds.org/video/Cornea/LASIK.htm) use excimer laser to ablate tissue and reshape the cornea to correct an individual's refractive error. Not every patient, however, can safely undergo these procedures. Screening must be performed to determine corneal shape and patterns of astigmatism on topography before refractive surgery can safely be performed. Topography can also be used post-operatively to evaluate etiology for unsatisfactory visual outcome such as decentered or incomplete ablations.

Pre-operative intraocular lens selection

During cataract surgery, an intraocular lens is placed in the eye to achieve the desired refractive outcome. Standard intraocular lenses only contain spherical correction. If a patient has regular corneal astigmatism, however, an astigmatism-correcting toric lens may be used. Corneal topography is a useful pre-operative test to assess the magnitude and regularity of corneal cylinder when selecting an intraocular lens implant prior to cataract surgery.

Post-keratoplasty astigmatism evaluation and management

After keratoplasty, corneal astigmatism can be evaluated with topography. This technology guides selective suture removal and other interventions to reduce levels of astigmatism.

Ocular surface disorder evaluation

Ocular surface disorders, such as pterygia [EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Pterygium.html](https://www.eyerounds.org/atlas/pages/Pterygium.html) corneal scars, and Salzmann nodules [EyeRounds.org/cases/180-Salzmann-Nodular-Corneal-Degeneration.htm](https://www.eyerounds.org/cases/180-Salzmann-Nodular-Corneal-Degeneration.htm), can induce irregular corneal astigmatism. Corneal topography can be used to evaluate the refractive effects of these problems and to aid in disease monitoring and surgical planning.

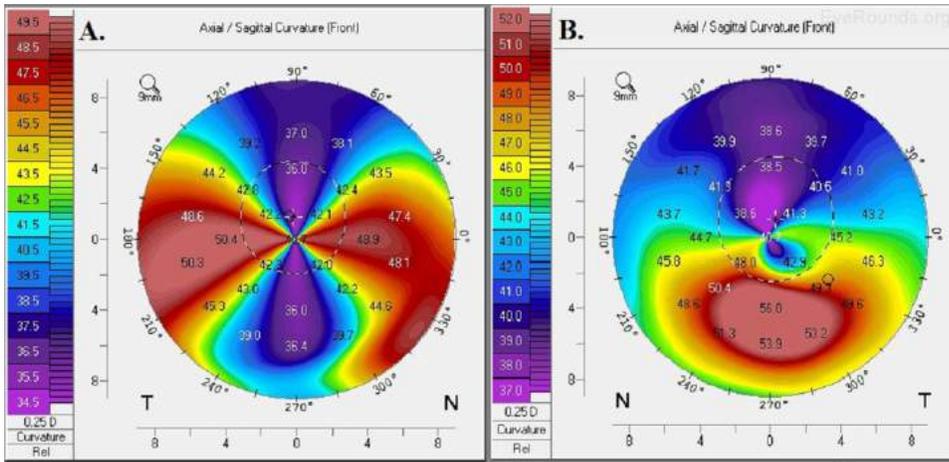


Figure 6. Pellucid marginal corneal degeneration (A) and keratoconus (B). Anterior axial maps generated with Oculus Pentacam technology shows the high against the rule astigmatism in a “crab claw” pattern of pellucid marginal corneal degeneration and the inferior steepening pattern of keratoconus.

Figure 7. Progression of keratoconus. Frequently the topography will show progression of keratoconus from symmetric astigmatism to asymmetric astigmatism, followed by asymmetric astigmatism pattern with a skewed radial axis. With progressive keratoconus, inferior steepening can ultimately develop.

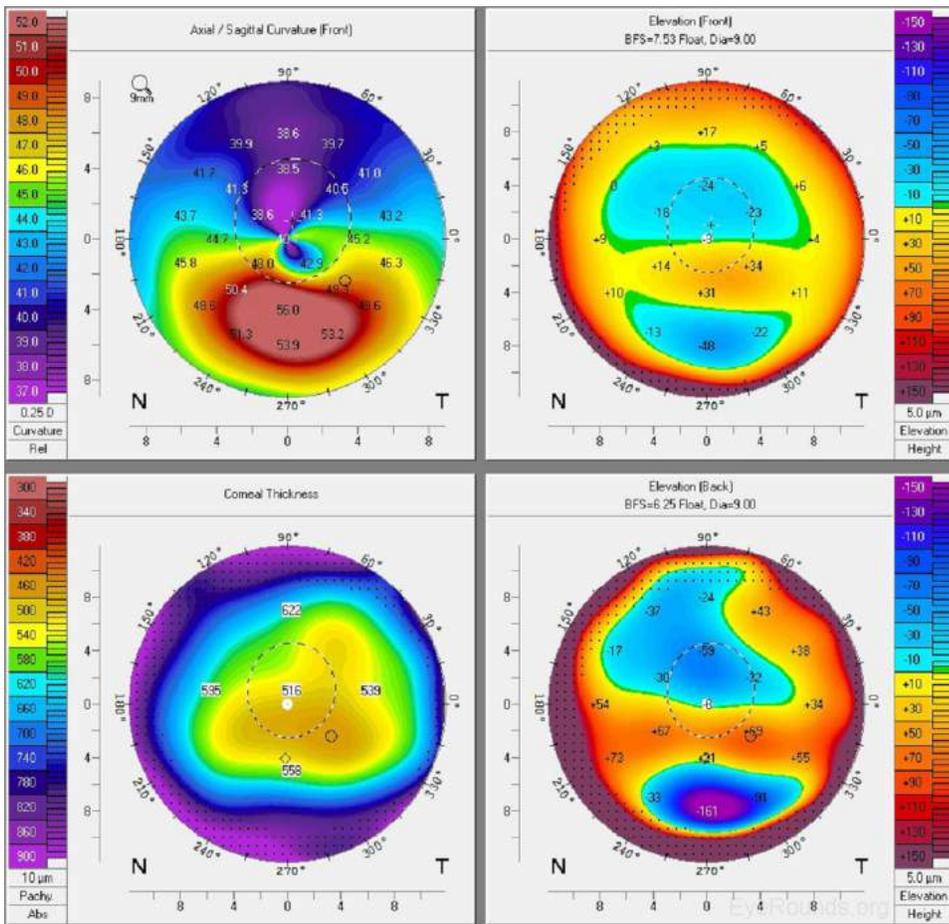
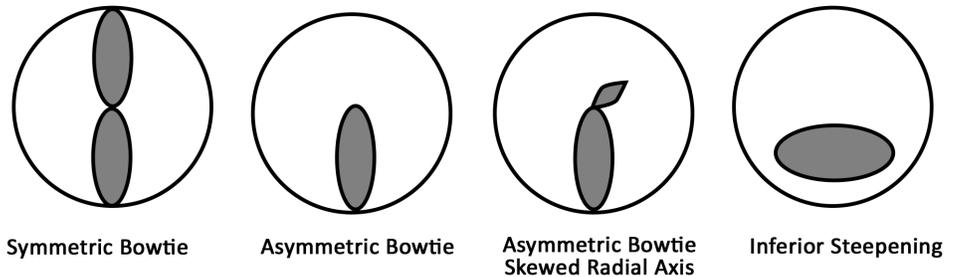


Figure 8. Keratoconus on Pentacam. The anterior axial map shows significant inferior paracentral steepening, while the pachymetry map shows thinning in the area of steepening. The anterior and posterior floats reveal a paracentral bulge, which suggests focal elevation compared to an ideal, spherical surface.

Anterior Segment Optical Coherence Tomography (AS-OCT)

Basic Principles

Anterior segment optical coherence tomography (AS-OCT) produces high-resolution imaging of the cornea, iris, and anterior chamber (e.g., Visante). It is analogous to ultrasound, but it utilizes light waves instead of sound to pro-

duce extremely high-resolution images of very small ocular structures (Figures 9 and 10). AS-OCT uses two scanning beams of light that are reflected off an ocular structure and then detected and compared to a reference beam to create a cross-sectional image (6).

Interpretation Guide

See figures 9 and 10.

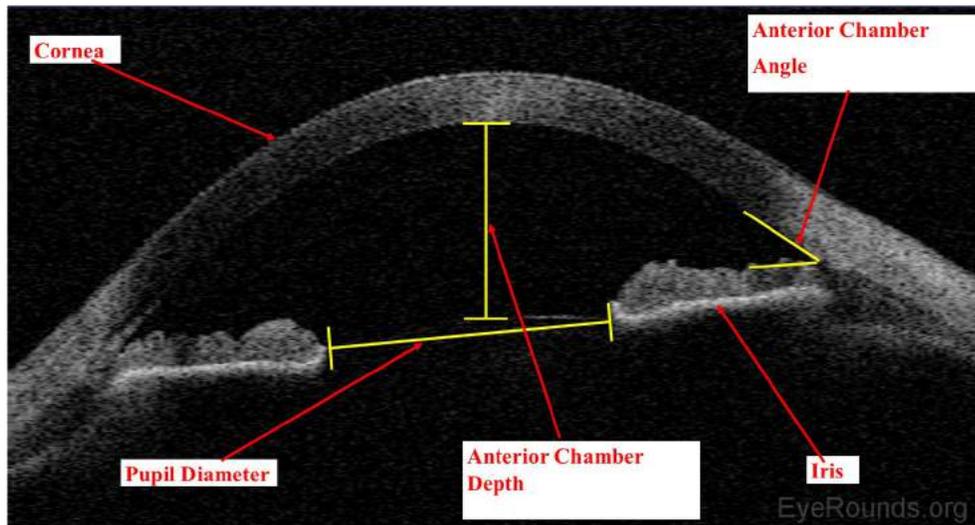


Figure 9. Visante AS-OCT showing normal anterior chamber anatomy, including the cornea, iris, iridocorneal angle, anterior chamber depth and pupil diameter.

Figure 10. Visante report showing a poorly-adherent Descemet's Membrane Endothelial Keratoplasty (DMEK) graft. The graft successfully adhered after another air bubble was placed within the anterior chamber. Each OCT image is a two-dimensional slice through the anterior chamber. The four orientation arrows, which are located above every OCT image, indicate the left side (arrow tail) and the right side (arrowhead) of the image. The angle of orientation is also displayed.

Image Analysis Report

ZEISS Patient identifying information

Laterality OD

Visante™ OCT ANTERIOR SEGMENT IMAGING

Protocol: All Scans
Scan: High Res. Corneal Quad

Orientation

The figure displays four AS-OCT slices arranged in a 2x2 grid. Each slice is labeled with an orientation angle: 180°, 0°, 270°, and 90°. Red arrows point to the orientation arrows above each slice. The EyeRounds.org logo is in the bottom right corner.

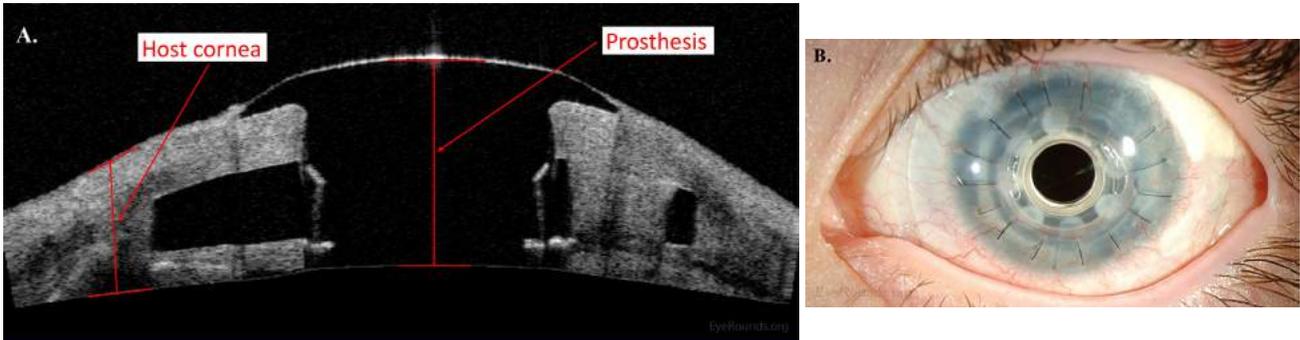


Figure 13. Type I Boston keratoprosthesis device as examined using (A) AS-OCT and (B) a slit lamp (8).

Confocal Microscopy

Basic principles

Confocal microscopy is an imaging technique that allows *in vivo* examination of corneal structures at high magnification and resolution. Building off of imaging principles developed for neuronal imaging, confocal microscopy was first used to study the cornea in the 1990s (9-10). The device (e.g., NIDEK Confoscan, Heidelberg HRTII) allows characterization of each of the five corneal layers

by simultaneously illuminating and imaging a single point of tissue (Figure 14) (11). The point light source and the camera are in the same plane, hence the name "confocal." Modern confocal microscopes scan small regions of tissue, illuminating and imaging thousands of points of tissue to create the final confocal image (10). By scanning different thickness levels of certain tissues in the anterior segment, significant information about structure and function at the cellular level can be gained.

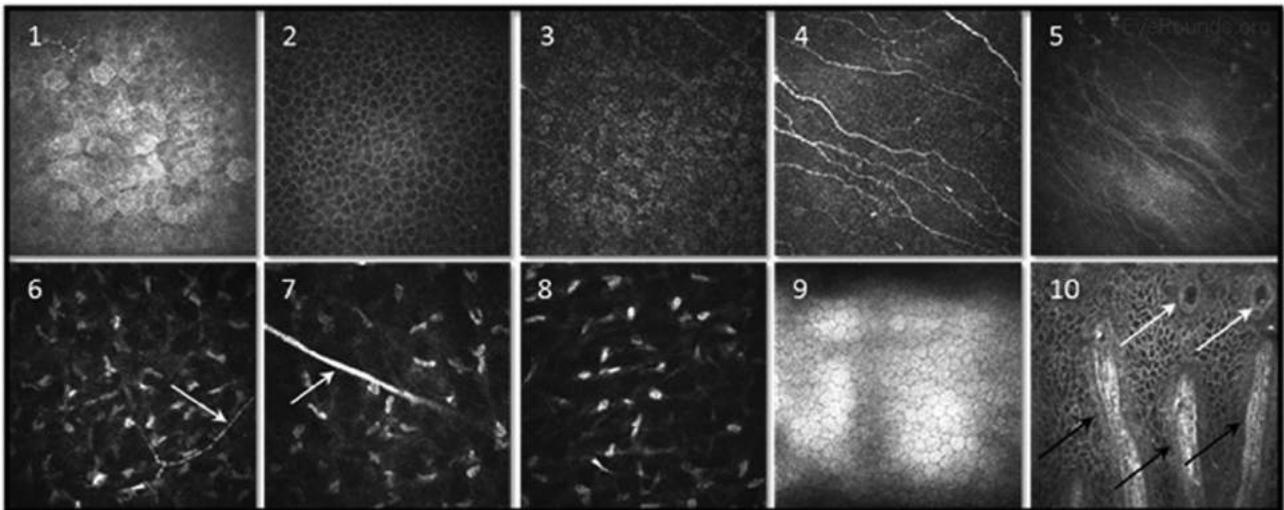


Figure 14. Confocal microscopy imaging of the various corneal layers using laser-scanning *in vivo* confocal technology. 1-3. Superficial epithelium, epithelial wing cell layer, and basal epithelium; 4. Subbasal nerve plexus; 5. Bowman's layer; 6-8. anterior stroma with nerve (arrow), mid stroma with nerve trunk (arrow), and posterior stroma; 9. Endothelium; and 10. Inferior limbal palisade ridges (black arrows) with focal stromal projections (white arrows). Image courtesy of Dr. Neil Lagali (Linköping University, Linköping, Sweden) (11).

Interpretation Guide

When used to assess endothelial cell health, both qualitative inspection of the endothelium and quantitative assessment of the endothelial cell density must be performed. Normal endothelial cells should appear small, hexagonal, and uniform. Pleomorphism is the presence of high varia-

tion in cell shape, while polymegathism is variation in cell size. Endothelial cell density can be obtained automatically or by manual counting and is expressed as cells/mm² (Figure 15).

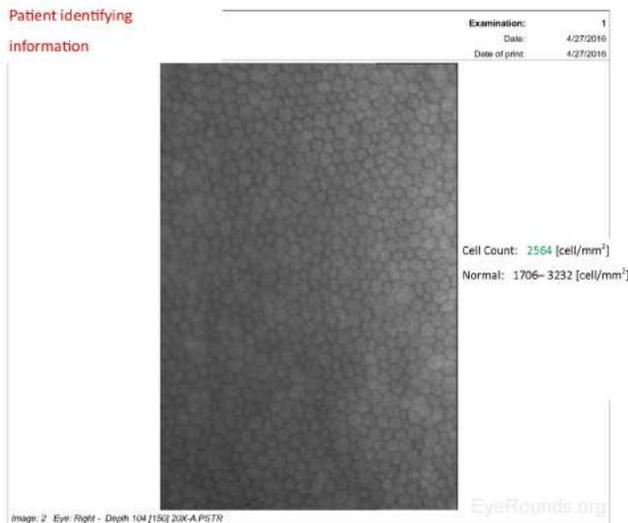


Figure 15. Confocal microscopy showing normal corneal endothelium. Note the small, hexagonal cells with minimal variation in cell size or shape.

Clinical Uses

Corneal endothelial assessment

Examination of the corneal endothelium at a cellular level allows qualitative and quantitative evaluation of the cells. Endothelial cell size, shape, and density can all be characterized, which provides important information for diagnosing and managing posterior corneal

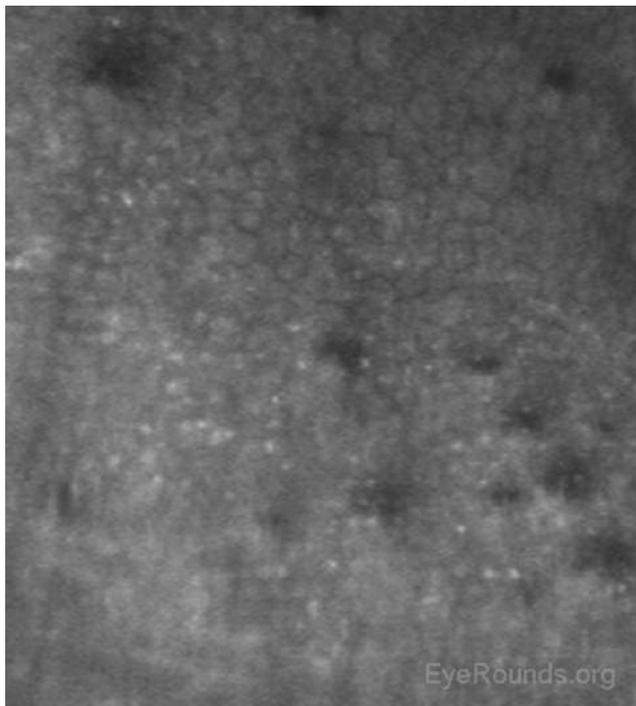


Figure 16. Fuchs endothelial dystrophy showing characteristic guttae (dark areas) and reduced endothelial cell density on confocal microscopy.

dystrophies, such as Fuchs dystrophy EyeRounds.org/cases/case5.htm (Figure 16), iridocorneal endothelial (ICE) syndrome EyeRounds.org/cases/case14.htm, and posterior polymorphous dystrophy EyeRounds.org/cases/208-PPMD.htm. The confocal microscope can help with diagnostic decisions, such as whether post-keratoplasty edema is due to corneal graft rejection (evidenced by inflammatory cells visualized) or endothelial decompensation (evidenced by low endothelial cell density) (Figure 17) (7, 10).

Identification of infectious keratitis

Infectious keratitis is a vision-threatening condition in which prompt diagnosis is imperative to preserve vision and the eye. Confocal microscopy is a useful adjunct to help rapidly identify the causative agent *in vivo*, such as fungi or *Acanthamoeba*, so appropriate treatment can be initiated. *Acanthamoeba* appear in their cystic form as highly-reflective ovoid structures (Figures 18 and 19). Fungi may appear as brightly reflective filaments and may have evidence of septations (Figure 20) (9).

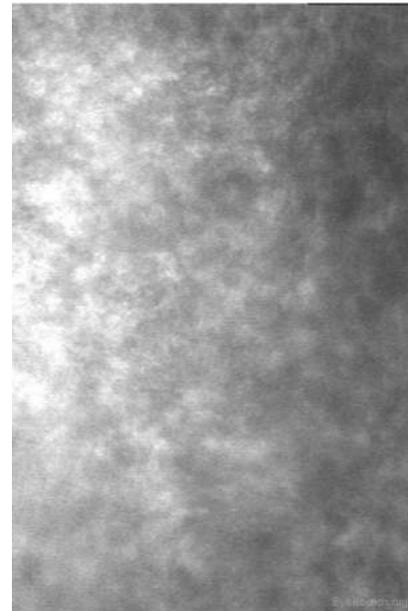


Figure 17. Endothelial decompensation within a penetrating keratoplasty graft. There are no identifiable endothelial cells on confocal microscopy.

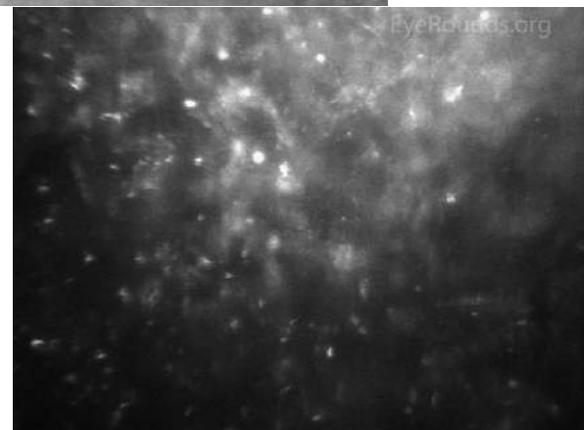


Figure 18. Acanthamoeba keratitis as seen on confocal microscopy. The cysts appear as high-contrast round objects while the trophozoites appear as irregular forms.

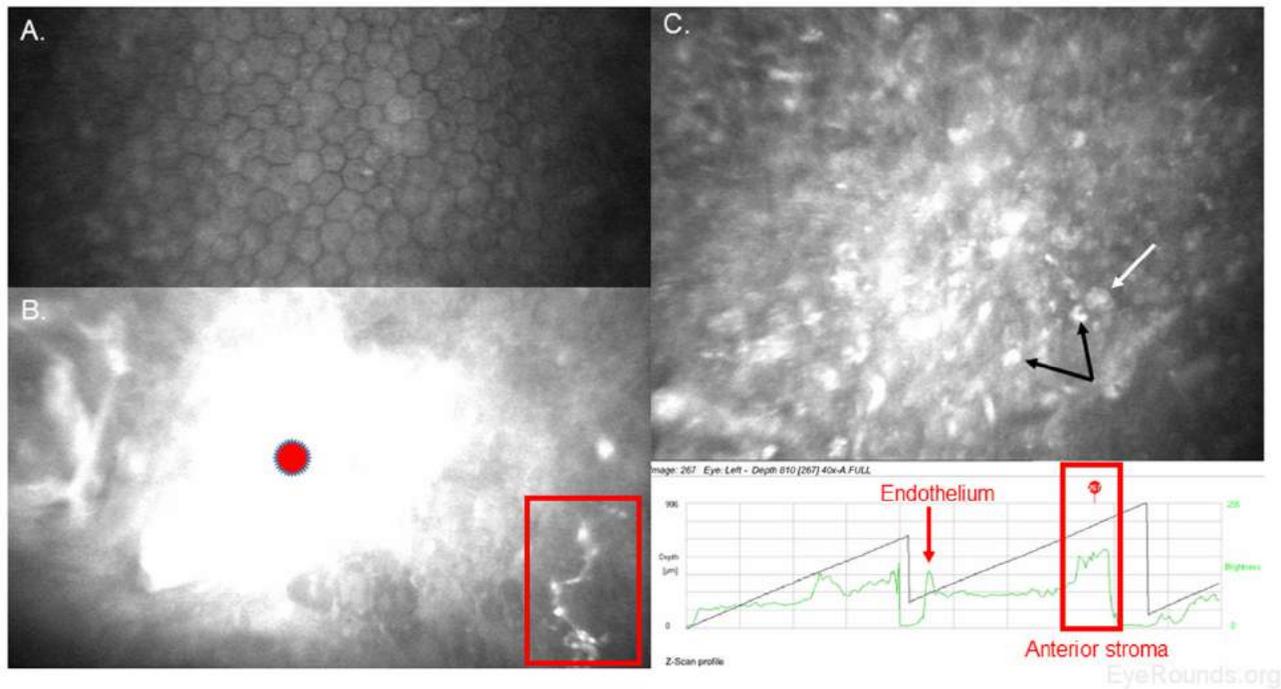


Figure 19. Confocal microscopy detection of Acanthamoeba and fungal keratitis in a contact lens user. A. Endothelial polymegathism, which is a sign of corneal stress, is likely a result of the patient's long-term contact lens use. No cysts or trophozoites are present in the endothelial layer. B. White blood cell recruitment (red circle) is evident in the anterior stroma directly adjacent to both Acanthamoeba cysts (white arrow) and fungal elements (red box). The Acanthamoeba trophozoites feed on hyphae if both infections are not promptly treated. C. Acanthamoeba double-walled cysts (white arrow) and trophozoites (black arrows) are present throughout the anterior stroma. The Z-scan profile depicts the backscatter (i.e., brightness of the individual confocal scans), which allows quick assessment of corneal location (red box) and cell density in the specific region.

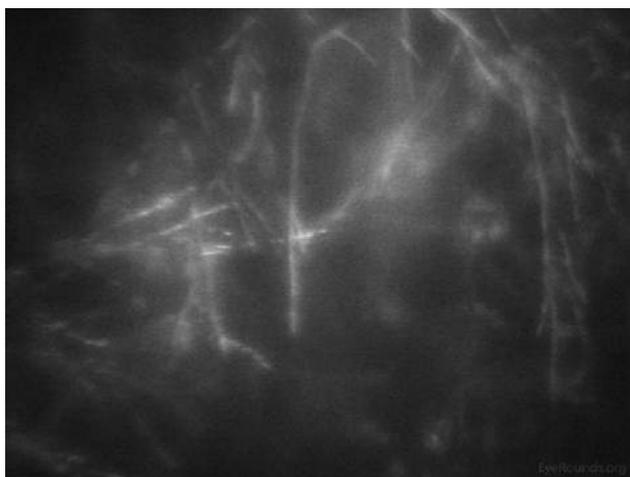


Figure 20. Fungal keratitis seen on confocal microscopy. Branching hyphae help confirm the diagnosis of Fusarium keratitis.

Corneal nerve morphology evaluation

Confocal microscopy can help quantify pathology of the subbasal nerve plexus in patients with neurotrophic keratopathy and diabetic neuropathy involving the cornea.

Corneal depth measurement

Similar to OCT, confocal microscopy can measure the depth of structures, such as deposits, scars, or LASIK flaps within the cornea to aid with surgical planning.

Summary

Ophthalmology is a rapidly advancing field with new technology for diagnosis and treatment being developed and implemented each year. As more advanced techniques (e.g., LASIK, endothelial keratoplasty) develop, the utility of advanced corneal imaging technique continues to grow. This tutorial has aimed to provide an overview of corneal imaging topics and to give trainees a foundation to build upon as they master the use of these fundamental tools of modern clinical ophthalmology.

References

1. Brody J, Waller S, Wagoner M. Corneal Topography: History, Technique, and Clinical Uses. *International Ophthalmology Clinics*. 1994;34(3):197-207. [PMID: 7960515]
2. Prakash G. Corneal topography. 2015. [Cited 2016 May 27]; Available from eyewiki.org/Corneal_topography
3. Hashemi H, Mehravaran S. Day to Day Clinically Relevant Corneal Elevation, Thickness, and Curvature Parameters Using the Orbscan II Scanning Slit Topographer and the Pentacam Scheimpflug Imaging Device. *Middle East Afr J Ophthalmol*. 2010;17(1):44-55. [PMID: 20543936]
4. Friedman N. Pearls for Interpreting Corneal Topography Maps. 2013. [Cited 2016 May 27]; Available from www.ophtalmologyweb.com/Featured-Articles/142292-Pearls-for-Interpreting-Corneal-Topography-Maps/
5. Lopes, B, Ramos, I, Dawson, D, et. al. Detection of Ectatic Corneal Diseases Based on Pentacam. *Z. Med. Phys.* 2016; 26(2): 136–142. [PMID: 26777318]
6. Radhakrishnana S. Anterior Segment Optical Coherence Tomography. 2014. [Cited 2016 May 27]; Available from eyewiki.aao.org/Anterior_Segment_Optical_Coherence_Tomography
7. Kent C. Making the Most of Anterior Segment OCT. 2011. [Cited 2016 May 27]; Available from www.reviewofophthalmology.com/content/i/1471/c/27717/
8. Goetz K, Vislisel JM, Raecker ME, Goins KM. Congenital Aniridia. March 10, 2015; Available from: EyeRounds.org/cases/211-Aniridia.htm [bit.ly/2CMwTHG]
9. Tavakoli M, Hossain P, Malik RA. Clinical applications of corneal confocal microscopy. *Clin Ophthalmol*. 2008;2(2):435-45. [PMID: 19668734]
10. Erie JC, McLaren JW, Patel SV. Confocal microscopy in ophthalmology. *Am J Ophthalmol*. 2009;148(5):639-46. [PMID 19674730]
11. Lagali N, Bourghardt Peebo B, Germundsson J, et. al. (2013). Laser-Scanning *in vivo* Confocal Microscopy of the Cornea: Imaging and Analysis Methods for Preclinical and Clinical Applications, Confocal Laser Microscopy. *Principles and Applications in Medicine, Biology, and the Food Sciences*, Neil Lagali (Ed.), InTech, Available from: bit.ly/2F6ETZD or www.intechopen.com/books/confocal-laser-microscopy-principles-and-applications-in-medicine-biology-and-the-food-sciences/laser-scanning-in-vivo-confocal-microscopy-of-the-cornea-imaging-and-analysis-methods-for-preclinical

Citing this article

Greenwald MF, Scruggs BA, Vislisel JM, Greiner MA. **Corneal Imaging: An Introduction**. EyeRounds.org. Posted October 19, 2016; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/corneal-imaging/index.htm

last updated: 10/19/2016

An Introduction to Corneal Transplantation

Christina L. Donaghy, BS, Jesse M. Vislisel, MD, Mark A. Greiner, MD

May 21, 2015

While full-thickness corneal transplant techniques have not changed much over the past century, lamellar corneal transplant techniques have evolved rapidly. To novices, the numerous acronyms that accompany the various corneal transplant techniques can easily become a disorienting alphabet soup. This article aims to introduce readers to the keratoplasty techniques that are most commonly used today (Figure 1).

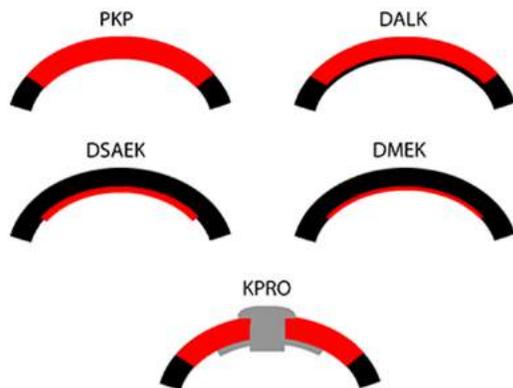


Figure 1: Schematic portraying the region of corneal tissue transplanted (red) for various modern keratoplasty techniques, including penetrating keratoplasty (PK), deep anterior lamellar keratoplasty (DALK), Descemet stripping automated endothelial keratoplasty (DSAEK), Descemet membrane endothelial keratoplasty (DMEK), and Boston Type I Keratoprosthesis (KPRO).

A Brief History of Keratoplasty

When Eduard Konrad Zirm performed the first successful full thickness penetrating keratoplasty in a human in 1905, he became the first person to perform a solid organ transplant. Ironically, he performed the surgery for one of the most challenging indications in ophthalmology – bilateral alkali burns (1-3). His donor was an 11-year-old boy whose eye was enucleated due to foreign body penetration and scleral injury. Emulating Zirm’s technique, surgeons began to perform corneal grafting over the subsequent 30 years using enucleated eyes of living donors (4). Vladomir Petrovich Filatov, a Russian ophthalmologist, became known for his work on eye banking in the early 1900s. He suggested using cadaver corneas as donor tissue and developed a method to do so (4).

Over the past century, keratoplasty techniques have evolved considerably. There were early efforts to devise selective tissue replacement techniques that might preserve healthy corneal tissue and avoid risks associated with full-thickness grafting. Anton Elschning performed the first anterior lamellar keratoplasty in 1914, for a case of interstitial keratitis. Charles Tillett performed the first successful endothelial keratoplasty (EK) case in 1956 for

corneal edema. However, the introduction of lamellar techniques actually propelled penetrating keratoplasty (PK) to the forefront of popularity after 1950 (1). Initially, anterior lamellar techniques were fraught with the problems of interface haze, scarring, and epithelial ingrowth. Tillett’s EK technique, although successful, was not repeated and no additional clinical cases were reported for decades.

It was not until the late 1990s that EK was reinvestigated, revised, and reintroduced into clinical practice, launching the modern era of lamellar keratoplasty. Gerrit Melles experimented with eye bank cadaver eyes and then with animal eyes to bring EK into the modern era. Melles described an approach called posterior lamellar keratoplasty (PLK), in which the posterior cornea was dissected out and replaced with posterior stroma and endothelium from donor corneal tissue (1, 5-7). Melles contributed the foundational concept of self-adherent graft tissue that required no sutures and could be supported initially by an air bubble. In 1999, Mark Terry introduced modifications to simplify Melles’ PLK technique, developed new instrumentation, and coined the technique deep lamellar endothelial keratoplasty (DLEK) (1, 8). However, these techniques were technically difficult to perform, required extensive manual lamellar dissection, and were not adopted widely. Patients healed rapidly compared to full-thickness transplants, but the presence of a deep stroma-to-stroma interface limited postoperative visual acuity typically to the 20/40-20/50 range.

In 2004, Melles made additional technical modifications, and introduced the idea of stripping and removing the patient’s Descemet membrane and endothelium with his Descemetorhexis technique. This new technique was renamed Descemet stripping endothelial keratoplasty (DSEK). After Mark Gorovoy introduced the microkeratome for automated preparation of donor cornea, manual lamellar dissection could be eliminated entirely, and the procedure was again renamed as Descemet stripping automated endothelial keratoplasty (DSAEK). Francis Price proposed additional technical modifications, and again, Terry introduced simplifications and new instrumentation. DSAEK allowed patients to achieve improved postoperative visual acuity results, to the 20/25-20/30 range, because its graft-host interface is more smooth (1, 9). With the advent of eye bank prepared donor tissue in 2006, financial and technical obstacles were removed, and DSAEK surgery became the most commonly performed method of endothelial keratoplasty and procedure of choice for the treatment of corneal edema.

In 2006, Melles went on to describe a technique known as Descemet membrane endothelial keratoplasty (DMEK) that allowed for transplantation of a pure Descemet membrane and endothelium graft, and exact anatomical replacement of diseased tissue in cases of endothelial dysfunction. Compared to DSAEK, DMEK allows even faster visual recovery, better postoperative visual acuity results, and greater overall patient satisfaction due to elimination of the stroma-to-stroma graft-host interface (10). However, the initial donor preparation failure rate and surgical learning curve prevented widespread application after introduction of this technique (1). Mirroring the evolution of DSAEK, as surgical techniques have become standardized and eye banks have begun to prepare DMEK graft tissue, DMEK is rapidly becoming the procedure of choice for endothelial keratoplasty for the treatment of Fuchs endothelial dystrophy and pseudophakic bullous keratopathy.

Additionally, anterior lamellar keratoplasty (ALK) techniques have been refined over the past 40 years. In the late 1970's Malbran and Gasset were performing deep anterior lamellar keratoplasty (DALK) to excise and replace the corneal tissue anterior to the deepest stromal lamellae with impressive results including 80% of keratoconus patients achieving 20/40 or better visual acuity (1, 11). However, obstacles remained that limited the popularity of this approach, including achievement of a reproducible separation plane between posterior stroma and, ideally, Descemet membrane. In 2002, Anwar and Teichmann introduced their "big bubble" pneumodissection technique in which a bubble of air is injected deep into the corneal stroma to establish separation of the posterior stroma from Descemet membrane (12). Their technique has allowed surgeons to achieve more consistent results than previous methods, but in some cases, intraoperative conversion to a full-thickness PK is still required. For patients with keratoconus or scarring that does not involve Descemet membrane or endothelium, DALK is considered by most to be the surgical treatment of choice (1), although extended operating times due to the need for careful lamellar dissection have limited its popularity.

Keratoprosthesis, the transplantation of an artificial cornea, was first performed in Italy by Benedetto Strampelli in the 1960s (1). Patients requiring repeat corneal transplantation highlighted the need for an alternative to corneal allograft treatment, as graft survival rates drop with each additional procedure. Historical options have included the osteo-odonto-keratoprosthesis (OOKP) and AlphaCor artificial cornea. These have since been largely replaced by the Boston Type I Keratoprosthesis (KPro), which became approved for use by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration in 1992 (1, 13). The device consists of a clear plastic optic and a prosthetic plate that are sandwiched around a donor allograft or the patient's own corneal tissue. The device is then sutured onto the recipient eye to replace a failed graft or the native cornea. Keratoprosthesis surgery is a procedure of last-resort, reserved for patients who are not candidates for other types of keratoplasty.

Penetrating Keratoplasty (PK)

PK is a full-thickness transplant procedure, in which a trephine of an appropriate diameter is used to make a full-thickness resection of the patient's cornea, followed by placement of a full-thickness donor corneal graft. Interrupted and/or running sutures are placed in radial fashion at equal tension to minimize post-operative astigmatism (Figure 2). Later, the sutures are removed selectively to reduce the amount of astigmatism present. A transplant can last decades with proper care (Figure 3). While once the most prominent type of corneal transplant, PK has been supplanted by partial thickness techniques for endothelial dysfunction without significant stromal scarring. PKs are performed primarily for visually significant stromal scarring, opacities with an uncertain status of the endothelium or significant posterior corneal involvement, corneal ectasia (such as keratoconus and pellucid marginal degeneration, especially if there is history of hydrops), combined stromal and epithelial disease (such as Peters anomaly), and infectious or non-infectious corneal ulcerations or perforations (1, 14). A variant of the procedure, the mini-PK, can be used to treat more focal defects in the cornea (Figure 4).

PK grants the ability to treat disease in the epithelial, stromal, and endothelial layers. A full-thickness graft also eliminates optical interface related visual problems that may exist with lamellar transplants with a stroma-stroma interface.

However, postoperative recovery time is relatively long, sometimes taking years to achieve best-corrected visual acuity. Frequently, there is substantial postoperative refractive error due to high regular or irregular astigmatism of the graft, and a higher chance of requiring rigid gas permeable contact lens wear to correct astigmatic error. There is a higher risk of allograft rejection compared with other keratoplasty types. Additionally, PKs carry a higher lifetime risk of wound dehiscence due to the compromised tectonic strength that comes from a full-thickness wound.

Video 1: SEE: vimeo.com/154371744 PK in a patient with severe corneal scarring after bacterial keratitis in the setting of HSV-related neurotrophic disease. Video contributed by Jesse Vislisel, MD

Basic procedure steps (Video 1)

1. Mark the center of the host cornea with a Sinsky hook. Use calipers to measure the corneal diameter to determine the appropriate size for donor trephine.
2. Trephinate the donor tissue, typically aiming for 0.25 or 0.5 mm larger than the planned host trephination.
3. Trephinate the host cornea to approximately 90% depth.
4. Create a paracentesis in the trephination groove or the corneal periphery, and inject Healon into the anterior chamber to preserve anterior chamber depth and stability.

5. After using a blade to enter the eye through the trephination groove, resect the host cornea tissue using curved corneal scissors.
6. Secure the donor graft to the host corneal tissue using interrupted and/or running 10-0 nylon sutures.
7. Rotate the sutures to bury the knots, assess the astigmatism using an intraoperative keratometer, and consider placing additional sutures to reduce astigmatic error.



Figure 2: PK grafts with 16 (A) and 24 (B) interrupted sutures. Grafts can also be secured with a running suture (C) or a combination of running and interrupted sutures (D).

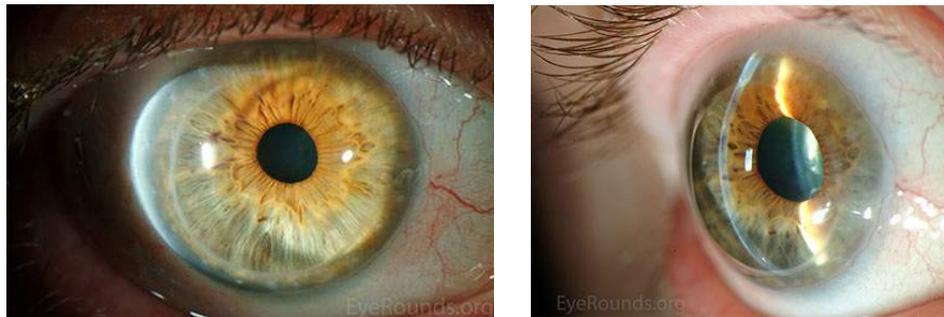


Figure 3: A PK graft, with all sutures removed, remains crystal clear 30 years after the procedure.



Figure 4: A mini-PK graft performed for a focal corneal perforation.

Deep Anterior Lamellar Keratoplasty (DALK)

DALK is a partial-thickness cornea transplant procedure that involves selective transplantation of the corneal stroma, leaving the native Descemet membrane and endothelium in place. A trephine of an appropriate diameter is used to make a partial-thickness incision into the patient's cornea, followed by pneumodissection or manual dissection of the anterior stroma. This is followed by placement of a graft prepared from a full-thickness punch in which the donor endothelium–Descemet membrane complex has been removed. The intention is to preserve the patient's Descemet membrane and endothelium. Similar to PK, the graft is secured with interrupted and/or running sutures (Figure 5) and these are then selectively removed post-operatively (Figure 6).

DALK is useful for processes involving the corneal stroma in the presence of healthy endothelium. Examples include corneal ectasia (such as keratoconus in the absence of hydrops), corneal scars that are not full-thickness, and corneal stromal dystrophies (1, 15, 16).

Because it is not a full-thickness procedure, the resultant wound is stronger than that of a PK. Leaving the host endothelium intact significantly decreases the risk of endothelial rejection.

The surgery is more complex and difficult to perform than PK. If the Descemet membrane is perforated intraoperatively, the surgeon must convert to a PK. The “big bubble” technique makes dissection more consistent and is the preferred technique at our institution (12).

Video 2: Big bubble DALK technique. Video contributed by Matt Ward, MD and Mark Greiner, MD
See youtu.be/Y7zqGnH6kZ4

Basic procedure steps (Video 2):

1. Mark the center of the host cornea with a Sinsky hook, and use a calipers to plan the host trephination.
2. Trephinate the host cornea to a depth of 90%.
3. Insert a 27-gauge needle, or a Fogla dissector followed by a Fogla 25-gauge cannula, into the posterior stroma.
4. Inject air to dissect Descemet membrane posteriorly with a large bubble.
5. Remove approximately 70% of the anterior stroma using a crescent blade or Devers dissector.
6. Create a paracentesis incision to release aqueous.
7. After marking the stroma and placing Healon over the mark, make an incision through the mark.
8. Inject Healon into the space between the posterior stroma and Descemet membrane. Complete the separation between these two layers using a cyclodialysis spatula.
9. Resect the remaining stroma using curved corneal scissors.
10. Remove the donor endothelium from the donor graft tissue by manually stripping Descemet membrane, then trephinate the donor tissue.
11. Secure the donor graft to the host corneal tissue using interrupted and/or running 10-0 nylon sutures.
12. Rotate the sutures to bury the knots, assess the astigmatism using an intraoperative keratometer, and consider placing additional sutures to reduce astigmatic error.

Additional Video Links

- DALK for post-LASIK Keratoconus
youtu.be/4z8P8aK1DR1

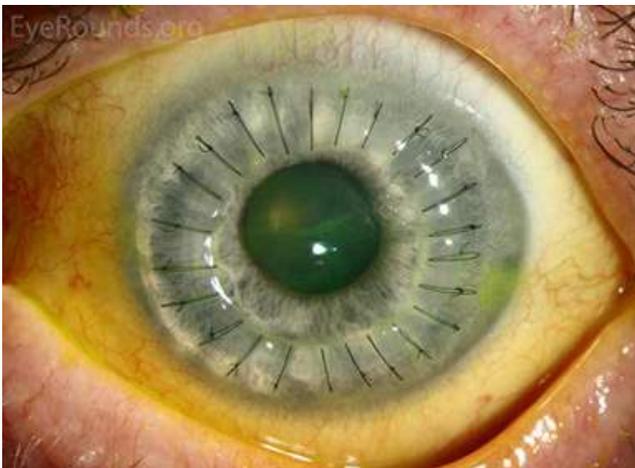


Figure 5: DALK performed for keratoconus.

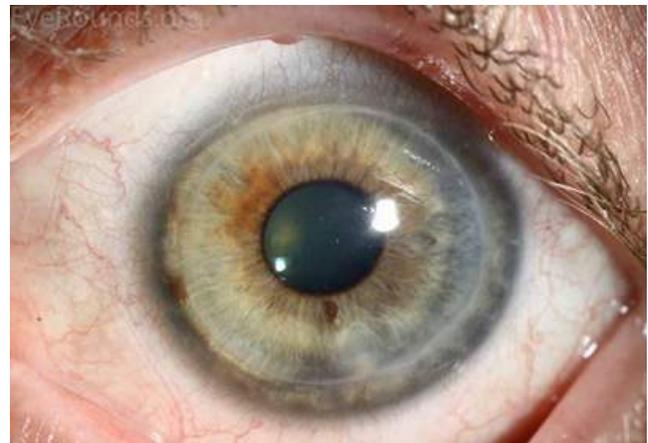


Figure 6: Clear DALK graft 3 years after transplant for keratoconus.

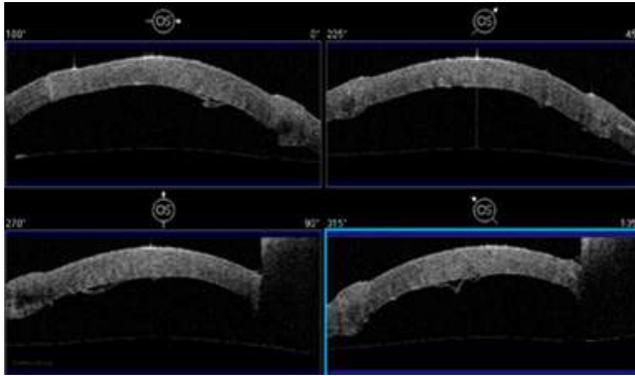


Fig 7a: Anterior segment optical coherence tomography demonstrating the redundant host Descemet membrane and endothelium in poor apposition to the graft tissue.

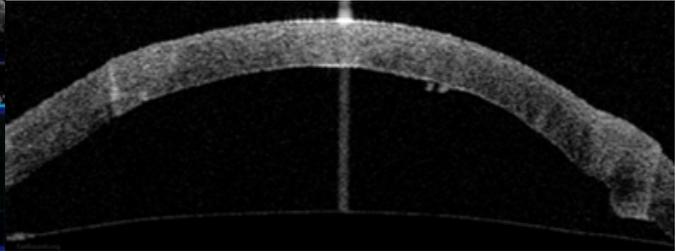


Fig 7b: Normal anatomy is restored with reattachment of Descemet membrane to the donor stroma after placement of an air bubble in the anterior chamber.

Descemet Stripping Automated Endothelial Keratoplasty (DSAEK)

DSAEK is a partial thickness cornea transplant procedure that involves selective removal of the patient's Descemet membrane and endothelium, followed by transplantation of donor corneal endothelium in addition to donor corneal stroma (Figure 8). The transplanted tissue is approximately 100-200 microns thick. If the endothelium of the graft makes contact with any surgical instruments, it will be damaged and the graft may fail; therefore, the surgical procedure is designed to avoid contacting the donor endothelium. A tunneled corneoscleral incision is created, the recipient endothelium and Descemet membrane is removed, the graft is folded and inserted with non-coapting forceps (forceps that do not meet at the tips), and an air bubble is placed in the anterior chamber to support graft adherence. The procedure is used to treat corneal edema in the setting of endothelial dystrophies (such as Fuchs corneal dystrophy and posterior polymorphous corneal dystrophy), pseudophakic bullous keratopathy, iridocorneal endothelial (ICE) syndrome, endothelial failure in the setting of prior intraocular surgery or of a previous PK graft, and other causes of corneal endothelial dysfunction (1, 17-20).

DSAEK offers the advantage of relatively rapid healing time and visual rehabilitation. Compared to PK and DALK, there is less risk of graft rejection and suture-related complications. There is minimal topographic change to the corneal curvature. A somewhat predictable hyperopic shift results (typically 0.8-1.5 D), making intraocular lens selection easier when performing staged or simultaneous cataract surgery.

Postoperative visual acuity can be very good, but there is some limitation from the effects of the stroma-to-stroma graft-host interface. There is also a risk of postoperative graft dislocation.

Video 3: vimeo.com/161469784 Descemet stripping automated endothelial keratoplasty (DSAEK) is an endothelial replacement procedure in which dysfunctional corneal endothelium is replaced with a graft consisting of donor endothelium and a thin layer of posterior stroma to facilitate handling of the tissue. This case was performed for severe corneal edema secondary to pseudophakic bullous keratopathy. Contributed by Jesse Vislisel, MD, and Mark A. Greiner, MD

Basic procedure steps (Video 3)

1. Perform temporal peritomy and achieve hemostasis.
2. Create a paracentesis and inject Healon into the anterior chamber.
3. Make a 5 mm sclerocorneal tunnel; do not enter the anterior chamber.
4. Use a bent 30-gauge needle and Sinsky hook to create an inferior peripheral iridotomy to prevent postoperative pupillary block.
5. Place a marked circular ring of the planned donor size on the surface of the cornea to mark a template for resection of the patient's corneal tissue.
6. Use a reverse Terry-Sinsky hook to score Descemet membrane just inside the ink marks previously made; strip it away from the stroma.
7. Pass a keratome through the corneoscleral tunnel and into the anterior chamber.
8. Remove the detached Descemet membrane using forceps.
9. Roughen the peripheral stromal bed, outside the visual axis, using a Terry scraper to promote graft adhesion.
10. Enlarge the wound to a full 5 mm width and then close it temporarily with a single interrupted 10-0 Vicryl suture.
11. Remove the Healon from the anterior chamber using the I/A handpiece.
12. Prepare the graft by trephinating the pre-cut donor tissue endothelial side up.
13. Fold the donor tissue into a taco shape.

14. Insert the donor tissue into the anterior chamber using non-coapting forceps.
15. Unfold and float the donor graft using balanced salt solution (BSS), followed by air.
16. Fill the anterior chamber with air to pressurize the eye.
17. Use a Cindy sweeper to perform external compression on the surface of the cornea, first to position the graft if needed, and then to remove any central interface fluid.
18. Close the temporal wound with 3 interrupted 10-0 Vicryl sutures.
19. Leave the tissue undisturbed for 10-15 minutes to allow for adherence.
20. Close the conjunctiva using cautery.
21. Perform an air-fluid exchange to remove enough air from the anterior chamber to ensure there is no air behind the iris.
22. Add air back into the anterior chamber to achieve a freely mobile bubble that covers the graft.

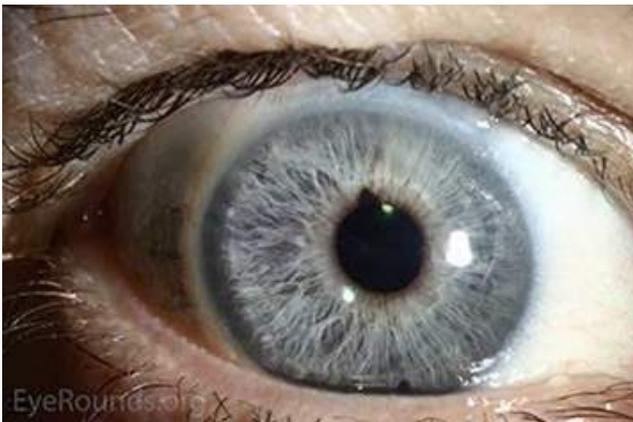
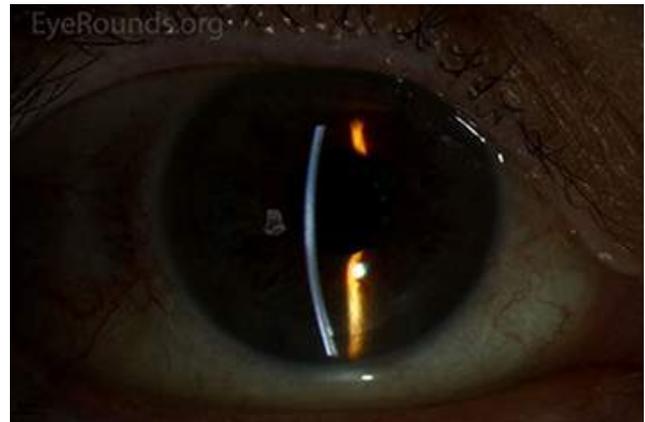
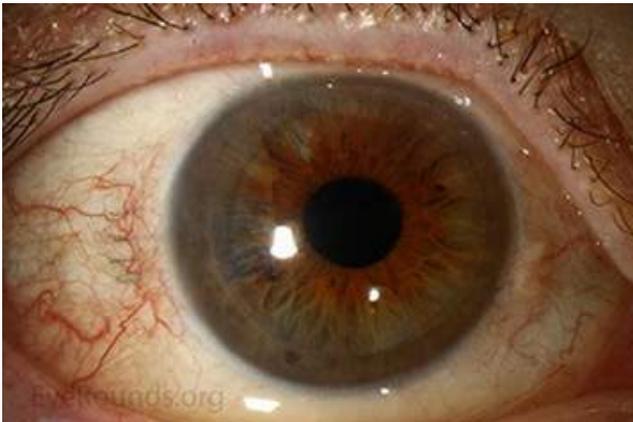


Figure 8: Post-operative appearance of two different patients after undergoing DSAEK for Fuchs endothelial corneal dystrophy.

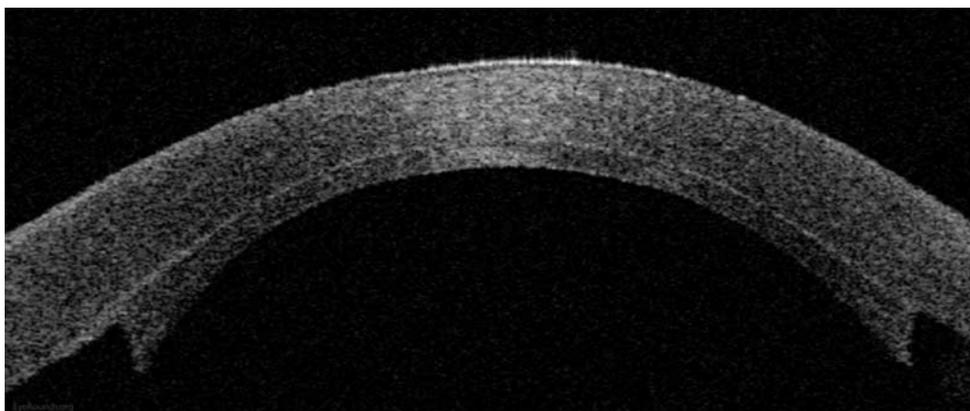


Figure 9: Anterior segment optical coherence tomography demonstrating an attached DSAEK graft one day after surgery.

Descemet Membrane Endothelial Keratoplasty (DMEK)

DMEK is a partial-thickness cornea transplant procedure that involves selective removal of the patient's Descemet membrane and endothelium, followed by transplantation of donor corneal endothelium and Descemet membrane without additional stromal tissue from the donor. The graft tissue is merely 10-15 microns thick. Similar to DSAEK, direct contact with the DMEK graft tissue should be avoided to prevent endothelial cell damage and graft failure. A clear corneal incision is created, the recipient endothelium and Descemet membrane are removed, and the graft is loaded into an inserter. After injecting the tissue into the anterior chamber, the surgeon orients and unscrolls the graft, and a bubble of 20% sulfur hexafluoride (SF6) is placed in the anterior chamber to support graft adherence

(Figure 10). A variation known as Descemet membrane automated endothelial keratoplasty (DMAEK) utilized an automated preparation of the donor tissue that left a rim of donor stroma peripherally for easier tissue handling (Figure 11), but the procedure is no longer performed due to advances in DMEK that have allowed for easier insertion and manipulation of the graft tissue.

The indications for DMEK are similar to those for DSAEK, including endothelial dystrophies (such as Fuchs corneal dystrophy and posterior polymorphous corneal dystrophy), pseudophakic bullous keratopathy, ICE syndrome, and other causes of corneal endothelial dysfunction (1, 10, 17).

DMEK offers the most rapid visual rehabilitation of any keratoplasty technique to date (Figure 12). Final visual acuity can be outstanding due to minimal optical interface effects. Because less tissue is transplanted, there is a lower



Figure 10: (A, B) Anterior chamber gas bubbles in 2 different patients each 1 week after DMEK for Fuchs dystrophy. (C) A third patient demonstrating complete resorption of the gas bubble 2 weeks after the operation.



Figure 11: Post-operative appearance 1 month after DMAEK.



Figure 12: Clear cornea with 20/20 acuity 1 month after DMEK for Fuchs dystrophy

risk of allograft rejection and less long-term reliance on topical steroids compared with other types of keratoplasty. Discontinuation of topical steroids can be considered at or before 1 year after the procedure, especially for patients with elevated intraocular pressure.

Because of thinness, fragility, and its characteristic scrolling properties (with the endothelium facing outward), the donor tissue can be difficult to handle and contribute to technical difficulties with the procedure. There is a higher risk of graft edge lifts (Figure 13) compared with DSAEK, sometimes requiring a re-bubble procedure.

Video 4: vimeo.com/149335896 *Phakic DMEK*

Basic procedure steps (Video 4):

1. Create two to four paracentesis sites.
2. Fill the anterior chamber with Healon.
3. Create an inferior peripheral iridotomy using a bent 30-gauge needle and Sinsky hook to prevent post-operative pupillary block.
4. Mark the recipient's corneal epithelium with a circular ring slightly larger than the planned graft diameter to create a template for resection of the host tissue.
5. Score Descemet membrane peripherally using a reverse Terry-Sinsky hook, then peel Descemet membrane from the overlying stroma.
6. Create an incision temporally using a keratome, then remove the free Descemet membrane using forceps.
7. Remove the Healon using the irrigation/aspiration handpiece.
8. Inject Miochol to constrict the pupil and BSS to normalize the pressure.
9. Carefully lift the donor tissue by grasping the outermost edge with tying forceps and submerge it in trypan blue solution for 60 seconds to stain the tissue and make it more visible.
10. Place the tissue in a BSS-filled petri dish and it will scroll spontaneously. Aspirate it into a modified glass Jones tube.
11. Insert the tip of the glass tube into the clear corneal incision and inject the donor tissue into the anterior chamber.
12. Release fluid from a paracentesis to flatten the anterior chamber.
13. Gently tap and swipe on the anterior corneal surface until the graft is appropriately positioned and unscrolled.
14. Inject 20% SF6 into the anterior chamber to secure the graft and wait 10-15 minutes for adhesion.
15. Close the main incision with a 10-0 nylon suture.
16. Perform an air-fluid exchange to ensure there is no gas trapped behind the iris and assess for graft adhesion.
17. Injection another bubble of 20% SF6 to cover the graft, about 80-90% of the anterior chamber.

Additional Video Links

- DMEK for Fuchs dystrophy
eyerounds.org/atlas-video/DMEK.htm
- Descemet Membrane Endothelial Keratoplasty (DMEK)
eyerounds.org/atlas-video/DMEK.htm
- DMEK Democratized (ILEB pre-stripped graft/Jones tube injector/SF6 tamponade)
vimeo.com/149335896
- DMEK under PK Using a Modified Jones Tube Glass Injector
eyerounds.org/atlas-video/DMEK-PKP-modified-Jones-Tube.htm
- Iowa DMEK Technique Utilizing a Modified Jones Tube
eyerounds.org/atlas-video/Iowa-DMEK-mod-Jones-Tube.htm
- Phakic Descemet membrane endothelial keratoplasty (DMEK)
eyerounds.org/video/Cornea/Phakic-DMEK.htm



Figure 13: Chronic inferior edge lift of a DMEK graft. Notice the scrolling of the edge toward the stroma, indicating correct graft orientation, and the absence of stromal edema.

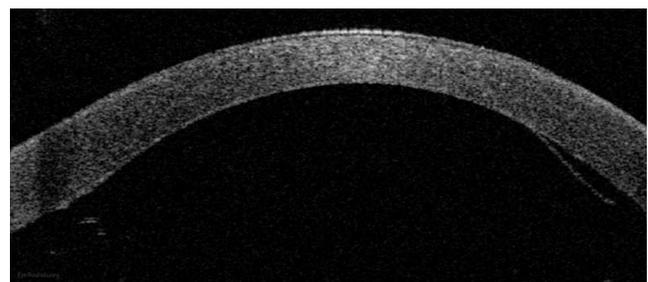


Figure 14: Anterior segment optical coherence tomography demonstrating a limited, peripheral graft edge lift one week after DMEK surgery (right side of image). The attached portion of the graft mimics normal anatomy due to the precise 1-to-1 replacement of tissue with DMEK.

Keratoprosthesis

Keratoprosthesis implantation is a procedure that involves full-thickness removal of the cornea and replacement by an artificial cornea. The Boston Type I Keratoprosthesis is currently the most commonly used keratoprosthesis device in the US. It consists of a clear plastic polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) optic and back plate sandwiched around a corneal graft and secured with a titanium locking ring (Figure 15). After the device is assembled, a partial-thickness trephination is performed on the host cornea. Full-thickness resection of the patient's cornea is then completed using curved corneal scissors. The keratoprosthesis is then secured to host tissue using interrupted or running sutures. Generally, patients who have a history of multiple failed PKs are candidates for a keratoprosthesis transplant. Other indications include severe keratitis or ocular surface disease resulting from limbal stem cell failure, such as Stevens-Johnson syndrome (Figure 16), ocular cicatricial pemphigoid, aniridia (Figure 17) and chemical injury (1, 13). The Boston Type II Keratoprosthesis is a similar device with a longer optic designed to extend through an opening made in the upper eyelid (Figure 19). It is indicated for the most severe cicatrizing ocular surface diseases.

KPro placement offers relatively fast visual rehabilitation. The devices are amenable for use in many situations in which other types of keratoplasty are not an option.

There is significant long-term risk of complications for those with a keratoprosthesis. Because the KPro is a foreign body, there is risk of infection or extrusion of the device. Post-operative glaucoma is common and intraocular pressure is difficult to evaluate as the hard optic makes traditional tonometry impossible. For this reason, glaucoma tube shunts are typically placed at the time of the corneal transplant at the University of Iowa. The Diaton is currently the preferred way to measure intraocular pressure in these patients in our institution. Patients can form retroprosthetic

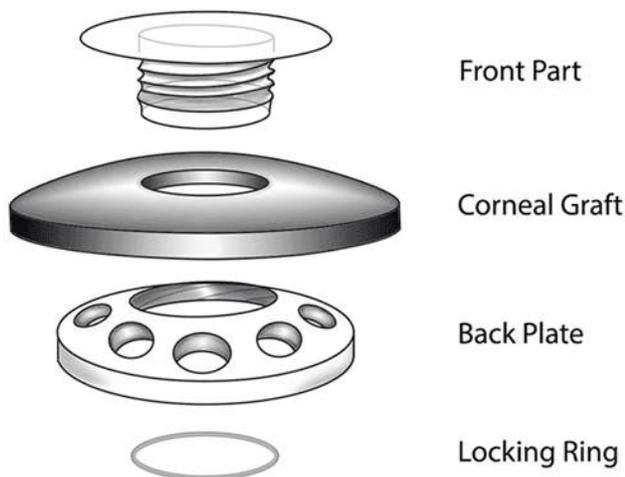


Figure 15: Assembly of the Boston Type I KPro device. Image courtesy of EyeWorld.org.

ic membranes requiring treatment with a Nd:YAG laser or surgical membranectomy (21).

Video 5: vimeo.com/161934772 Boston Type I Keratoprosthesis for aphakic bullous keratopathy following multiple failed corneal grafts

Basic procedure steps (Video 5):

1. Mark the center of the host cornea using a Sinsky hook and measure the cornea to determine the appropriate transplant size.
2. Trephine the donor cornea.
3. Assemble the keratoprosthesis by sandwiching the corneal graft between the front and back plates of the KPro device.
4. Trephinate the host cornea to approximately 90% depth.
5. Create a paracentesis, in the trephination groove or the corneal periphery, and inject Healon into the anterior chamber to preserve anterior chamber depth and stability.
6. After using a blade to enter the eye through the trephination groove, resect the host cornea tissue using curved corneal scissors.
7. Secure the donor tissue of the assembled KPro to the host corneal tissue using interrupted and/or running 9-0 nylon sutures.
8. Rotate the sutures to bury the knots.

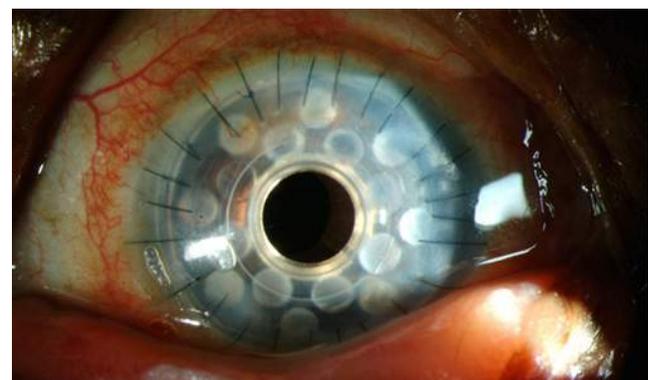
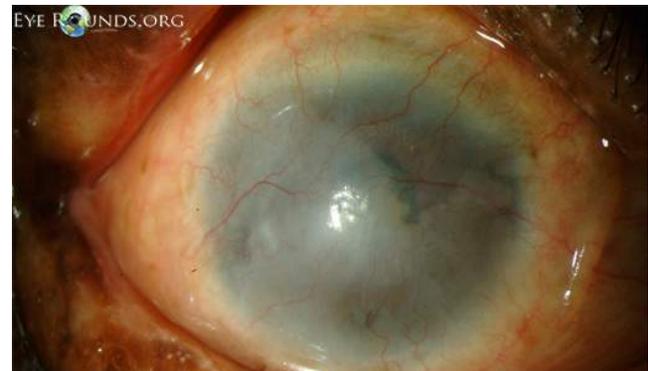


Figure 16: Pre- and post-operative appearance of a Boston Type I KPro device for Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

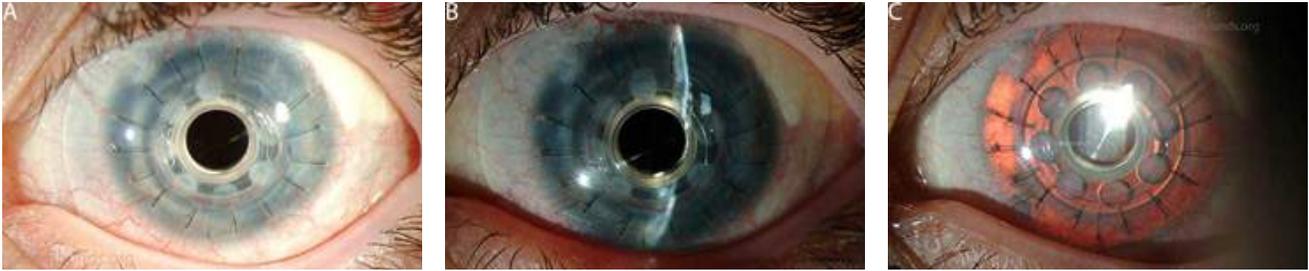


Figure 17: (A,B) Post-operative appearance of a Boston Type I KPro device for aniridia. (C) The back plate is visible on retroillumination.

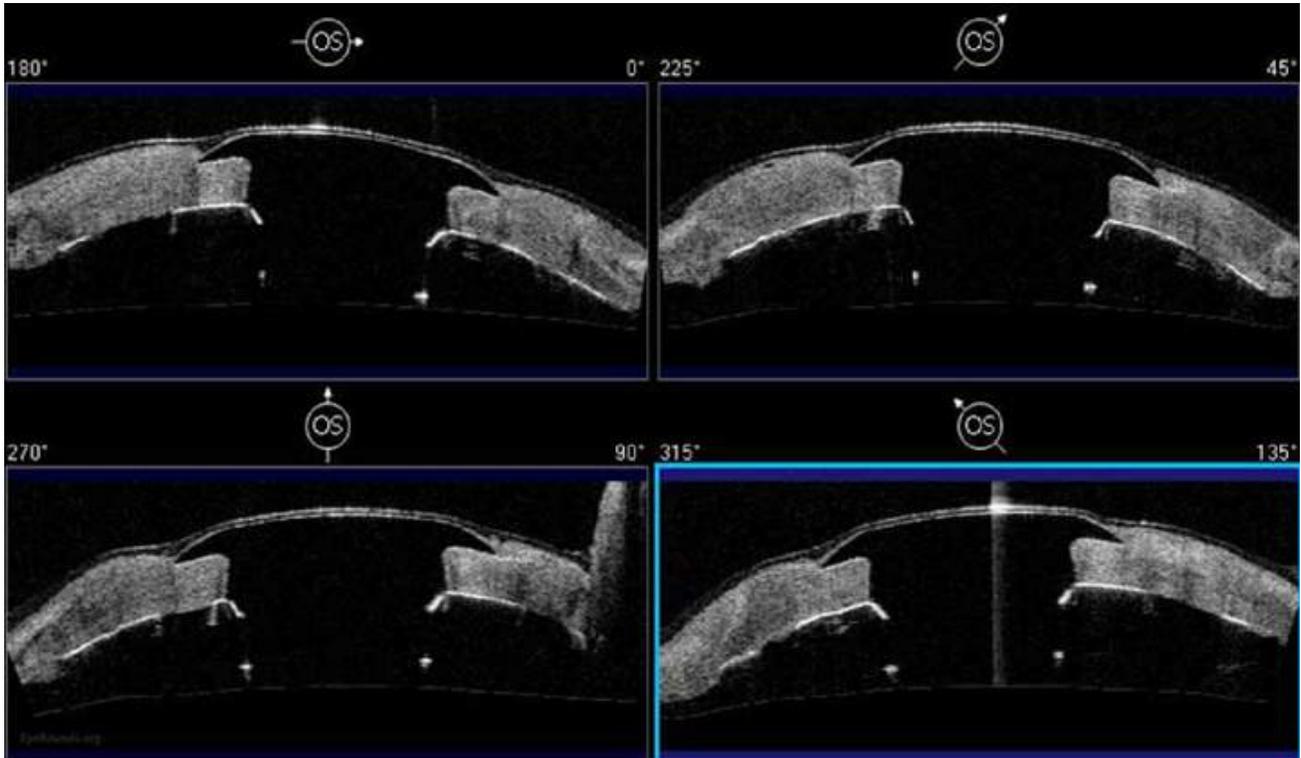


Figure 18: Anterior segment optical coherence tomography demonstrating the appearance of a Boston Type I Kpro with healthy corneal tissue surrounding the device.



Figure 19: Boston Type II KPro for severe ocular cicatricial pemphigoid (left) and Stevens-Johnson syndrome (right)

Additional Keratoprosthesis Video Links

- Type 2 Boston Keratoprosthesis for Ocular Cicatricial Pemphigoid
eyerounds.org/cases-i/case122/122-OCP-QTvideo.htm
- Boston Keratoprosthesis Type I
eyerounds.org/atlas-video/Boston-keratoprosthesis-type-I.htm

A Note on Corneal Allograft Rejection

Corneal transplantation is regarded as the most successful solid organ transplantation procedure (1). Niziol et al. performed a study in 2013 with follow-up averaging 10 years and found that corneal rejection after PK for keratoconus occurred in 44% of grafts, but only 8% of grafts actually failed (22). While long-term rejection data is not yet available for the newer EK procedures, lesser rejection rates have been demonstrated after DMEK (0.7%) and DSAEK (9%) than PK (17%) at 2 years in patients on the same postoperative steroid regimen and treated for similar indications (23). This may be secondary to reduced antigen load in the thinner graft tissue. Modern treatment efforts can account for the vast difference between graft rejection and failure. However, graft rejection still remains a significant cause of corneal graft failure (Figure 16) (1). The most effective intervention is early recognition and prompt treatment with topical steroid drops. If the patient notices any redness, pain, or decreased vision, it is critical to seek prompt treatment to maximize chances of reversing the rejection episode.

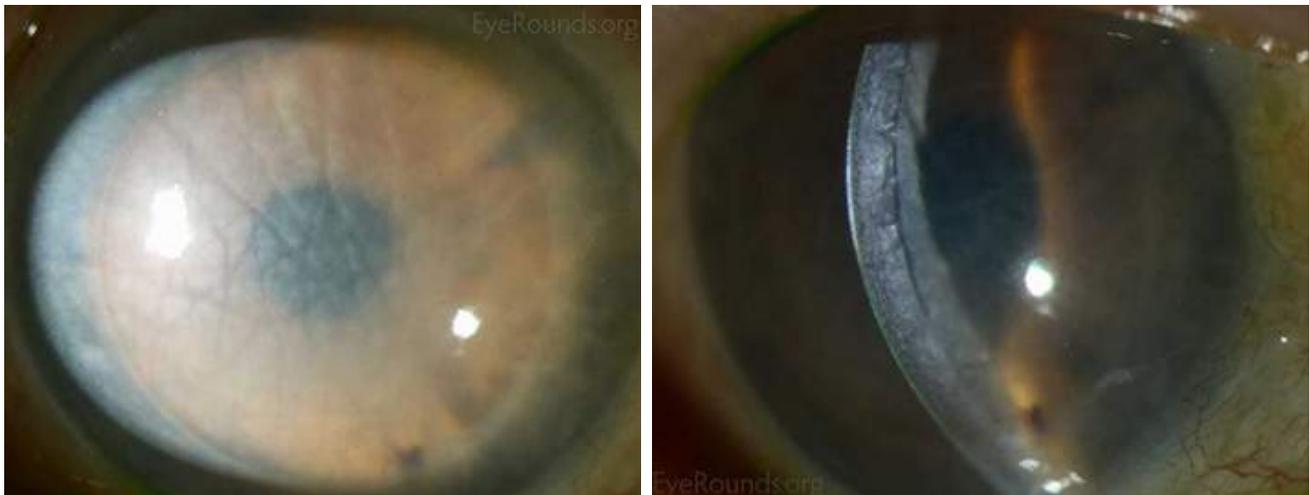


Figure 20: Massive corneal edema secondary to DSAEK allograft rejection. Accumulation of fluid is visible in the graft-host interface.

References

1. Krachmer JH, Mannis MJ, Holland EJ. Cornea: Fundamentals, Diagnosis, and Management: Mosby Elsevier; 2011.
2. Mannis MJ, Mannis AA. Corneal transplantation: a history in profiles. Oostende, Belgium: J.P. Wayenborgh; 1999.
3. Zirm EK. Eine erfolgreiche totale Keratoplastik (A successful total keratoplasty). 1906. Refractive & corneal surgery. Jul-Aug;5(4):258-61. PubMed PMID: 2488816.
4. Gupta V, Ray M, Ahuja R. Corneal Grafting Surgery: Historical Aspects. In: Vajpayee RB, editor. Corneal Transplantation. New Delhi: Jaypee Brothers Medical Publishers, Ltd.; 2002. p. 3-5.
5. Melles GR, Eggink FA, Lander F, Pels E, Rietveld FJ, Beekhuis WH, et al. A surgical technique for posterior lamellar keratoplasty. Cornea. 1998 Nov;17(6):618-26. PubMed PMID: 9820943.
6. Melles GR, Lander F, Beekhuis WH, Remeijer L, Binder PS. Posterior lamellar keratoplasty for a case of pseudophakic bullous keratopathy. American journal of ophthalmology. 1999 Mar;127(3):340-1. PubMed PMID: Melles GR, Lander F, van Dooren BT, Pels E, Beekhuis WH. Preliminary clinical results of posterior

- lamellar keratoplasty through a sclerocorneal pocket incision. *Ophthalmology*. 2000 Oct;107(10):1850-6; discussion 7. PubMed PMID: 11013184.
7. Terry MA, Ousley PJ. Deep lamellar endothelial keratoplasty in the first United States patients: early clinical results. *Cornea*. 2001 Apr;20(3):239-43. PubMed PMID: 11322409.
 8. Gorovoy MS. Descemet-stripping automated endothelial keratoplasty. *Cornea*. 2006 Sep;25(8):886-9. PubMed PMID: 17102661.
 9. Maier AK, Gundlach E, Gonnermann J, Klamann MK, Bertelmann E, Rieck PW, et al. Retrospective contralateral study comparing Descemet membrane endothelial keratoplasty with Descemet stripping automated endothelial keratoplasty. *Eye*. 2014 Nov 21. PubMed PMID: 25412715.
 10. Gasset AR. Lamellar keratoplasty in the treatment of keratoconus: conectomy. *Ophthalmic surgery*. 1979 Feb;10(2):26-33. PubMed PMID: 370707.
 11. Anwar M, Teichmann KD. Big-bubble technique to bare Descemet's membrane in anterior lamellar keratoplasty. *Journal of cataract and refractive surgery*. 2002 Mar;28(3):398-403. PubMed PMID: 11973083.
 12. Zerbe BL, Belin MW, Ciolino JB, Boston Type 1 Keratoprosthesis Study G. Results from the multicenter Boston Type 1 Keratoprosthesis Study. *Ophthalmology*. 2006 Oct;113(10):1779 e1-7. PubMed PMID: 16872678.
 13. Ing JJ, Ing HH, Nelson LR, Hodge DO, Bourne WM. Ten-year postoperative results of penetrating keratoplasty. *Ophthalmology*. 1998 Oct;105(10):1855-65. PubMed PMID: 9787355.
 14. Fontana L, Parente G, Tassinari G. Clinical outcomes after deep anterior lamellar keratoplasty using the big-bubble technique in patients with keratoconus. *American journal of ophthalmology*. 2007 Jan;143(1):117-24. PubMed PMID: 17188045.
 15. Vajpayee RB, Tyagi J, Sharma N, Kumar N, Jhanji V, Titiyal JS. Deep anterior lamellar keratoplasty by big-bubble technique for treatment corneal stromal opacities. *American journal of ophthalmology*. 2007 Jun;143(6):954-7. PubMed PMID: 17434435.
 16. Melles GR. Posterior lamellar keratoplasty: DLEK to DSEK to DMEK. *Cornea*. 2006 Sep;25(8):879-81. PubMed PMID: 17102659.
 17. Price MO, Price FW. Descemet's stripping endothelial keratoplasty. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol*. 2007 Jul;18(4):290-4. PubMed PMID: 17568204.
 18. Covert DJ, Koenig SB. Descemet stripping and automated endothelial keratoplasty (DSAEK) in eyes with failed penetrating keratoplasty. *Cornea*. 2007 Jul;26(6):692-6. PubMed PMID: 17592318.
 19. Price MO, Price FW, Jr. Descemet stripping with endothelial keratoplasty for treatment of iridocorneal endothelial syndrome. *Cornea*. 2007 May;26(4):493-7. PubMed PMID: 17457204.
 20. Greiner MA, Li JY, Mannis MJ. Longer-term vision outcomes and complications with the Boston type 1 keratoprosthesis at the University of California, Davis. *Ophthalmology* 2011;118(8):1543-50.
 21. Niziol LM, Musch DC, Gillespie BW, Marcotte LM, Sugar A. Long-term outcomes in patients who received a corneal graft for keratoconus between 1980 and 1986. *American journal of ophthalmology*. 2013 Feb;155(2):213-9 e3. PubMed PMID: 23111176.
 22. Anshu A, Price MO, Price FW Jr. Risk of corneal transplant rejection significantly reduced with Descemet's membrane endothelial keratoplasty. *Ophthalmology* 2012 Mar; 119(3):536-40. PubMed PMID 22218143.

last updated: 05/21/2015

Epithelial-Stromal and Stromal Corneal Dystrophies

A Clinicopathologic Review

Emily S. Birkholz, MD, Nasreen A. Syed, MD, and Michael D. Wagoner, MD, PhD - August 17, 2009

Major Revision: Chaunhi Van, MD and Nasreen Syed, MD - August 20, 2015

INTRODUCTION

Corneal epithelial-stromal and stromal dystrophies are a group of inherited disorders of the cornea that are caused by progressive accumulation of deposits within the layers of the cornea. These deposits are not caused by inflammation, infection, or trauma, but by genetic mutations that lead to transcription of aberrant proteins resulting in the accumulation of insoluble material within the cornea. The disorders may or may not affect vision and may or may not be symmetrical (1). The 2015 International Committee for Classification of Corneal Dystrophies (IC3D) classification system has divided corneal dystrophies into 4 categories: epithelial and subepithelial dystrophies, epithelial-stromal dystrophies, stromal dystrophies, and endothelial dystrophies. Most dystrophies previously considered stromal are now classified as either epithelial-stromal dystrophies or stromal dystrophies. Table 1 and 2 list the epithelial-stromal dystrophies and stromal dystrophies (2). The old classification for corneal stromal dystrophies is listed in Table 3.

Table 1: Epithelial-stromal Corneal Dystrophies

- ◆ Reis-Bücklers corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Thiel-Behnke corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Lattice corneal dystrophy, type 1 and variants
- ◆ Granular corneal dystrophy, type 1

Table 2: Stromal Corneal Dystrophies

- ◆ Macular corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Schnyder corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Congenital stromal corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Posterior amorphous corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Central cloudy dystrophy of Francois
- ◆ Pre-Descemet corneal dystrophy

Table 3. Old classification of corneal stromal dystrophies

- ◆ Lattice corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Granular corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Avellino corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Macular corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Gelatinous drop-like dystrophy
- ◆ Schnyder corneal dystrophy
- ◆ Francois-Neetans Fleck dystrophy
- ◆ Congenital hereditary stromal dystrophy

EPITHELIAL-STROMAL CORNEAL DYSTROPHIES

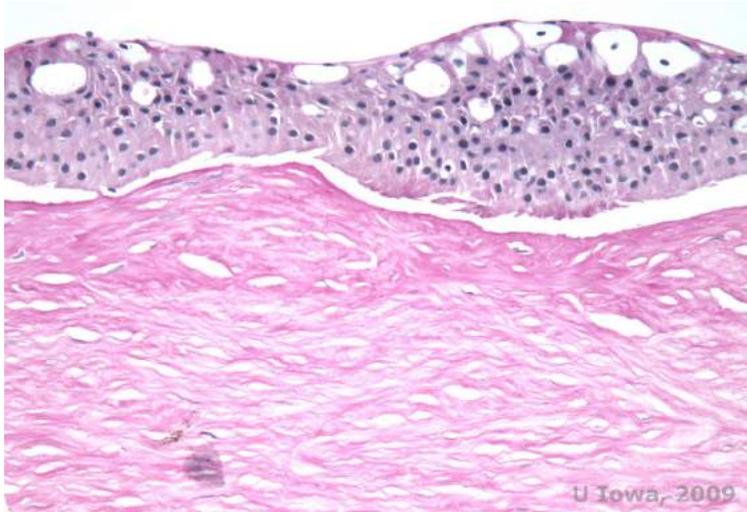
Epithelial-stromal dystrophies are caused by mutations in transforming growth factor beta-induced (TGF β 1) gene, also known as the BIGH3 gene. TGF β 1 is located on chromosome 5q31 and codes for keratoepithelin, a protein secreted by corneal epithelium. This protein acts as an adhesion protein and is present in normal stroma. Being a small protein roughly the size of albumin, it has the capability to diffuse through the corneal stroma. When a mutation in the TGF β 1 gene occurs, the keratoepithelin structure is abnormal and accumulation of the insoluble protein or its proteolytic fragments occurs in the cornea (1, 3). Interestingly, the TGF β 1 gene mutation was discovered in part at the University of Iowa. A group of researchers and clinicians including Edwin M. Stone, Robert Folberg, and Jay H. Krachmer mapped granular type I, granular type II, and lattice dystrophy to chromosome 5q in 1994 (4). To date, 63 different mutations have been identified in the TGF β 1 gene. No effective treatments to prevent or attenuate the deposition of the keratoepithelin have been identified. The dystrophies typically have an autosomal dominant inheritance and involve Bowman layer and stroma (3).

REIS-BUCKLERS CORNEAL DYSTROPHY

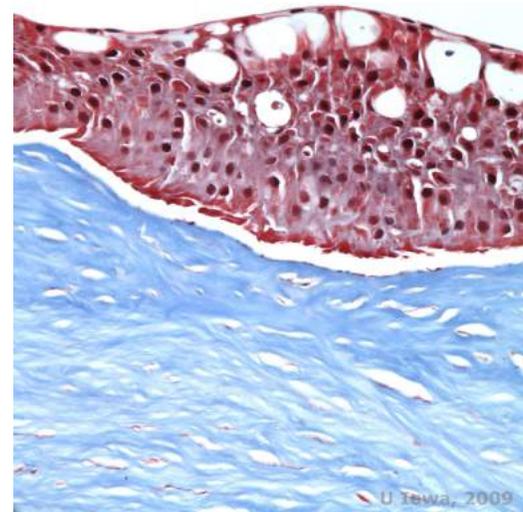
Reis-Bücklers, formerly known as Granular corneal dystrophy type III or Corneal Dystrophy of Bowman's type I, typically present with normal corneas at birth but develop painful recurrent erosions, opacification, and progressive vision loss within the first decade of life (1). Irregular, grey-white, geographic-like opacities are located in the Bowman layer and anterior stroma. In more advanced stages of the disease, the opacities can extend to the limbus and deeper stroma (2). Histopathology reveals anterior stromal and subepithelial deposits of hyaline-like material which disrupt and often replace Bowman's layer (See Figure 1A and 1B). The deposits stain red with Masson trichrome stain (2). The hyaline-like material consists of rod-like bodies ultrastructurally, which helps distinguish it from Thiel-Behnke corneal dystrophy (1, 2).

LATTICE CORNEAL DYSTROPHY

Lattice corneal dystrophy (LCD) is the most common of the corneal epithelial-stromal dystrophies. It is typically an autosomal dominant, bilateral disease that typically presents toward the end of the first decade of life with symptoms of recurrent corneal erosions and decreased vision. It is characterized by lattice lines which are linear, radially oriented, branching refractile opacities described as "glass



A: H&E of Reis Bückler showing destruction of Bowman's layer and irregular epithelium



B. Masson Trichrome stain demonstrating epithelial staining

Figure 1. Reis-Bückler corneal dystrophy

like" located in the anterior stroma (See Figure 2A and 2B). These lattice lines are initially found in the superficial central cornea. As the disease progresses, they spread deeper and peripherally in the stroma with sparing of the limbus (1, 2). Other exam findings include fleck-like opacities, subepithelial white dots, and "ground-glass" stromal haze, which starts centrally and become more diffuse (2). Many patients with LCD will require surgical intervention for treating recurrent erosions and decreased vision. If the disease is located anteriorly in the stroma, patients can often be successfully treated with phototherapeutic keratectomy (PTK). Some require corneal transplantation. Because keratoepithelin, the protein produced by the TGF β 1 gene, is produced mostly in the corneal epithelium, the disease tends to recur in corneal grafts (1).

In LCD, amyloid deposits accumulate between the epithelial basement membrane and Bowman layer as well as in the stroma, causing distortion of the lamellar architecture. The deposits stain positively with immunohistochemistry using antibodies against keratoepithelin (2). The deposits appear as amorphous pink deposits on hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) stain (See Figure 1C and 1D) and stain with Congo red stain demonstrating the classic apple green birefringence on cross-polarization (See Figure 2E and 2F) (1). Absence or thinning of Bowman layer, epithelial atrophy and basal epithelial degeneration can also be found on histopathology in LCD (2).

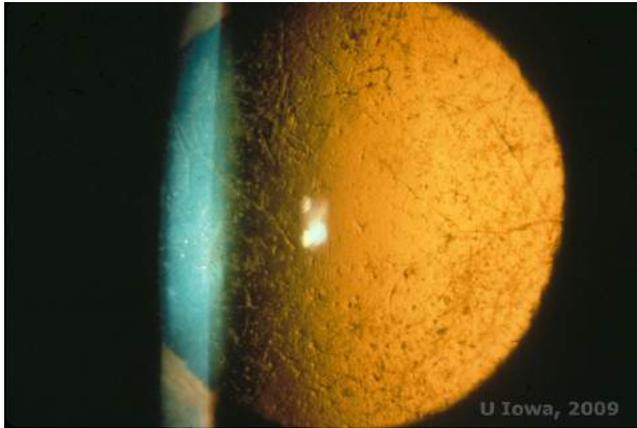
LCD type I is the classic form of LCD caused by a mutation in the TGF β 1 gene resulting in isolated amyloid deposition in the cornea. Four LCD variants had been identified: LCD type IIIA, type I/IIIA, type IV, and polymorphic amyloidosis. LCD variants present later in life than classic LCD. LCD type IIIA presents in the 5th-7th decade, usually with epithelial erosions. It has thicker lattice lines, described as "ropy-appearing", which extends to the limbus. LCD type I/IIIA has thin lattice lines. LCD type IV presents in the 7th-9th decade with small lattice lines. Amyloid deposits

in LCD type IV are found in the deep stroma and epithelial erosions rarely occur. Lattice lines are absent in polymorphic amyloidosis type [EyeRounds.org/cases/173-Polymorphic-amyloid-degeneration.htm] and rarely do epithelial erosions occur (2).

LCD type II is a systemic amyloidosis syndrome known as Meretoja syndrome [EyeRounds.org/cases/176-meretoja.htm] affecting the skin, cranial nerves and cornea. It presents in early adulthood with peripheral neuropathies, cranial neuropathies, hound-like facies, dry skin, blepharochalasis, protruding lips, and corneal lattice lines. This type has been linked to the gelsolin gene on chromosome 9, which encodes for an amyloid precursor protein which functions to remove actin from sites of injury and inflammation (1). The name is a misnomer and is not considered a variant of lattice corneal dystrophy (2).

GRANULAR CORNEAL DYSTROPHY, TYPE I

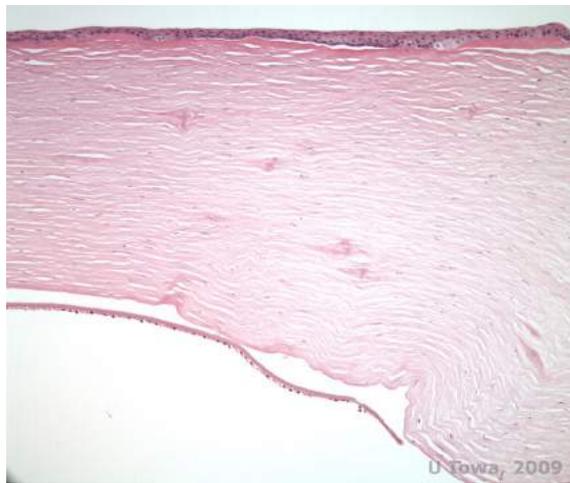
Granular corneal dystrophy, type I (GCD1) is a bilateral, autosomal dominant disease associated with a mutation in the TGF β 1 gene that leads to the deposition of a hyaline material in the corneal stroma. It typically presents early in the first decade of life with gray-white, "crumb-like" opacities in the anterior to mid stroma, extending into the posterior stroma in advance disease (1, 2). These opacities are discrete deposits located centrally, with clear cornea located in the periphery and clear cornea between deposits (See Figure 3A and 3B). The disease is typically asymptomatic early on, but with time the opacities can coalesce and lead to decreased vision. Recurrent corneal erosions can occur in GCD but at a lower incidence than in LCD (1, 5). Patients can also experience glare and photophobia (2). Treatment early on in the disease process is often observation only. However, as the disease progresses, PTK and corneal transplantation may be needed to improve vision and erosion symptoms. Like LCD, the disease can recur in corneal grafts.



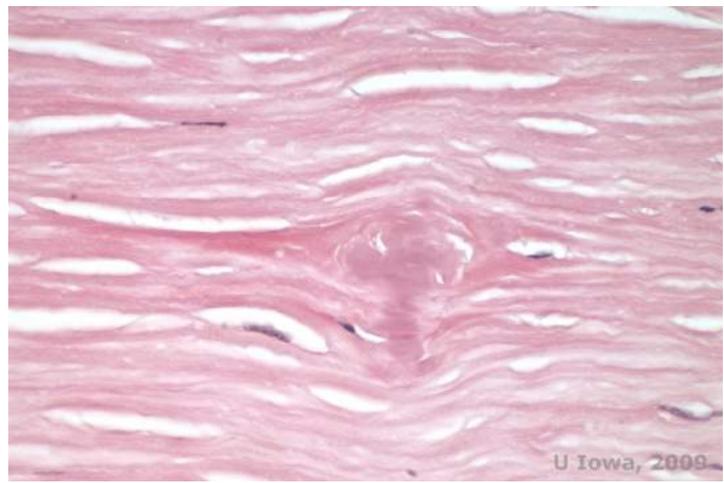
A: Left eye on retroillumination demonstrating anterior stromal deposits in lattice corneal dystrophy



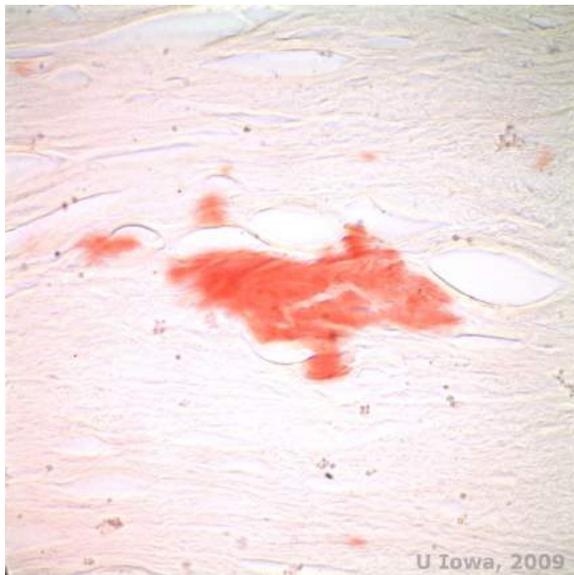
B: Left eye with higher power showing linear anterior stromal deposits.



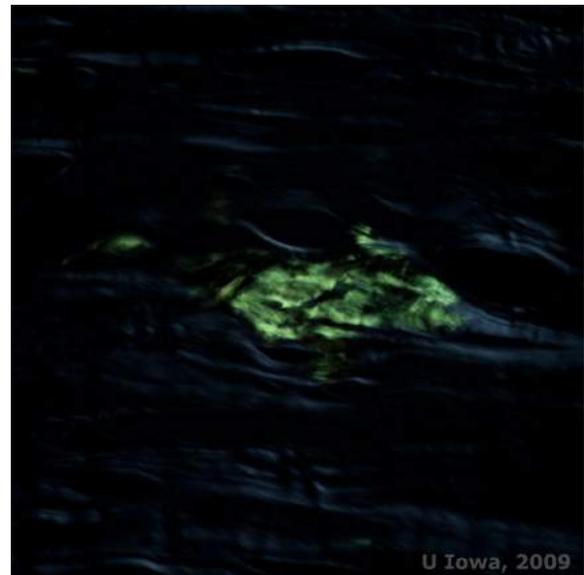
C: H&E stain of cornea with lattice. Note pink amorphous deposits in stroma



D: A closer view of the pink, amorphous deposits



E: Congo red stain, highlighting amyloid



F: Apple-green birefringence of amyloid with cross-polarization.

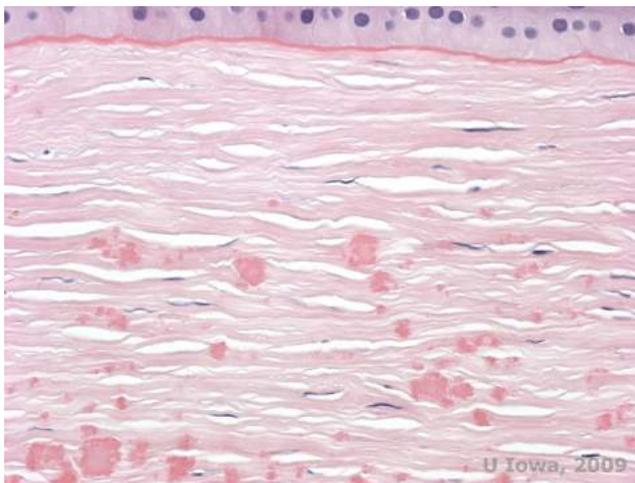
Figure 2. Lattice corneal dystrophy



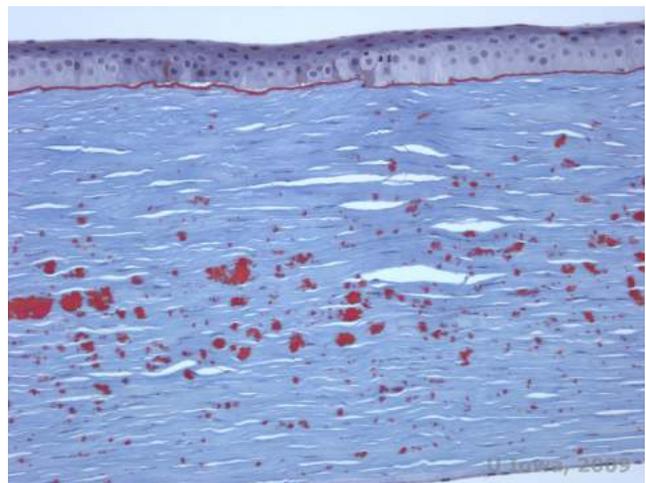
A: Slit lamp photo of Granular Corneal Dystrophy, Type I



B: Note the "crumb-like" stromal deposits with clear intervening stroma.



C: H&E stain of cornea showing eosinophilic "rock candy like" hyaline deposits in stroma



D: Hyaline material stains bright red with Masson-Trichrome

Figure 3. Granular corneal dystrophy, type I

Histopathologically the opacities are eosinophilic deposits often described as "rock candy like" in the anterior stroma made of a hyaline-like material. With time, the deposits progress into the deeper corneal stroma. The hyaline material stains bright red with Masson trichrome stain (See Figure 3C and 3D).

GRANULAR CORNEAL DYSTROPHY, TYPE II

Granular corneal dystrophy, type II (GCD2), formerly known as Avellino or combined granular-lattice corneal dystrophy, is an autosomal dominant disease linked to a mutation in the *TGFβ1* gene that leads to a deposition of both hyaline and amyloid in the corneal stroma. Typically, patients present in the second decade of life with small grey-white dots in the superficial stroma. The opacities can also appear thorn-like, ring, or stellate in shape. In retroillumination, they are partially translucent. Later in the disease process, they can develop lattice lines as well (See Figure 4A and 4B). These lines do not cross each other and appear whiter and less refractile than lattice lines. Symp-

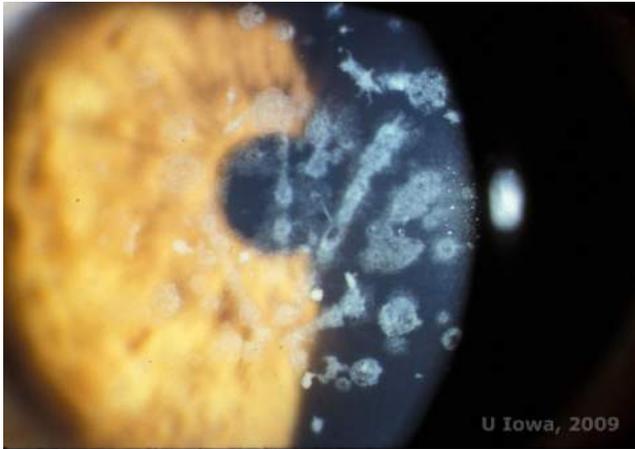
toms of GCD2 are pain with epithelial erosions and visual impairment (2).

Histopathologically, the cornea will have stromal deposits that stain red with Masson Trichrome, indicating the presence of hyaline (See Figure 4C). In addition, staining with Congo red will demonstrate apple-green birefringence on cross-polarization indicating the presence of amyloid (See Figure 4D). The disease was thought to have originated from a family in Avellino, Italy. However, GCD type II has now been reported in patients from many other countries as well (2,5), with the highest prevalence being in east Asia.

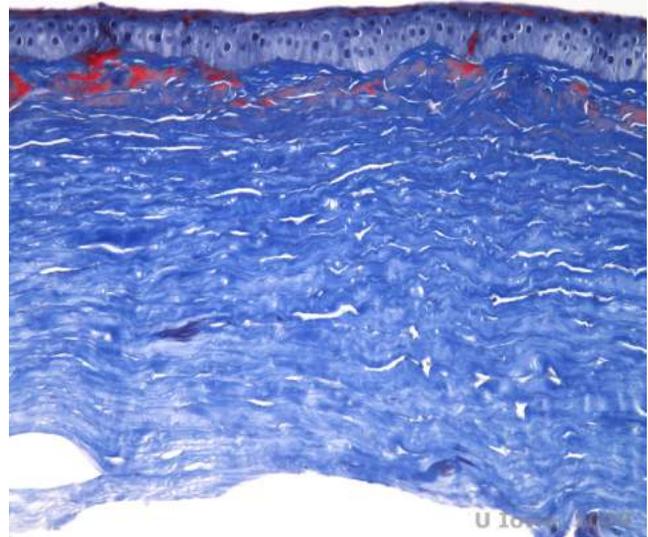
STROMAL CORNEAL DYSTROPHIES

MACULAR CORNEAL DYSTROPHY

Macular corneal dystrophy (MCD) is an autosomal recessive disease caused by a mutation in carbohydrate sulfotransferase 6 gene (*CHST6*) on chromosome 16 that leads to a defect in the synthesis of keratan sulfate, the major



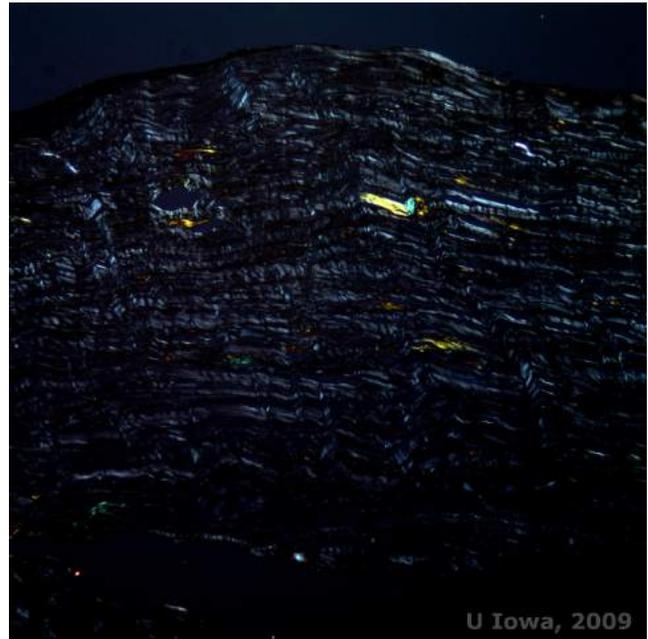
A: Avellino dystrophy showing lattice like and granular like deposits in corneal stroma



B. Masson Trichrome stain demonstrating anterior stromal hyaline deposits



C: Congo red stain showing pink, amorphous amyloid deposits in the same corneal specimen.



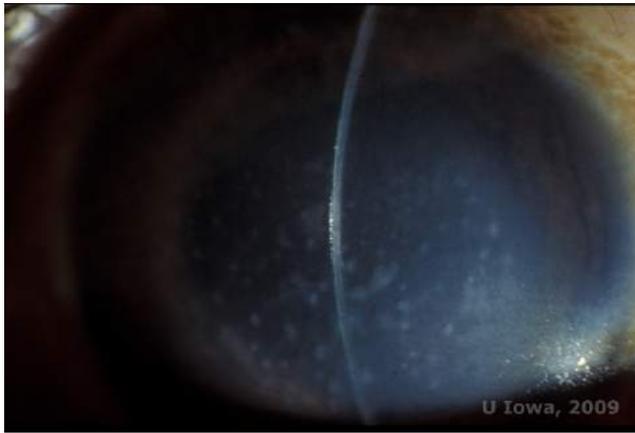
D: Cross-polarization reveals apple green birefringence indicating amyloid.

Figure 4. Type II granular corneal dystrophy Avellino dystrophy

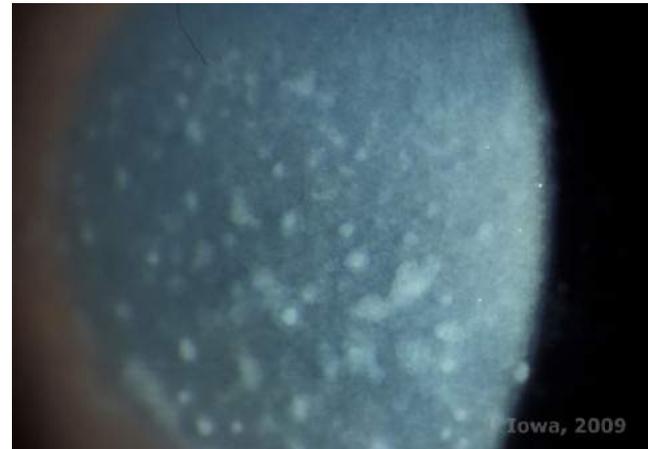
glycosaminoglycan of the cornea. It is the less common than LCD or GCD, but tends to impact vision more severely. Although MCD is less common worldwide than LCD or GCD, it is the most common of the corneal stromal dystrophies in places such as Iceland and Saudi Arabia (2,6). Gray-white, fleck-like anterior stromal lesions similar to GCD1 appear in the cornea in the first decade of life. Unlike GCD1, however, there is stromal haze between the deposits and the entire cornea from limbus to limbus is often involved (See Figure 5A and 5B). The cornea is thin and as the disorder progresses Descemet membrane becomes

grey and develops guttae. Epithelial erosions can occur, but less in MCD than in LCD. Patients typically develop severe visual loss by the second to third decade of life due to diffuse corneal haze. PTK can be performed in some early cases of MCD. However, this condition is generally not as amenable to PTK as lattice or granular dystrophy and often requires corneal transplantation for treatment (7). Recurrence in grafts is less common in MCD than with granular or lattice dystrophy (1,2,5,6,8).

The stromal deposits in MCD are composed of mucopolysaccharides that accumulate within the endoplasmic



A: Slit lamp photo of macular corneal dystrophy.



B: Note the haze between the corneal stromal deposits



C: H&E of cornea with macular dystrophy. Note anterior stromal deposits and Bowman's layer disruption



D: Mucopolysaccharide deposits within keratocytes highlighted with Alcian Blue stain

Figure 5. Macular corneal dystrophy

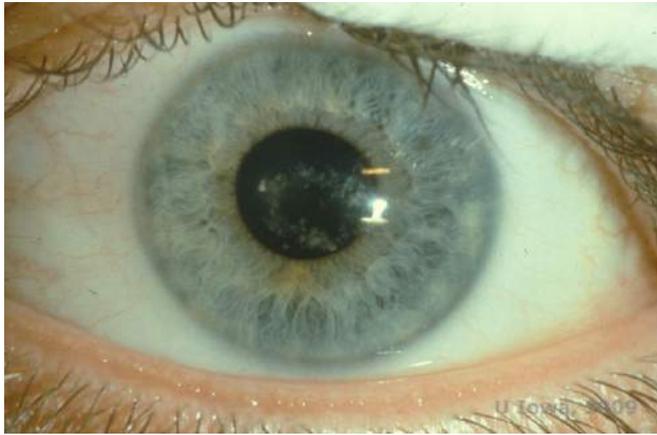
reticulum of keratocytes of the corneal stroma, extracellularly between stromal lamellae, and within the epithelium, Descemet membrane and endothelium. These deposits stain blue with Alcian blue (See figure 5C and 5D) (1). There are breaks in Bowman layer and guttae with thickening of Descemet membrane (2).

Three subtypes of MCD have been described based on the presence or absence of immunoreactive keratan sulfate within various tissues. Type I does not have immunoreactive keratan sulfate in the corneal stroma, keratocytes, sera or cartilage, and is the most common variant of MCD worldwide. Type IA lacks keratan sulfate in the stroma, sera, and cartilage, but has detectable levels inside keratocytes. Type II has keratan sulfate present at much reduced levels in the stroma, keratocytes, sera and cartilage (6).

SCHNYDER CORNEAL DYSTROPHY (SCD)

Schnyder corneal dystrophy (SCD), previously known as Schnyder crystalline corneal dystrophy, is an autosomal

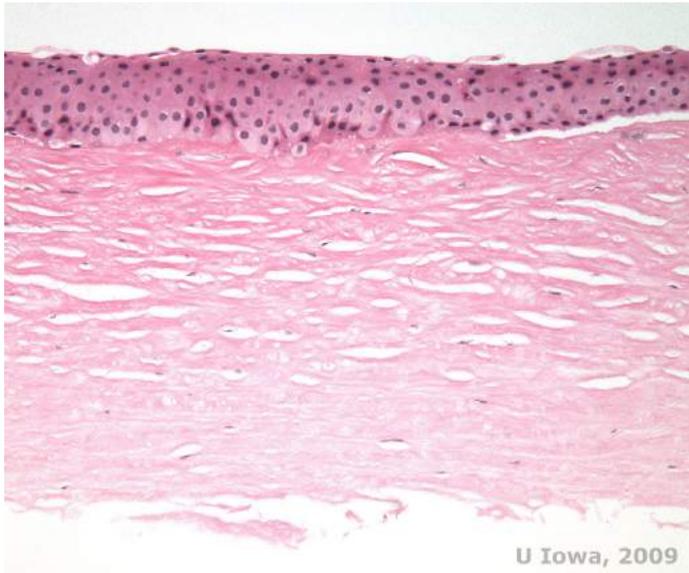
dominant, bilateral corneal stromal dystrophy linked to a genetic mutation in UbiA prenyltransferase domain containing 1 (UBIAD1) gene on chromosome 1. The resulting metabolic defect of corneal keratocytes leads to crystalline cholesterol deposition in the stroma. However, presence of crystals is not absolutely necessary for the diagnosis of SCD. In fact, only 54% of patients with SCD have corneal crystals. Typically, patients present in the second or third decade with a ring-shaped central corneal opacity with or without comma-shaped subepithelial crystals (See Figure 6A and 6B). Then, arcus lipoides appears between the ages of 23 and 38. After age 38, progressive corneal clouding results in a panstromal haze reaching the midperiphery. Most patients over 50 years of age have photopic vision loss, glare, and decreased corneal sensation, and therefore, may require surgical treatment including corneal transplantation or PKT. Recurrence in the graft may occur. The disease has been linked with hypercholesterolemia, hyperlipidemia and genu valgum in some patients (2,5,9,10).



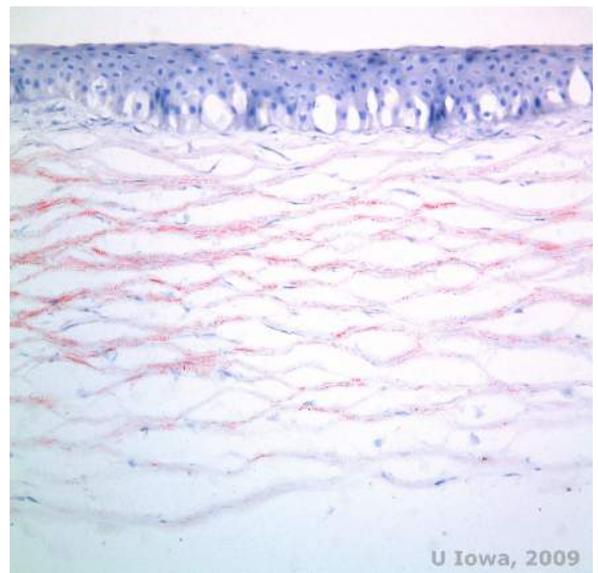
A: Slit lamp photo of Schnyder Corneal Dystrophy.



B. Centrally located crystalline deposits



C: H&E of cornea with SCCD



D. Oil Red O stain highlights cholesterol crystals that appear red.

Figure 6. Schnyder corneal dystrophy

Histopathologically, birefringent cholesterol crystals composed of phospholipids and cholesterol deposit within basal epithelial cells, keratocytes, Bowman's layer, and between stromal lamellae. Lipids dissolve in normal histologic processing, so frozen sections through the cornea must be obtained to demonstrate the presence of lipid with Oil-Red-O or Sudan black stains.

Table 4 provides a common mnemonic for memorizing some of the corneal dystrophies affecting the stroma, the composition of their deposit, and the method of staining these deposits is listed.

Table 4: Mnemonic for remembering corneal stromal dystrophies

- ◆ Marilyn—Macular Dystrophy
- ◆ Monroe—Mucopolysaccharide
- ◆ Always—Alcian Blue stain
- ◆ Gets—Granular Dystrophy
- ◆ Her—Hyaline
- ◆ Man in—Masson Trichrome stain
- ◆ Los—Lattice Dystrophy
- ◆ Angeles—Amyloid
- ◆ California—Congo Red

OVERVIEW: CORNEAL STROMAL DYSTROPHIES

<p>EPIDEMIOLOGY</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Autosomal Dominant disease <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Reis-Bucklers corneal dystrophy (RBCD) ○ Granular corneal dystrophy(GCD1) ○ Granular corneal dystrophy, type II (GCD2) ○ Lattice corneal dystrophy(LCD) ○ Schnyder corneal dystrophy(SCD) ◆ Autosomal Recessive <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Macular corneal dystrophy(MCD) ◆ Present in 1st-3rd decade of life 	<p>SIGNS</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Recurrent erosions ◆ Bilateral corneal stromal deposits in various patterns <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Crumb-like deposits for GCD1, GCD2, RBCD ○ Lattice lines for LCD ○ Diffuse haze and stromal deposits for MCD ◆ Central corneal opacity or crystalline deposits with surrounding Arcus for SCD
<p>SYMPTOMS</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Initially none ◆ Bilateral recurrent erosions causing pain, tearing, and foreign body sensation ◆ Over time can have decreased vision 	<p>TREATMENT</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Early in course <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Observation ○ Lubrication ○ Manage recurrent erosions with bandage contact lens and topical antibiotic (erythromycin ointment or 3rd-4th generation fluoroquinolone) ◆ Phototherapeutic Keratectomy ◆ Corneal Transplantation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ If recurrent erosions severe or if decreased vision ○ Recurs in grafts

Related EyeRounds Entries

- ◆ Avellino Dystrophy EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Avellino-dystrophy
- ◆ Central cloudy dystrophy of Francois EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Central-cloudy-dystrophy-of-Francois.html
- ◆ Granular corneal dystrophy, type I EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Granular-corneal-dystrophy
- ◆ Granular corneal dystrophy, type II EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Avellino-dystrophy
- ◆ Lattice corneal dystrophy, type I EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/lattice-corneal-dystrophy.htm
- ◆ Lattice corneal dystrophy, type II, Meretoja Syndrome webeye.ophth.uiowa.edu/eyeforum/cases/176-meretoja.htm
- ◆ Macular corneal dystrophy EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/macular-corneal-dystrophy.htm
- ◆ Polymorphic Amyloidosis webeye.ophth.uiowa.edu/eyeforum/cases/173-Polymorphic-amyloid-degeneration.htm
- ◆ Reis-Bucklers corneal dystrophy (RBCD) EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Reis-Bucklers.htm
- ◆ Schnyder corneal dystrophy EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Schnyder-dystrophy
- ◆ Reis-Bucklers corneal dystrophy EyeRounds.org/atlas/pages/Reis-Bucklers.htm

References

1. Keefe KS, Milman T, Rodrigues MM, Hidayat AA. Conjunctival and Corneal Pathology. Albert and Jakobiec's Principles and Practice of Ophthalmology, 3rd edition. Saunders. 2008: 3592-3595.
2. Weiss JS, et al. IC3D classification of corneal dystrophies--edition 2. Cornea 2015; 34 (2): 117-159.
3. Lakshminarayanan R, et al. Clinical and genetic aspects of the TGFBI-associated corneal dystrophies. Ocul Surf 2014; 12 (4): 234-251.
4. Stone EM, et al. Three autosomal dominant corneal dystrophies map to chromosome 5q. Nature genet. 1994; 6: 47-51.
5. Bron AJ. Genetics of the Corneal Dystrophies: What we have learned in the past twenty five years. Cornea 2000; 19(5): 699-711.
6. Al-Swailem SA, Al-Rajhi AA, Wagoner MD. Penetrating Keratoplasty for Macular Corneal Dystrophy. Ophthalmology 2005;112: 220-224.
7. Badr IA, Wagoner MD. Phototherapeutic Keratectomy for Macular Corneal Dystrophy. J Refract Surg 1999;15:481-484.
8. Poulaki V, Colby K. Genetics of anterior and stromal corneal dystrophies. Seminars in Ophthalmology, 2008; 23: 1,9-17.

9. Weiss JS. Schnyder corneal dystrophy. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2009; 20 (4): 292-298
10. Shearman AM, Hudson TJ, Andresen JM, et al. The gene for Schnyder's crystalline corneal dystrophy maps to human chromosome 1p34.1p36. *Hum Mol Genet* 1996;5:1667-72.

Citing this article

Van C, Syed NA. Epithelial-Stromal and Stromal Corneal Dystrophies: A Clinicopathologic Review. Revision of [Birkholz ES, Syed NA, Wagoner, MD. *Corneal Stromal Dystrophies: A Clinicopathologic Review*. Aug. 17, 2009]; *EyeRounds.org*. August 20, 2015. Available from: eyerounds.org/cases/43-Corneal-Stromal-Dystrophies.htm

last updated: 08-20-2015

Ocular Surface Tumors

Matthew Benage, MD; Austin R. Fox, MD; Michelle R. Boyce, MD; Mark A. Greiner, MD

Key contributor: Nasreen A. Syed, MD

December 20, 2017

Introduction

Ocular surface tumors are rare but potentially deadly diseases of the conjunctiva and/or cornea. It is important for ophthalmologists to recognize the characteristics of ocular surface tumors and to have an understanding of their management. Below, we will review the diagnosis, pathology, and treatment of the most common ocular surface tumors.

Conjunctival Melanoma

Epidemiology and Risk Factors

Conjunctival melanomas (CM) comprise approximately 2% of all ocular surface malignancies and 0.25% of all melanomas.[1] Non-Hispanic Caucasians are most commonly affected, with an incidence of 0.2-0.8 per million. Non-whites are rarely affected.[2] Studies have failed to show consistent predilection for sex.[3] The median age of presentation is approximately 60 years.[4] Risk factors have been difficult to ascertain due to the low incidence of disease. However, studies have reported risk for those with fair skin and hair, a family history, certain genetic syndromes (familial melanoma syndromes, xeroderma pigmentosum), and significant ultraviolet (UV) light exposure.[5-7]

The Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) study reported an increased incidence of conjunctival melanoma in white males. The mechanism is hypothesized to be secondary to increased UV light exposure.[8] There is also a strong association between primary acquired melanosis (PAM) and conjunctival nevi with CM.[4,9] In particular, PAM with severe atypia transforms into CM in 13% of cases, with greater risk associated with more extensive circumferential spread of PAM.[9] PAM without atypia or with mild atypia does not demonstrate a predisposition for

progression to melanoma.[9] Conjunctival melanomas arise from three sources: PAM, de novo, and nevus; with PAM being most common and nevus being least common.[4]

Clinical Features

CM commonly presents as a raised, thick, pigmented lesion with surrounding feeder vessels. However, amelanotic lesions occur in approximately 15-20% of cases.[10] CM is typically unilateral and can occur at almost any anatomical location within the conjunctiva, with the most common location being on the bulbar conjunctiva (Figures 1 and 2).[10] Less commonly, CM occurs on the palpebral and forniceal conjunctiva, the plica semilunaris, caruncle, or cornea, with these locations portending a poorer prognosis.[10] Deep extension into the cornea is limited by Bowman's membrane, which acts as a barrier, though it can extend across the corneal epithelium (Figure 3).[1] CM has a propensity to metastasize, most commonly to the preauricular or anterior cervical lymph nodes.

Differential Diagnosis

Melanocytic tumors of the conjunctiva and cornea include benign conjunctival nevi, primary acquired melanosis (PAM), as well as the less common, but more dangerous, invasive melanoma. Therefore, an important task is differentiating CM from PAM and conjunctival nevi.



Figure 1: Conjunctival melanoma. Slit lamp photograph demonstrating a slightly elevated pigmented lesion with small feeder vessels. Clinically, there was recent growth noted, initiating biopsy and subsequent diagnosis of conjunctival melanoma

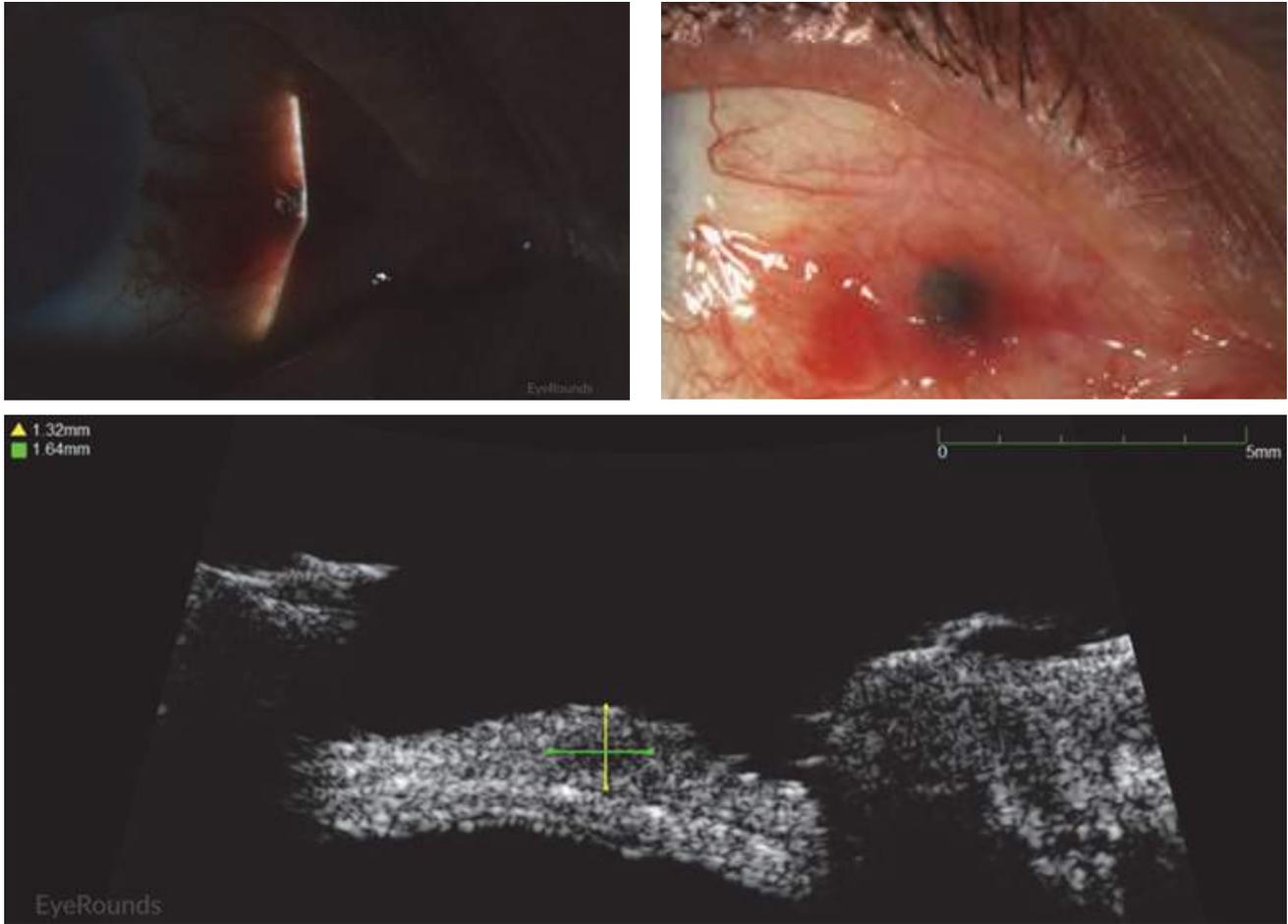


Figure 2: Conjunctival melanoma recurrence.

Slit lamp photograph demonstrating recurrence of amelanotic melanoma with underlying scleral degeneration (upper images). High-frequency anterior segment ultrasound displaying elevation of conjunctival lesion without extension into sclera (bottom image).



Figure 3: Conjunctival melanoma after resection.

Slit lamp photo demonstrating the recurrence of a large raised, pigmented lesion extending onto the cornea with a prominent feeder vessel. see <http://eyerounds.org/cases/case15.htm>

Primary Acquired Melanosis (PAM)

PAM is a common entity, with one study of Caucasians displaying PAM in one-third of patients.[11] PAM typically presents as a unilateral, pigmented, flat, non-cystic lesion on the conjunctiva, often with pigment stippling extending beyond the main concentration of pigmentation (Figure 4). PAM involves the conjunctiva, unlike scleral pigmentation that occurs in ocular melanocytosis. Therefore, the overlying pigmented conjunctiva can be moved with a cotton tip over the underlying sclera.

While no consensus has been established for clinical characteristics that distinguish between benign PAM from premalignant PAM or malignant melanoma, suspicion should be high for lesions that display the following characteristics: extension of pigmentation greater than 3 clock hours of conjunctiva, large, raised, thickened, darkly melanotic, multifocal, or rapidly progressive lesions. In addition, lesions in unusual locations such as the fornix, semilunar fold, caruncle, or palpebral conjunctiva should be viewed with suspicion for malignant potential (Table 1). Importantly, an extension of pigmentation >3 clock hours portends a 20% risk of malignant transformation. Each clock hour increases relative risk of transformation to melanoma by 1.7 times.[9]

Conjunctival Nevi

Conjunctival nevi typically present as unilateral, pigmented, and oftentimes cystic lesions (figure 5). These lesions are typically located on the limbal or perilimbal conjunctiva in the interpalpebral fissure. An important distinguishing factor from invasive melanoma is the lack of prominent feeder vessels and presence of cysts. It is believed that some conjunctival nevi may rarely undergo malignant transformation.[12]

Pathology

Malignant conjunctival melanoma is composed of invasive anaplastic melanocytes, which invade the underlying basement membrane of the substantia propria (Figure 6). [14] Invasion may be noted within the vessels, lymphatics, sclera, or cornea. It is important to evaluate deep and peripheral margins for tumor invasion, which requires careful tissue handling at the time of biopsy. Adjacent areas of PAM with atypia or nevi can be noted.

Primary acquired melanosis (PAM) is identified as abnormal, prominent intraepithelial melanocytes secondary to increased melanin and/or hyperplasia of melanocytes within the conjunctiva. Further classification is based upon presence and growth pattern of melanocytic hyperplasia, as well as the presence of atypical melanocytes. PAM without atypia is characterized by minimal melanocytic hyperplasia with minimal atypia of melanocytes. PAM with atypia is characterized by nests of atypical melanocytes and melanocytic hyperplasia. Atypia of melanocytes is defined by abnormally large cells, high nuclear to cytoplasmic ratio, and prominent nucleoli with mitotic figures (Figure 7).

Table 1. PAM Risk Factors

Higher Risk	Lower Risk
>3 clock hours involvement of conjunctiva	Small, circumscribed without extensive involvement of conjunctiva
Extension onto cornea	Confinement to the conjunctiva
Nodular	Flat
Multifocal	One lesion
Highly vascular	Minimal vasculature
History of skin or conjunctival melanoma	No history of skin or conjunctival melanoma
Older age	Young age

The typical **melanocytic conjunctival nevus** displays conjunctival architecture composed of nests of benign melanocytes within the superficial substantia propria and epithelium. [13] Inclusion cysts are frequently noted in the conjunctiva (Figure 8 and 9). Nevi tend to migrate deeper as patients age.

While clinical characteristics may suggest a lesion is PAM or conjunctival nevi, any concern or uncertainty in diagnosis should be confirmed by biopsy.

Treatment

The surgical management of any suspicious pigmented conjunctival lesion is a complete excisional biopsy of the lesion with cryotherapy to the surrounding conjunctiva. At the University of Iowa, our preferred practice pattern is excisional biopsy with 4-5 mm of clear margins using a no-touch technique (topical absolute alcohol before and, if possible, after excision as long as not located over a muscle) with adjuvant cryotherapy, double freeze-thaw, and ocular surface reconstruction with amniotic membrane grafting. [15] Adjuvant post-excisional therapies include topical and/or subconjunctival injection of interferon alpha-2b, topical mitomycin C, brachytherapy, or external beam radiotherapy and proton beam radiotherapy, which are typically reserved for recurrent cases. No consensus exists regarding the best adjuvant treatment. Rarely, enucleation is indicated due to intraocular invasion or exenteration is indicated due to unresectable orbital invasion though there is no survival benefit. [16]

Video 1. Conjunctival Melanoma: "No Touch" Excisional Biopsy. See: youtu.be/ESETk1I5kfw

Video 2. Conjunctival Melanoma - Excisional Biopsy with Lamellar Sclerokeratectomy. See: youtu.be/znvJSwa9If0



Figure 4: Primary acquired melanosis. Slit lamp photo displaying flat, non-cystic PAM that covers 2.5-3 clock hours of conjunctiva. (see: eyerounds.org/atlas/pages/primary-acquired-.htm)



Figure 5: Conjunctival nevus . Slit lamp photograph displaying a well circumscribed, slightly elevated lesion. Note the small cysts medially. (see: eyerounds.org/atlas/pages/Pigmented-Conjunctival-Nevus.html)

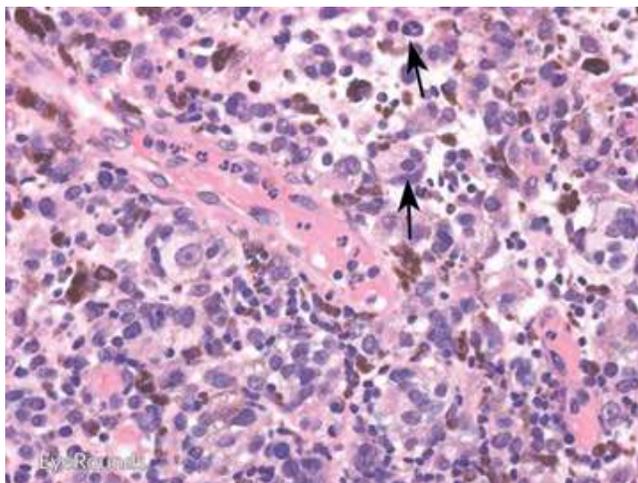
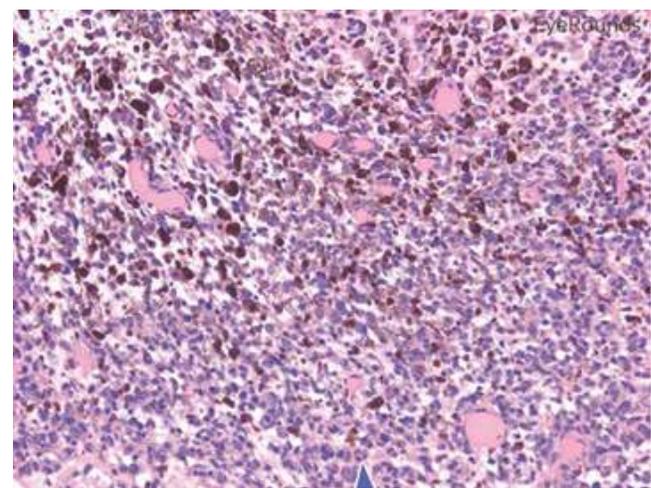
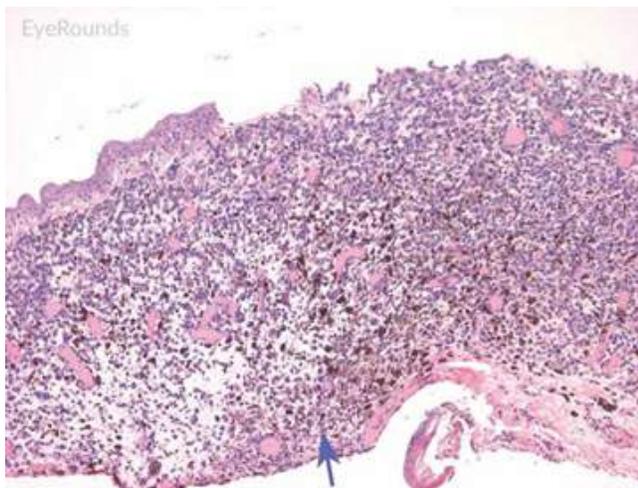


Figure 6: Invasive conjunctival melanoma. Hematoxylin and eosin stain displaying malignant melanoma invading the underlying substantia propria (blue arrow). Cytologically, the cells are notable for dysplastic features and prominent nucleoli with irregular shape and chromatin (black arrow).

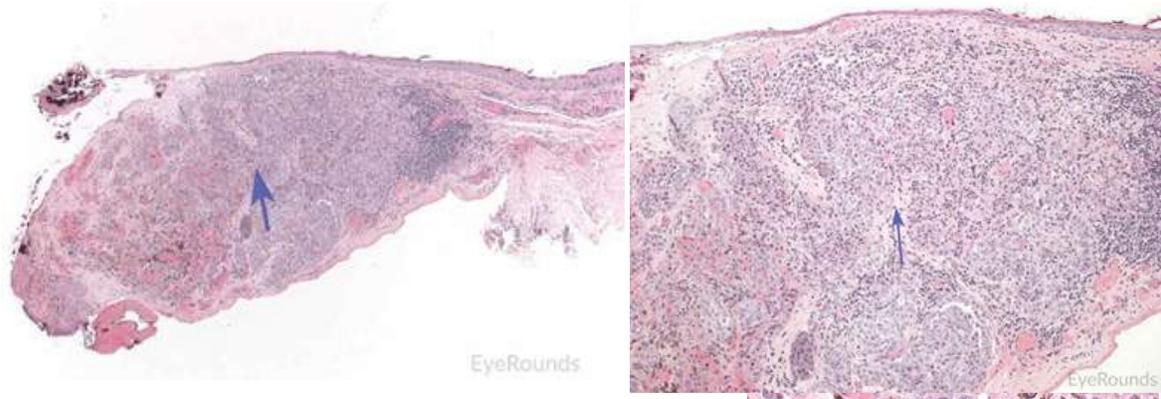


Figure 7: Primary acquired melanosis with severe atypia. Hematoxylin and eosin stain displaying PAM. The cells are characterized by abnormal melanocytes at the basal layer. Note abnormal melanocytes with dysplastic appearing nuclei (black arrow) and full thickness infiltration (blue arrow) of melanocytic cells.

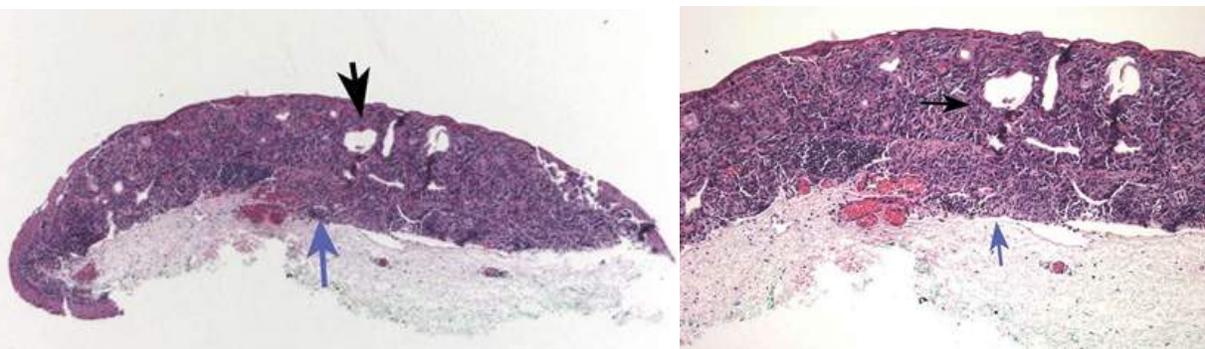


Figure 8: Junctional conjunctival nevus. Hematoxylin and eosin stain displaying conjunctival nevus from young patient at the border of the basal epithelial layer and underlying substantia propria (blue arrow). Note the cysts within the lesion (black arrow).

Follow-up and Prognosis

Currently, there are no guidelines for systemic evaluation for metastases, with different institutions following local practice patterns. In general, positron emission tomography/computed tomography (PET/CT) scans, chest x-ray, liver ultrasound and liver function tests (LFTs) can be performed. Sentinel lymph node biopsies may be performed for tumors greater than 2 mm in thickness or in cases in which there is a higher degree of suspicion for metastasis such as recurrent biopsy-proven melanoma. [17]

Ocular surface melanoma related mortality rates at 10 years are 25-30%. [4] The most common locations for metastases are the lungs, brain, liver, skin, and bones. [17] Local recurrence occurs in up to 40% of cases, with risk factors including: thickness of primary tumor (greater than 2 mm), incomplete excision at the time of surgery, non-limbal tumor location (fornix, semilunar fold, caruncle,

or tarsal conjunctiva), and older patient age. [6] Tumors at the caruncle portend the worst prognosis, with up to 50% mortality at 3 years (Table 2).

Table 2. Prognostic Indicators for Conjunctival Melanoma

Higher Risk	Lower Risk
Tarsus, caruncle, forniceal involvement	Localized
Deeper extension into tissue	Limbal or bulbar
Thickness >1.8 mm	Thin
Lymphadenopathy	
Lid margin involvement	

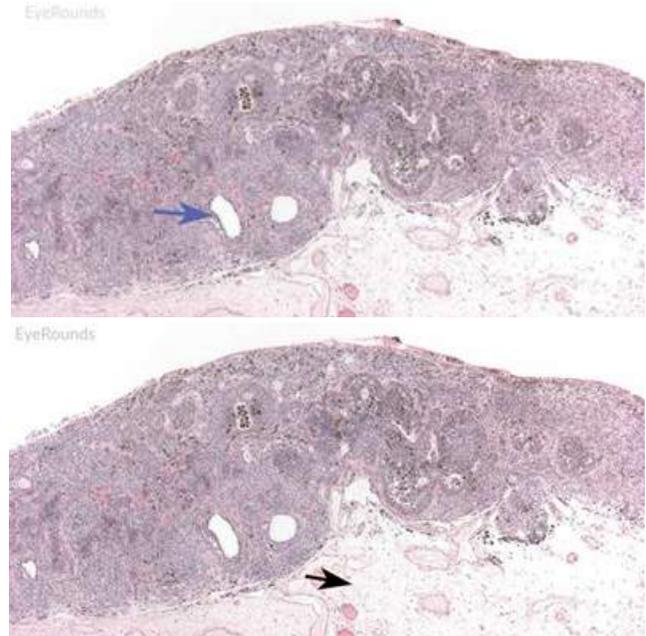
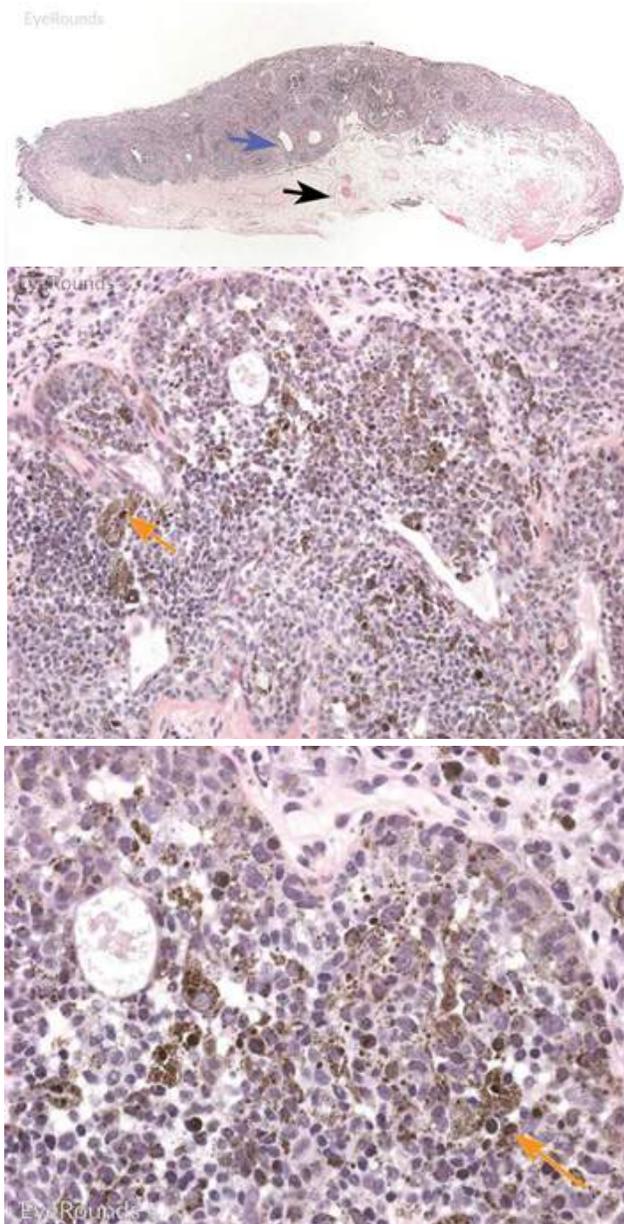


Figure 9: Conjunctival nevus. Hematoxylin and eosin stain displaying conjunctival nevus. Note the diffuse infiltration of melanocytes without atypia or dysplastic features (orange arrows). Note the cysts within the lesion (blue arrow) and intact substantia propria (black arrow).

Ocular Surface Squamous Neoplasia

Epidemiology and Risk Factors

Ocular surface squamous neoplasia (OSSN) is the most common type of primary ocular surface neoplasm. It consists of a broad range of pathologic squamous cell dysplasia including: conjunctival and corneal intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN), with mild, moderate, and severe atypia, carcinoma in situ, and invasive squamous cell carcinoma (SCC). [18] OSSN is rare, with incidence of 0.02-3.5 per 100,000, and most commonly affects older adults. There is greater incidence near the equator. [19] Risk factors include male gender, advanced age, exposure to tobacco smoke, ultraviolet B light, chemical exposure, human papillomavirus (HPV) infection types 16 and 18, and immunosuppression including human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). [20]

Clinical Features

OSSN clinical manifestations occurs on a spectrum. Most lesions are pathologically benign, such as papillomas or actinic keratosis. However, other lesions are more nefarious, such as carcinoma in situ and invasive squamous cell carcinoma.

OSSN appears on slit lamp biomicroscopy as a poorly defined gelatinous lesion, usually blending with surrounding conjunctiva. There is typically an abrupt transition from normal to dysplastic epithelium. [22] Conjunctival carcinoma in situ appears as a papillary mass, usually near the limbus, with minimal leukoplakia (Figure 10). Invasive squamous cell carcinoma, representing the final stage of malignancy (occurring in less than 2% of cases), manifests as a raised, poorly defined, gelatinous lesion with or without leukoplakia. Feeder vessels often supply invasive

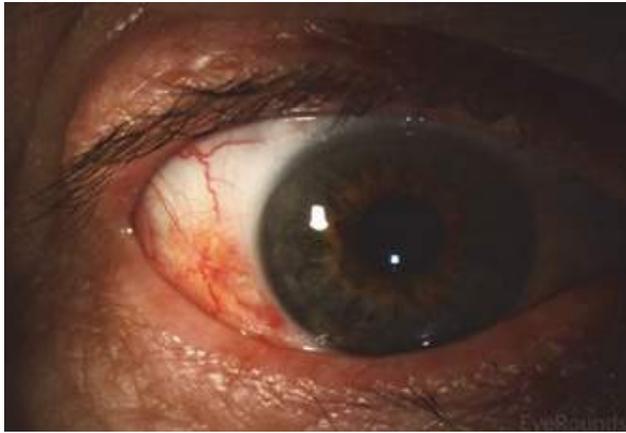


Figure 10: Conjunctival squamous cell carcinoma in situ. Slit lamp photograph displaying patchy, limbal-based gelatinous mass. Vascular engorgement is noted. This is an example of carcinoma in situ.

masses, and as the lesion becomes more advanced, there is decreasing mobility of the tumor due to the conjunctiva becoming fixed to the deeper sclera. It should be noted that carcinoma in situ and invasive squamous cell carcinoma can be very difficult to differentiate at the slit lamp. Thus, biopsy is very helpful in making the diagnosis.

Pathology

The gold standard for diagnosis is histopathological evaluation following biopsy. Carcinoma in situ is characterized by full-thickness replacement of the epithelium with anaplastic cells; however, the basement membrane remains intact and the underlying substantia propria is not affected. Histology displays a mixture of spindle and epidermoid cells, with disorganization of cells, increased nuclear to cytoplasm ratio, and abnormal polarity. There is generally a characteristic demarcation between diseased epithelium and adjacent normal tissue (Figure 11). [24] Invasive squamous cell carcinoma is characterized by severely anaplastic cells with penetration of the basement membrane and extension into the underlying stromal tissue (Figure 12). As

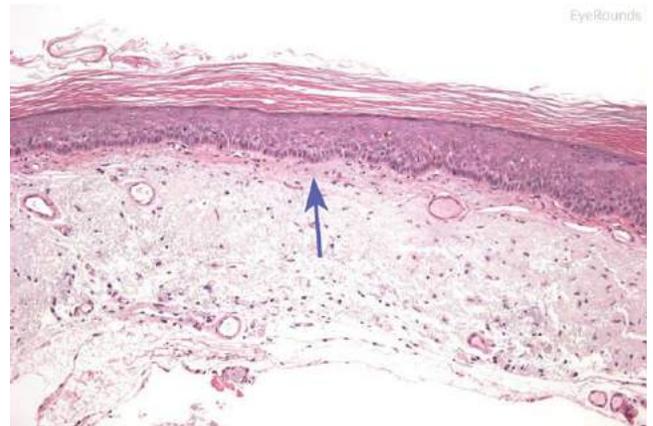


Figure 11: Carcinoma in situ. Hematoxylin and eosin stain displaying full thickness dysplastic changes, without extension below basal epithelial layer (blue arrow).



Figure 12: Invasive conjunctival squamous cell carcinoma. Hematoxylin and eosin stain displaying full thickness squamous cell carcinoma (blue arrow) with breakthrough of basement membrane. Image on right displays acanthosis, dyskeratosis, and bizarre cells (black arrow).

the tumor invades, it can appear as cords of invasive cells or as broad, expansive fronds. [24] Spindle cell carcinoma and mucoepidermoid cell carcinoma are variants representing more invasive tumors.

Treatment

Adequate treatment of squamous cell neoplasms depends upon the clinical characteristics of the lesions. Factors such as size, location, and invasiveness of the tumor influence the appropriate treatment of neoplasms. For discrete masses, complete excision with adequate margins is the treatment of choice, often aided by alcohol epitheliectomy. It is important to ensure adequate margins, which may include up to 3-4 mm of uninvolved conjunctiva. Most surgeons will apply double freeze thaw cryotherapy to the adjacent bulbar conjunctiva in order to provide better local control. Additionally, amniotic membrane grafts can be used to close a resection site. Other adjunctive therapies include interferon α 2b, mitomycin C, and 5-fluorouracil. No consensus exists for use of these therapies. [25] Interferon α 2b is commonly used due to its lower risk profile. Enucleation or exenteration may be required with invasive squamous cell carcinoma. Enucleation is necessary in cases of invasion through the cornea or sclera without orbital or regional spread. Exenteration is necessary when tumor has invaded the orbit. [26]

Video 3. Conjunctival Excisional Biopsy for Ocular Surface Squamous Neoplasia.

See: vimeo.com/169300308

Follow up and Prognosis

Outcomes for squamous cell tumors are related to the degree of aggressiveness of the tumors. For carcinoma in situ, patients with completely excised tumors have great outcomes, with risk of local recurrence around 2% and regional lymph node metastasis at around 1%. [27] If there is a recurrence, more aggressive resection as well as use of adjunctive therapies may be required. In cases of invasive squamous cell carcinoma with complete resection the rate of local recurrence is 5%, with approximately 2% displaying regional lymph node metastases. [28]

Lymphoid Tumors

Epidemiology and Risk Factors

Lymphoid tumors of the conjunctiva can present on a spectrum from benign to malignant disease. Benign tumors are reactive lymphoid hyperplasia, intermediate lesions present as atypical lymphoid hyperplasia, and malignant tumors are lymphomas. Lymphoid tumors of the conjunctiva are very rare, and the exact incidence is unknown. In a large series of conjunctival tumors, Shields et al. noted 128 lymphoid lesions out of 1634 total tumors. [29] Malignant lymphomas tend to occur in older adults, while benign lymphoid tumors tend to occur in younger patients. Known risk factors for malignancy include older age, history of systemic lymphoma, and immunosuppression. [30]

Clinical Presentation

Conjunctival lymphoid tumors appear as salmon colored, smooth, elevated lesions of the bulbar or forniceal conjunctiva (Figures 13 & 14). There is a predisposition for the inferior fornix. [31] Nasal lesions have poor outcomes due to potentially deeper extension into surrounding tissue. Bilateral involvement is present in up to 20% of all patients, although the lesions tend to be asymmetric. Importantly, systemic lymphoma develops in 17% of patients with unilateral lesions and in 47% of patients with bilateral disease. [31] It is difficult to differentiate benign reactive lymphoid hyperplasia from malignant lymphoma on slit lamp exam. Thus, excisional biopsy is required for diagnosis.



Figure 13: Conjunctival benign lymphoid hyperplasia. Slit lamp photo displaying superior conjunctival lesion with characteristic salmon patch appearance.

Pathology

It is important to obtain immunofluorescence testing and fresh samples for appropriate pathological diagnosis. Benign reactive lymphoid hyperplasia is characterized by polymorphic, well-differentiated lymphocytes and possibly plasma cells. These cells tend to have well-developed germinal centers. Lymphomas are monomorphic, without germinal centers. Flow cytometry is helpful in determining whether cells are monoclonal or polyclonal, whether cells are B or T cells, and if DNA abnormalities are present. The majority of conjunctival lymphomas are B cell lymphomas (68-81%). [32,33]

Treatment

Treatment of lymphoid tumors depends upon the underlying diagnosis. In a patient with a suspected lymphoid tumor, a complete medical workup for systemic lymphoma is warranted. Included in the initial investigation is a history and physical, complete blood count with differential, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of brain and orbits, as well as PET scan to identify a systemic lymphoma. In addition to a comprehensive evaluation, excisional biopsy should be completed to identify the underlying pathology. In the case of benign reactive lymphoid hyperplasia, treatment can be observation or topical steroids for a few weeks. In the case of low-grade lymphoid neoplasm, low-

dose external beam radiation therapy is recommended. In the case of high-grade lymphoma, higher dose external beam radiation is recommended (usually 40-45Gy). [34] Generally, lymphomas respond well to radiation. If systemic lymphoma is discovered on workup, then treatment consists of chemotherapy with or without radiation. [30]

Follow up and Prognosis

Patients with benign reactive lymphoid hyperplasia have a very good prognosis, and lesions generally resolve with

excision, steroids, or observation. Most localized lymphomas respond well to excision and radiation. In patients with systemic lymphoma, chemotherapy is often indicated for treatment, with rituximab as the treatment of choice. A recent study reported that the 10-year progression free survival in bilateral disease is 48% compared to 72% survival rate in those with unilateral disease. [35] Due to risk of recurrence, patients with lymphoma should be followed indefinitely, with follow up every 3 months for the first year, and every 6-12 months thereafter. [36]

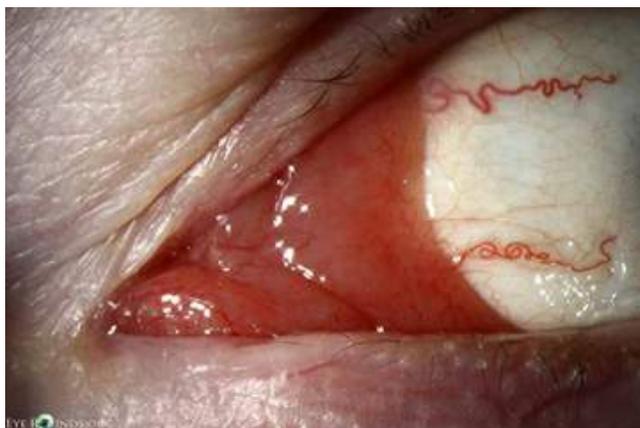


Figure 14: Conjunctival lymphoma.
Slit lamp photo displaying salmon patch lesion extending into the semilunaris and caruncle.

References

- Seregard S. Conjunctival melanoma. *Surv Ophthalmol* 1998;42(4):321-350. PubMed.gov/9493274
- Isager P, Osterlind A, Engholm G, Heegaard S, Lindegaard J, Overgaard J, Storm HH. Uveal and conjunctival malignant melanoma in Denmark, 1943-97: incidence and validation study. *Ophthalmic Epidemiol* 2005;12(4):223-232. PubMed.gov/16033743 DOI: 10.1080/09286580591000836
- McLaughlin CC, Wu XC, Jemal A, Martin HJ, Roche LM, Chen VW. Incidence of noncutaneous melanomas in the U.S. *Cancer* 2005;103(5):1000-1007. PubMed.gov/15651058 . DOI: 10.1002/cncr.20866
- Shields CL, Shields JA, Gunduz K, Cater J, Mercado GV, Gross N, Lally B. Conjunctival melanoma: risk factors for recurrence, exenteration, metastasis, and death in 150 consecutive patients. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2000;118(11):1497-1507. PubMed.gov/11074806
- Gandini S, Sera F, Cattaruzza MS, Pasquini P, Zanetti R, Masini C, Boyle P, Melchi CF. Meta-analysis of risk factors for cutaneous melanoma: III. Family history, actinic damage and phenotypic factors. *Eur J Cancer* 2005;41(14):2040-2059. PubMed.gov/16125929 . DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2005.03.034
- Wong JR, Nanji AA, Galor A, Karp CL. Management of conjunctival malignant melanoma: a review and update. *Expert Rev Ophthalmol* 2014;9(3):185-204. PubMed.gov/25580155 . DOI: 10.1586/17469899.2014.921119
- Hurst EA, Harbour JW, Cornelius LA. Ocular melanoma: a review and the relationship to cutaneous melanoma. *Arch Dermatol* 2003;139(8):1067-1073. PubMed.gov/12925397 . DOI: 10.1001/archderm.139.8.1067
- Yu GP, Hu DN, McCormick S, Finger PT. Conjunctival melanoma: is it increasing in the United States? *Am J Ophthalmol* 2003;135(6):800-806. PubMed.gov/12788119
- Shields JA, Shields CL, Mashayekhi A, Marr BP, Benavides R, Thangappan A, Phan L, Eagle RC, Jr. Primary acquired melanosis of the conjunctiva: experience with 311 eyes. *Trans Am Ophthalmol Soc* 2007;105:61-71; discussion 71-62. PubMed.gov/18427595
- Shields CL, Markowitz JS, Belinsky I, Schwartzstein H, George NS, Lally SE, Mashayekhi A, Shields JA. Conjunctival melanoma: outcomes based on tumor origin in 382 consecutive cases. *Ophthalmology* 2011;118(2):389-395 e381-382. PubMed.gov/20723990 . DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2010.06.021
- Gloor P, Alexandrakis G. Clinical characterization of primary acquired melanosis. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis*

- Sci 1995;36(8):1721-1729.
 iovs.arvojournals.org/article.aspx?articleid=2161849
12. Gerner N, Norregaard JC, Jensen OA, Prause JU. Conjunctival naevi in Denmark 1960-1980. A 21-year follow-up study. *Acta Ophthalmol Scand* 1996;74(4):334-337. PubMed.gov/8883545
 13. Folberg R, Jakobiec FA, Bernardino VB, Iwamoto T. Benign conjunctival melanocytic lesions. Clinicopathologic features. *Ophthalmology* 1989;96(4):436-461. PubMed.gov/2657539
 14. Jakobiec FA, Folberg R, Iwamoto T. Clinicopathologic characteristics of premalignant and malignant melanocytic lesions of the conjunctiva. *Ophthalmology* 1989;96(2):147-166. PubMed.gov/2649838
 15. Shields JA, Shields CL, De Potter P. Surgical management of circumscribed conjunctival melanomas. *Ophthalm Plast Reconstr Surg* 1998;14(3):208-215. PubMed.gov/9612814
 16. Rodriguez-Reyes AA, Rios y Valles-Valles D, Corredor-Casas S, Gomez-Leal A. Advanced conjunctival melanoma. *Can J Ophthalmol* 2004;39(4):453-460. PubMed.gov/15327112
 17. Esmaeli B. Regional lymph node assessment for conjunctival melanoma: sentinel lymph node biopsy and positron emission tomography. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2008;92(4):443-445. PubMed.gov/18369054 . DOI: 10.1136/bjo.2007.131615
 18. Lee GA, Hirst LW. Ocular surface squamous neoplasia. *Surv Ophthalmol* 1995;39(6):429-450. PubMed.gov/7660300
 19. Kiire CA, Dhillon B. The aetiology and associations of conjunctival intraepithelial neoplasia. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2006;90(1):109-113. PubMed.gov/16361679 . DOI: 10.1136/bjo.2005.077305
 20. Karcioglu ZA, Wagoner MD. Demographics, etiology, and behavior of conjunctival squamous cell carcinoma in the 21st century. *Ophthalmology* 2009;116(11):2045-2046. PubMed.gov/19883851 . DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2009.09.031
 21. Sjo N, Heegaard S, Prause JU. Conjunctival papilloma. A histopathologically based retrospective study. *Acta Ophthalmol Scand* 2000;78(6):663-666. PubMed.gov/11167228
 22. Shields CL, Shields JA. Tumors of the conjunctiva and cornea. *Surv Ophthalmol* 2004;49(1):3-24. PubMed.gov/14711437
 23. Tunc M, Char DH, Crawford B, Miller T. Intraepithelial and invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the conjunctiva: analysis of 60 cases. *Br J Ophthalmol* 1999;83(1):98-103. PubMed.gov/10209445
 24. Mittal R, Rath S, Vemuganti GK. Ocular surface squamous neoplasia - Review of etio-pathogenesis and an update on clinico-pathological diagnosis. *Saudi J Ophthalmol* 2013;27(3):177-186. PubMed.gov/24227983 . DOI: 10.1016/j.sjopt.2013.07.002
 25. Sayed-Ahmed IO, Palioura S, Galor A, Karp CL. Diagnosis and Medical Management of Ocular Surface Squamous Neoplasia. *Expert Rev Ophthalmol* 2017;12(1):11-19. PubMed.gov/28184236 . DOI: 10.1080/17469899.2017.1263567
 26. Shields CL, Chien JL, Surakiatchanukul T, Sioufi K, Lally SE, Shields JA. Conjunctival Tumors: Review of Clinical Features, Risks, Biomarkers, and Outcomes--The 2017 J. Donald M. Gass Lecture. *Asia Pac J Ophthalmol (Phila)* 2017;6(2):109-120. PubMed.gov/28399347 . DOI: 10.22608/APO.201710
 27. Honavar SG, Manjandavida FP. Tumors of the ocular surface: A review. *Indian J Ophthalmol* 2015;63(3):187-203. PubMed.gov/25971163 . DOI: 10.4103/0301-4738.156912
 28. Tabin G, Levin S, Snibson G, Loughnan M, Taylor H. Late recurrences and the necessity for long-term follow-up in corneal and conjunctival intraepithelial neoplasia. *Ophthalmology* 1997;104(3):485-492. PubMed.gov/9082277
 29. Shields CL, Demirci H, Karatza E, Shields JA. Clinical survey of 1643 melanocytic and nonmelanocytic conjunctival tumors. *Ophthalmology* 2004;111(9):1747-1754. PubMed.gov/15350332 . DOI: 10.1016/j.ophtha.2004.02.013
 30. Tsai PS, Colby KA. Treatment of conjunctival lymphomas. *Semin Ophthalmol* 2005;20(4):239-246. PubMed.gov/16352495 . DOI: 10.1080/08820530500350845
 31. Shields CL, Shields JA, Carvalho C, Rundle P, Smith AF. Conjunctival lymphoid tumors: clinical analysis of 117 cases and relationship to systemic lymphoma. *Ophthalmology* 2001;108(5):979-984. PubMed.gov/11320031
 32. Coupland SE, Krause L, Delecluse HJ, Anagnostopoulos I, Foss HD, Hummel M, Bornfeld N, Lee WR, Stein H. Lymphoproliferative lesions of the ocular adnexa. Analysis of 112 cases. *Ophthalmology* 1998;105(8):1430-1441. PubMed.gov/9709754 . DOI: 10.1016/S0161-6420(98)98024-1

33. Knowles DM, Jakobiec FA, McNally L, Burke JS. Lymphoid hyperplasia and malignant lymphoma occurring in the ocular adnexa (orbit, conjunctiva, and eyelids): a prospective multiparametric analysis of 108 cases during 1977 to 1987. *Hum Pathol* 1990;21(9):959-973. PubMed.gov/2394438
34. Uno T, Isobe K, Shikama N, Nishikawa A, Oguchi M, Ueno N, Itami J, Ohnishi H, Mikata A, Ito H. Radiotherapy for extranodal, marginal zone, B-cell lymphoma of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue originating in the ocular adnexa: a multiinstitutional, retrospective review of 50 patients. *Cancer* 2003;98(4):865-871. PubMed.gov/12910532 . DOI: 10.1002/cncr.11539
35. Kirkegaard MM, Rasmussen PK, Coupland SE, Esmaeli B, Finger PT, Graue GF, Grossniklaus HE, Honavar SG, Khong JJ, McKelvie PA, Mulay K, Prause JU, Ralfkiaer E, Sjo LD, Toft PB, Vemuganti GK, Thuro BA, Curtin J, Heegaard S. Conjunctival Lymphoma--An International Multicenter Retrospective Study. *JAMA Ophthalmol* 2016;134(4):406-414. PubMed.gov/26891973 . DOI: 10.1001/jamaophthalmol.2015.6122
36. Tanimoto K, Kaneko A, Suzuki S, Sekiguchi N, Maruyama D, Kim SW, Watanabe T, Kobayashi Y, Kagami Y, Maeshima A, Matsuno Y, Tobinai K. Long-term follow-up results of no initial therapy for ocular adnexal MALT lymphoma. *Ann Oncol* 2006;17(1):135-140. PubMed.gov/16236754 . DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdj025
37. Rath S, Connors JM, Dolman PJ, Rootman J, Rootman DB, White VA. Comparison of American Joint Committee on Cancer TNM-based staging system (7th edition) and Ann Arbor classification for predicting outcome in ocular adnexal lymphoma. *Orbit* 2014;33(1):23-28. PubMed.gov/24180616. DOI: 10.3109/01676830.2013.842257

Citing this article

Benage M, Fox AR, Boyce MR, Greiner MA, with Syed NA. Ocular Surface Tumors. EyeRounds.org. posted December 20, 2017; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/Ocular-Surface-Tumors/

Tutorials

Cataract

Patient Communication during Cataract Surgery

An EyeRounds Tutorial

Jason P. Brinton, MD and Thomas A. Oetting, MD

July 28, 2011

Introduction

Cataract extraction is the most common surgical procedure in the United States today with over 3 million cases performed annually. Patient expectations for cataract surgery have increased over the past several decades as surgeons have transitioned from standard extra-capsular techniques to a clear-cornea phaco-emulsification procedure. The surgery is quick and often under topical anesthesia. However, just because the surgery is faster now, doesn't mean that patients are not as anxious as ever about the procedure and what is going to happen to them. The purpose of this tutorial is to offer some suggestions to assist the surgeon with the intraoperative portion of patient communication.

Background

Various studies have looked at a number of factors relating to the quality of the patient's intraoperative experience, among them confidence, pain, understanding, satisfaction, memory, and reassurance.[Mokashi 2004] Three to 16.2% of patients who had cataract surgery with topical or retrobulbar anesthesia reported they were frightened by the visual experience of the procedure.[Tan 2005] Fear may lead a patient to become restless or uncooperative. The language and conduct of the operative team has been demonstrated to have a meaningful effect on these parameters. In one study, handholding by a nurse was shown to produce a significant decrease in patient epinephrine levels and in the number of patients reporting intraoperative anxiety.[Moon 2001] A second study showed that a hand massage five minutes before cataract surgery led to a decrease in patient levels of epinephrine, norepinephrine, cortisol, blood pressure, pulse, and reported anxiety.[Kim 2001] In a third study patients were allowed to use an electronic patient-controlled alert device that allowed them to level of anxiety related to their cataract extraction procedure.[Mokashi 2004] In addition to discussions that take place in the exam lane, some surgeons have sought to familiarize the patient with cataract surgery in advance of their procedure by allowing them to watch a surgery live. Some ambulatory surgery centers have an operating room setup that allows patients contemplating cataract surgery to watch live surgery through a window to the operating room or by video feed. Other surgeons may refer patients to websites such as www.eyerounds.org to familiarize them with process of undergoing cataract surgery.

What follows are some suggestions on how to communicate with patients while performing cataract surgery. For a video of informed consent for cataract surgery see the following link: cataractsurgeryforgreenhorns.blogspot.com/2009/01/consent-for-cataract-surgery.html

"Do I Have Cancer?"

Your patients are listening. They listen to the words we use and tone of our speech. They hear how you treat your staff and expect professionalism.

A patient experience from several years ago illustrates how a single word uttered in the operating room, taken out of context, can result in a significant misunderstanding. In this case Dr. Oetting was operating with one of the senior Iowa residents. Toward the end of the case the anterior chamber temporarily shallowed and for a moment the two surgeons discussed several conditions that could lead to this finding. Among those mentioned was "malignant glaucoma," also known as aqueous misdirection. The temporary shallowing ended up being inconsequential and the case was completed without incident.

When the patient returned for his postoperative month one visit he asked if he could speak with Dr. Oetting in private. The patient then queried, "when are you going to tell me about my cancer?" The patient had heard the adjective "malignant" in the operating room and spent the next four weeks believing that he had a cancer about which his surgeons had not informed him.

The words and tone of voice we choose in the operating room contribute to the patient's overall experience. When balanced with appropriate silence, they provide comfort to the patient, allow for a greater measure of involvement in their medical care, and promote safety.

Steps of Cataract Surgery with Suggestions on Patient Communication

Preoperative, day of surgery

What they may be thinking

- I will never keep this straight
- Why so many drops?
- What are these drops for?

What to say

- ◇ "We will give you a printed instruction sheet and the nurses will go all of the drops after the surgery."
- ◇ Topical anesthetic drops: this drop will numb the eye for your comfort but may sting for a few seconds.
- ◇ Antibiotic drops: this drop is to prevent infection.
- ◇ Steroid drops: this drop is for your comfort.
- ◇ Dilating drops: this drop is to open the pupil and expose the cataract and may blur your vision.

Retrobulbar anesthetic injection:

What they may be thinking

- I thought this was not going to hurt?
- Is that a needle?
- Why are we doing this?

What to say

- ◇ "Look straight up at the ceiling and try to keep both eyes open. This is the hardest part of the procedure but will make everything else pretty easy. You will feel a poke in your eyelid followed by pressure around your eye as the numbing medicine starts to work."

Surgical prep

What they may be thinking

- I can feel this on my skin I thought I was numb
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "This cold solution helps clean the eye to prevent infection. You may feel this on your skin but don't worry your eye is numb."

Draping

What they may be thinking

- Will I be able to breath?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "These sheets are to keep the eye clean during surgery; it is really just a fancy paper towel so you can breath right through it. Plus you will have a lot of oxygen flowing from this nasal cannula. So really you will have more air than usual."

Microscope Light

What they may be thinking

- It is so bright!
- How long will this last?

What to say

- ◇ "At first the microscope light will be very bright and then you will get used to it. We will also give you some medicine to help make the light less bright."

Lid speculum placement

What they may be thinking

- Am I supposed to keep my eye open?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "This is a soft device that keeps your eye open so you don't have to worry about blinking" (consider avoiding the term speculum, especially in female patients who may have encountered this word in its ob-gyn context).

Incisions

What they may be thinking

- When will they really get started?
- Will it hurt?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "We are getting started now and everything is going great."

Intracameral lidocaine

What they may be thinking

- That hurts I thought I was numb!
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "Here is the rest of the medicine to get you the rest of the way numb you may feel a sting while I put it in and then you will be all the way numb."

Viscoelastic

What they may be thinking

- The microscope light is bright!
- Then the light goes dim. Am I going blind?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "This medicine makes the light less bright."

Malyugin ring insertion

What they may be thinking

- I can feel some pressure, is this going to really hurt?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "You may feel some pressure inside your eye on this step don't worry it will just last a second."

Capsulorhexis

What they may be thinking

- How is the surgery going?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "The surgery is going great and this is a very delicate part and i would like you to hold very still for a minute or so."

Hydrodissection

What they may be thinking

- I can't follow the light any more, what do I do now?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "it may be hard to follow the light now so just try to look up at the ceiling."

Phacoemulsification

What they may be thinking

- What are those funny noises
- Are we making any progress yet?
- I feel fluid by my ear is that blood!?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "Now we are using the machine that removes the cataract you will hear some funny noises and voices. During this part we use a lot of water so don't worry if you feel some fluid."

Cortical removal

What they may be thinking:

- How much longer
- Something seems different, is everything OK?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "The main part of the cataract is out and we're 2/3 of the way done and are just removing some of the soft parts of the cataract."

Placement of intraocular lens implant

What they may be thinking:

- I can see some funny shapes
- I am feeling some pressure
- Am I going to see yellow forever now?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "This is the most interesting part as we are going to place the artificial lens. You may feel some pressure as we place the lens which will look like an amber crystal. Can you see it? It will give you very clear vision."

Removal of viscoelastic

What they may be thinking

- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "We are removing a protective jelly from around the lens implant and are almost done."

Wound Closure

What they may be thinking

- Wow that was fast!
- Why do I need a suture (if they did)?
- What is she doing now?

What to say

- ◇ "We're nearly done. I'm checking to see if your wound can seal itself. It looks like we need to place a suture to keep the eye secure. You may feel a little poking sensation as we place the suture to close the wound. Everything is going great."

End of the Case

What they may be thinking

- What do I do now?
- When do I see her again?
- Why is everything so blurry?

What to say

- ◇ "We are all done and your surgery went great. Your vision will be blurry for a few days as the drops wear off and the swelling goes away. We will see you in four to 5 hours and make sure your pressure is okay. Thank you for holding so still."

Some additional suggestions:

- Use "anticipatory reassurance." Consider what the patient may be wondering about as you talk to them.
- It is important to gauge how much information the patient wants to hear as you go along.
- Talk to patients you trust and ask them what the experience is like.
- If you have a problem let the patient know the case is going to take a little longer and briefly why.

References

Kim MS, Cho KS, Woo H, Kim JH. Effects of hand massage on anxiety in cataract surgery using local anesthesia. *J Cataract Refract Surg.* 2001;27(6):884-90.

Mokashi A, Leatherbarrow B, Kinsey J, Slater R, Hillier V, Mayer S. Patient communication during cataract surgery. *Eye (Lond).* 2004;18(2):147-51.

Moon JS, Cho KS. The effects of handholding on anxiety in cataract surgery patients under local anaesthesia. *J Adv Nurs.* 2001;35(3):407-15.

Tan CS, Au Eong KG, Kumar CM. Visual experiences during cataract surgery: what anaesthesia providers should know. *Eur J Anaesthesiol.* 2005;22(6):413-9.

Citing this article

Brinton JP, Oetting TA. Patient Communication during Cataract Surgery: An EyeRounds Tutorial. *Eyeroounds.org.* July 28, 2011; Available from: www.Eyeroounds.org/tutorials/Communication-Cataract-Surgery.htm

last updated: 07/28/2011

Ten Tips to Prevent and Treat Iris Prolapse

Steven M. Christiansen, MD and Thomas A. Oetting, MS, MD

May 3, 2017

See video at <https://vimeo.com/215781899>

From antiquity to today, managing iris prolapse has long been a challenge for cataract surgeons, with its occurrence leading to increased risk of endophthalmitis, epithelial ingrowth, symptomatic glare, and several other postoperative complications. This tutorial will propose ten tips to prevent and treat iris prolapse. An accompanying article will discuss the history of iris prolapse as well as several mechanical and fluid dynamics-based theories believed to contribute to iris prolapse.

1. **Create a "longer" wound**

Recall that one of the primary factors driving iris prolapse is the distance from the iris to the internal opening of the wound. If you are concerned about the potential for iris prolapse, consider making a slightly longer clear corneal wound.

2. **Avoid overfilling the anterior chamber with viscoelastic**

Beginning cataract surgeons often overfill with viscoelastic as it is easier to make the main wound in a firm eye, however this creates a larger pressure differential between the anterior and posterior chambers, and increases the risk of iris prolapse. In our experience, this seems to be an issue primarily with dispersive viscoelastic. A good rule of thumb is that if you are noticing considerable viscoelastic spilling out of the paracentesis, you may have overfilled the AC and should be weary of possible prolapse.

3. **Remove viscoelastic before hydrodissection**

Hydrodissection poses the greatest risk of prolapse, and taking measures to prophylactically lower the anterior chamber pressure by removing viscoelastic is critical in preventing prolapse.

4. **Create a fluid tract before hydrodissection**

Before hydrodissection, use Balanced Salt Solution (BSS) to create a fluid tract for fluid to exit the eye. This tract prevents the situation where the BSS cannot leave the eye without taking viscoelastic with it, which could result in a rapid decrease in anterior chamber pressure - a main risk factor for prolapse.

5. **Support the iris mechanically with iris hooks or ring**

Consider placing a single iris hook posterior to the main wound, or place several hooks in a diamond configuration with one of the hooks posterior to the main wound in a similar fashion. Alternatively, a Malyugin ring stabilizer can be used. Mechanically supporting the iris is particularly helpful if there is potential for intraoperative floppy iris syndrome.(1-3)

6. **STOP! Resist the urge to reposit prolapsed iris**

As soon as iris prolapse occurs, the knee-jerk reaction is to want to immediately push the iris back into the eye. It can be tough to overcome this urge, but realize that it is usually in repositing the prolapsed iris that pigment is permanently lost from the posterior iris. Also, manual reposition is rarely effective. Instead, the surgeon should immediately release trapped fluid or viscoelastic from the paracentesis to decompress the anterior chamber.

7. **Decompress the anterior chamber and then reposit iris**

In order to resolve the prolapse, you must first decrease the force driving the iris to prolapse through the wound. This is typically due to an elevated anterior chamber pressure, often due to fluid from hydrodissection being trapped posteriorly behind the lens or unable to exit the eye due to impedance from viscoelastic. If fluid is trapped behind the lens, place a second instrument into the anterior chamber via the paracentesis and gently rock the lens to release the trapped fluid. If fluid is trapped by viscoelastic, burping or manually removing viscoelastic with a cannula will usually lower the pressure sufficiently to allow the iris to be easily reposit.

8. **Stroke the main wound**

Use a hydrodissection cannula to gently stroke the cornea overlying the main wound. This technique is adopted from partial thickness endothelial keratoplasty, wherein stroking the cornea externally can cause internal movement of the endothelial graft, and also works well for releasing the prolapsed iris.

9. **Lower the intraocular pressure/bottle height and decrease the aspiration flow rate/vacuum**

Once you have successfully reposit the iris, you should take measures to keep the iris from prolapsing again during the remainder of the case by stabilizing the fluidics. This can be done by lowering the intraocular pressure or bottle height and decreasing the aspiration flow rate/vacuum, which helps minimize large fluctuations in anterior chamber pressure and decreases the risk of repeat prolapse.

10. **Don't make a bad situation worse**

After prolapse, the iris architecture has been disrupted, and even a seemingly simple step like inserting the intraocular lens could catch the peripheral iris and cause an iridodialysis. Prior to IOL insertion, consider placing viscoelastic immediately posterior to the main wound to create more space for IOL insertion.

To learn more about the history of iris prolapse and theories explaining its causes, view the related tutorial: [Iris Prolapse: The History of this Ancient \(and Present\) Surgical Challenge](#) at EyeRounds.org/tutorials/iris-prolapse-history.htm

More surgical videos describing these (and more) tips on iris prolapse

www.facebook.com/pg/cataract.surgery/videos

www.facebook.com/cataract.surgery/videos/173461071140/

www.facebook.com/cataract.surgery/videos/159211146140/

References

1. Chang DF, Campbell JR. Intraoperative floppy iris syndrome associated with tamsulosin. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2005;31(4):664-673. [PMID 15899440]
2. Oetting TA, Omphroy LC. Modified technique using flexible iris retractors in clear corneal cataract surgery. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2002;28(4):596-598. [PMID 11955897]
3. Tint NL, Yeung AM, Alexander P. Management of intraoperative floppy-iris syndrome-associated iris prolapse using a single iris retractor. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2009;35(11):1849-1852. [PMID 19878813]

Suggested Citation Format

Christiansen SM, Oetting TA. Ten Tips to Prevent and Treat Iris Prolapse. May 3, 2017; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/ten-tips-iris-prolapse.htm

last updated: 05/03/2017

Tutorials

Glaucoma

Medical Management of Glaucoma

A Primer

William E. Flanary, MD, Lorraine A. Myers (Provencher), MD, Wallace L.M. Alward, MD

September 1, 2015

Introduction

There are numerous risk factors for glaucoma, but the only one we can effectively treat is intraocular pressure (IOP). All medications used in glaucoma act to either decrease production of aqueous humor or increase its outflow, thereby reducing IOP. The goal of this article is to introduce the different classes of medications, their mechanisms of action, efficacy, and potential side effects. Medical management of glaucoma is an art form. The decision to start, stop, or adjust a medication is often a gray area and may be approached differently by different eye care providers.

Prostaglandin Analogues

Four prostaglandin analogues are currently available for clinical use: latanoprost, bimatoprost, travoprost, and tafluprost (Table 1). In general, these medications are well tolerated, popular, and highly effective for most patients. Although the exact mechanism of action of this class of medications is not fully known, an increase in uveoscleral outflow is generally accepted as the primary mechanism. Some studies suggest prostaglandin analogues also increase trabecular outflow facility by regulating matrix metalloproteinases and remodeling the extracellular matrix within the trabecular meshwork, however the data supporting this theory is not as consistent as that describing uveoscleral outflow [1].

Prostaglandin analogues are dosed once every evening with peak effect 10-14 hours after administration, and more frequent dosing may actually lead to a paradoxical increase in pressure [1]. Studies show an IOP lowering ability of 25-32% for latanoprost, travoprost, and tafluprost and 27-33% for bimatoprost [2]. Latanoprost and travoprost are prodrugs that are activated after being hydrolyzed by corneal esterases. Prostaglandins are indicated for all types of open angle glaucoma, including primary open angle glaucoma, pseudoexfoliation glaucoma, pigmentary glaucoma, and normal-tension glaucoma. These medications are not as effective in primary congenital glaucoma and

angle closure glaucoma [3]. Prostaglandin analogues are relatively contraindicated in patients with cystoid macular edema and in patients with inflammatory glaucoma due to the theoretical risk of worsening inflammation.

Side effects of prostaglandin analogues are mainly ocular. Hyperemia is common, but is minimized by the evening dosing. Increased iris pigmentation, observed in 33% of patients after five years, occurs more frequently in persons with hazel (yellow-brown) irides. Other side effects include periocular hyperpigmentation, hypertrichosis, hyperemia, and periorbitopathy (Figure 1). These effects appear to be reversible with drug discontinuation.

Issues to consider when starting prostaglandin analogues

- Is there active inflammation in the eye or a history of ocular inflammation?
- Is there a history of cystoid macular edema?
- If dosing in one eye, will the patient tolerate potential asymmetric changes in the appearance of the eye?

Disclaimer: The medications discussed in this article are limited to those available in the United States. There is variability in availability from country to country. The medication cost included in each table is derived from the average cost of each medication found in local pharmacies in the Iowa City/Coralville, Iowa area as reported by GoodRx.com. Prices and availability may vary by geographic area.

Abbreviations

BID = twice a day
QD = each day / every day
QHS = each bedtime
QID = four times a day
TID = three times a day



Figure 1: Note the elongated lashes (hypertrichosis) and periorbital atrophy on the left due to prostaglandin use

Table 1: Commonly used Prostaglandin analogues

Generic	Brand	Concentration	Dosing	Cost Generic	Cost Brand	Example Cap Color
Latanoprost	Xalatan®	0.005%	QHS	\$16/2.5ml	\$140/2.5ml	
Travaprost	Travatan®	0.004%		N/A	\$80/2.5ml	
Bimatoprost	Lumigan®	0.01%, 0.03%		N/A	\$150/2.5ml (0.1%)	
Tafluprost	Zioptan®	0.0015%		N/A	\$160/month	

Beta-Adrenergic Antagonists (β-Blockers)

β-blockers are popular, effective, generally well-tolerated, and indicated in all forms of glaucoma. Four β-blockers are currently available for clinical use: timolol, levobunolol, carteolol, and betaxolol, and can be divided into two subclasses of topical β-blockers: Non-selective and selective (Table 2). The non-selective β-blockers, timolol, levobunolol, and carteolol, target both β-1 and β-2 receptors, while the selective β-blocker, betaxolol, selectively targets only β-1 receptors [1]. The mechanism of action involves the blockade of sympathetic nerve endings in the ciliary epithelium, decreasing cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) production, and subsequently decreasing aqueous humor secretion by 20-30% during the day [3]. β-blockers have little IOP-lowering effect at night and are thus generally dosed once in the morning, or sometimes twice daily, especially when used in combination agents.

Patients taking a systemic β-blocker may have a diminished response to topical therapy. Prolonged use of β-blockers can result in tachyphylaxis. A reduced IOP response may also occur within weeks of starting treatment, as receptor saturation responds with up-regulation of the β-adrenergic receptor.

Treatment of one eye with β-blockers will sometimes lead to a decrease in the IOP of the contralateral, untreated eye, indicating there is a degree of systemic uptake with topical β-blockers. Recall that the β1-receptor has largely cardiac effects, and the β-2 receptor has largely pulmonary effects. Betaxolol, a β1 selective receptor antagonist,

therefore, has fewer systemic respiratory side effects when compared to non-selective β-blockers, which target both β1 and β2 receptors. Though the efficacy of IOP-lowering is reduced in betaxolol for this same reason, betaxolol is considered to be safer for patients with respiratory or central nervous system (CNS) disease [3]. β-blockers have also been shown to decrease high-density lipoprotein (HDL) and increase cholesterol levels, though it is unclear the impact this may have on cardiovascular risk. Carteolol may have fewer effects on serum lipids [1]. Caution should be used when treating children with beta blockers, as they can reach high serum concentrations.

Systemic side effects may include bronchospasm, bradycardia, increased heart block, masking of hypoglycemic symptoms, decreased blood pressure, reduced exercise tolerance, depression, syncope, CNS depression, mood swings, and decreased libido. Abrupt withdrawal may worsen hyperthyroidism. Ocular side effects may include allergy, punctate keratitis, corneal anesthesia, and aggravation of myasthenia gravis.

Issues to consider when starting a β-blocker

- Does the patient have respiratory or heart disease?
- Is the patient at high risk for hypoglycemia?
- Does the patient have thyroid disease or myasthenia gravis?
- Does the patient have problems with anxiety, depression, fatigue, or impotence?

Table 2: Commonly used Beta-Adrenergic Antagonists (β-blockers)

Generic	Brand	Concentration	Dosing	Cost generic	Cost brand	Example Cap Color
Non-selective						
Timolol	Timoptic®	0.25%, 0.5%	QD-BID	\$4/5ml (0.5%)	\$160/5ml (0.5%)	 0.5% β-blockers
Levobunolol	Betagan®	0.25%, 0.5%		\$4/5ml (0.5%)	\$58/5ml (0.5%)	
Carteolol	Ocupress®	1.0%		\$12/5ml	N/A	
β1-selective						
Betaxolol	Betoptic®	0.25%, 0.5%	QD-BID	\$50/5ml (0.5%)	\$286/5ml (0.5%)	 0.25% β-blockers

α2-Adrenergic Agonists

Two α2-adrenergic agonists are currently available for use: apraclonidine and brimonidine. These have replaced non-selective adrenergic agents which caused ocular vasoconstriction, pupillary dilation, and eyelid retraction via α1-adrenergic agonism. The α2-agonists decrease aqueous production and increase aqueous outflow, although their exact mechanism remains unclear. The α2-agonists are indicated for all forms of glaucoma, and some evidence suggests they may have neuroprotective effects, which could provide additional benefit in normal-tension glaucoma [4].

Apraclonidine is often used in the pre- and post-operative setting, particularly after laser or cataract surgery, as it is an effective short-term IOP lowering agent. Patients often develop topical sensitivity or tachyphylaxis, which limits its long term use. Further, the incidence of allergic reaction to apraclonidine is up to 40% and may include follicular conjunctivitis and contact blepharodermatitis. Fortunately, the cross-reactivity to brimonidine in patients with allergy to apraclonidine is minimal. Despite low incidence of true allergy to brimonidine, long-term intolerance is high (>20%) due to local adverse effects, i.e. hyperemia and blepharoconjunctivitis and even ectropion and granulomatous anterior uveitis. If a patient is on several drops and presents with the aforementioned signs or symptoms, regardless of the duration of therapy, it is reasonable to first suspect the α2-agonist as potentially contributing. Preservative free options exist and will be reviewed later in this article.

Both α2-agonists, apraclonidine and brimonidine, can lower IOP by 20-30% and are dosed BID or TID. Brimonidine is found in combination with timolol (Combigan®), dosed BID, or brinzolamine (Simbrinza®), dosed BID or TID. An absolute contraindication to brimonidine is use in children under 3-4 years of age as it may cross the blood brain barrier and result in fatal respiratory arrest, along with somnolence, hypotension, seizures, and derangement of CNS neurotransmitters. Apraclonidine is a safer alternative, as it does not cross the blood brain barrier. The α2-agonists are relatively contraindicated in patients taking monoamine oxidase inhibitors or tricyclic antidepressants.

Remember, α2-agonists are notorious for ocular side effects. Apraclonidine may cause irritation, pruritis, allergy, follicular conjunctivitis, dermatitis, eyelid retraction, ischemia, conjunctival blanching, ocular ache, photopsia, and miosis. Brimonidine may cause foreign-body sensation, eyelid edema, dryness, and ocular sensitivity/allergy, though less allergy compared to apraclonidine (Figure 2). Systemic side effects may include hypotension, syncope, vasovagal attack, dry mouth and nose, headache, anxiety, depression, and fatigue.

Issues to consider when starting α2-Adrenergic Agonists

- Is this a child under 3-4 years of age? (do not use)



Figure 2: Follicular conjunctivitis from brimonidine use

Table 3: Commonly used α2-Adrenergic Agonists

Generic	Brand	Concentration	Dosing	Cost generic	Cost brand	Example Cap Color
Selective						
Apraclonidine	Iopidine®	0.5%, 1.0%	BID-TID	\$50/5ml (1%)	\$152/5ml (1%)	 Apraclonidine
Brimonidine	Alphagan®	0.1%, 0.2%	BID-TID	\$9/5ml	\$124/5ml (0.1%)	 Brimonidine

Carbonic Anhydrase Inhibitors

Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors (CAIs) function as direct antagonists to ciliary epithelial carbonic anhydrase, an enzyme necessary for production of aqueous humor. More than 90% of this enzyme must be inhibited in order to decrease intraocular pressure [1]. Systemic CAIs, of which acetazolamide and methazolamide are the most common, have been available for decades, but their use in glaucoma has been limited due to the potential for serious side effects and the availability of alternative topical agents with fewer side effects. Topical CAIs (dorzolamide, brinzolamide) are generally better tolerated with fewer side effects and are commonly used as both an individual medication for glaucoma as well as part of several combination drops. Systemic agents have greater efficacy, with 30-50% IOP reduction compared to 15-20% IOP reduction with topical agents [5]. Of the systemic agents, acetazolamide is considered more effective than methazolamide, though it also has more side effects. Acetazolamide is eliminated in the kidneys, while methazolamide is metabolized in the liver.

Common adverse effects of topical CAIs include bitter taste and punctate keratopathy. Eyes with compromised endothelial dysfunction (e.g. Fuchs dystrophy) are at higher risk for corneal decompensation and should not be treated

with topical CAIs. Some patients complain of burning with dorzolamide; this is less problematic with brinzolamide. Adverse effects of systemic CAIs are usually dose-dependent and include paresthesias of the fingers and toes, fatigue, loss of energy, and loss of appetite. Abdominal discomfort and bitter taste, particularly with carbonated beverages, are also commonly encountered. Rarely, patients may develop blood dyscrasias, including aplastic anemia, thrombocytopenia, and agranulocytosis. Hypokalemia may also develop, particularly in patients who are taking other diuretic medications (e.g. thiazides) (1).

Although CAIs are sulfonamide derivatives, they are generally tolerated in those with sulfa allergies [6]. In a large retrospective study by Lee et al. in 2004, high dose acetazolamide was used in patients with idiopathic intracranial hypertension as well as a self-reported sulfa allergy without serious adverse effects [7].

Issues to consider when starting a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor

- Does this patient have normal corneal endothelial function (for topical use)?
- Does this patient have baseline hepatic or renal impairment (for systemic use)?

Table 4: Commonly Used Carbonic Anhydrase Inhibitors

Generic	Brand	Concentration	Dosing	Cost generic	Cost brand	Cap Color
Topical						
Dorzolamide	Trusopt®	2.0%	BID-TID	\$25/10ml	\$87/10ml	
Brinzolamide	Azopt®	1.0%		N/A	\$260/10ml	
Systemic						
Acetazolamide	Diamox®	250, 500mg	BID-QID	\$56/120tabs (250mg)	N/A	Tabs are white or orange
Methazolamide	Neptazane®	25, 50, 100mg	BID-TID	\$140/60 tabs (50mg)	N/A	

Cholinergic Stimulators

Pilocarpine is the most commonly used cholinergic in medical practice. Pilocarpine decreases IOP by stimulating ciliary muscle contraction. This produces traction on the scleral spur by virtue of its attachment to the ciliary musculature. The displacement of the scleral spur leads to an increase in conventional (trabecular) aqueous outflow. The miosis induced by pilocarpine also improves outflow in eyes with angle closure glaucoma by pulling peripheral iris from the anterior chamber angle. Conversely, pilocarpine decreases uveoscleral outflow, which may cause a paradoxical rise in IOP. Pilocarpine is typically administered four times a day. The maximum IOP lowering effect occurs within two hours, with a reduction in IOP of approximately 20% [1].

The ocular side effects of ciliary muscle spasm and miosis result in poor tolerance of pilocarpine, particularly in

young patients with high accommodative ability. Pilocarpine should be avoided in highly myopic patients due to the increased risk of retinal detachment. Other potential ocular side effects include cataract formation and corneal endothelial toxicity. Systemic toxicity is rare and includes activation of the parasympathetic nervous system including diaphoresis, lacrimation, salivation, gastrointestinal distress, and bronchospasm.

Echothiophate is an indirect-acting cholinergic medication rarely used today due to the side effect profile (redness, brown ache, pigmented iris cysts) and the existence of numerous, more effective, and better tolerated topical medications. Echothiophate is still available in pharmacies, and has the advantage of being more potent and dosed twice daily, though it is more expensive than pilocarpine. Unfortunately, pilocarpine is intermittently unavailable.

Issues to consider when starting a cholinergic stimulator

- Is this patient myopic?
- Does this patient have high accommodative ability?

Table 5: Commonly used cholinergic agonists

Generic	Brand	Concentration	Dosing	Cost generic	Cost brand	Example Cap Color
Direct						
Pilocarpine HCl	IsoptoCarpine	1%, 2%, 4%	QID	\$4/15ml (1%)	\$94/15ml (1%)	
Indirect						
Echothiophate iodide	Phospholine iodide	1.25%	QD-BID	N/A	\$100/5ml	

Combination medications

Combination drops are an effective way to decrease the drop burden for patients who require multiple topical medications. Available combinations in the US include Dorzolamide/Timolol, Brimonidine/Timolol, and Brinzolamide/Brimonidine. Additional well-tolerated combination drops are available outside the US but are not FDA approved. The biggest drawback for patients prescribed combination medications is the high cost.

Table 6: Commonly used combination medications

Generic	Brand	Concentration	Dosing	Cost generic	Cost brand	Example Cap Color
Dorzolamide/ Timolol	Cosopt®	2.0%/0.5%	BID	\$25/10ml	\$150/10ml	
Brimonidine/ Timolol	Combigan®	0.2%/0.5%		N/A	\$135/5ml	
Brinzolamide/ Brimonidine	Simbrinza®	1.0%/0.2%		N/A	\$135/8ml	

BAK Preservative-Free Options

Numerous studies have documented the potential for ocular surface toxicity with long-term use of preserved glaucoma medications [8-10]. A prospective survey by Pisella et al. in 2002 found a higher incidence of ocular surface symptoms (e.g. redness, follicles, punctate keratopathy) in patients taking preserved eye drops versus non-preserved drops, and many of the minor adverse reactions reported by patients may be caused by the presence of preservatives [11]. Benzalkonium chloride (BAK) is a widely-used preservative found in many commonly used glaucoma medications and several BAK-free and preservative free alternatives exist across multiple classes of glaucoma med-

ications. Unfortunately, the high cost of these medications is prohibitive for many patients. Insurance coverage is often a challenge, with most insurance companies requiring documented failure of preserved medications prior to use of any non-preserved option.

Issues to consider when starting a preservative free drop

- Has the patient tried and failed the available preserved option?
- Are they willing to pay out of pocket if insurance denies coverage?

Table 7: Commonly Used BAK-Free Options

Medication	Brand	Concentration	Preservative	Cost brand
Alpha agonists				
Brimonidine	Alphagan-P®	0.1%, 0.15%, 0.2%	Purite©	\$30/5ml (0.2%)
Prostaglandins				
Travaprost	Travatan-Z®	0.004%	sofZia©	\$160/2.5ml
Tafluprost	Zioptan®	0.0015%	None	\$130/mo
Beta blockers				
Timolol maleate gel	Timoptic-XE®	0.25%, 0.5%	Benzododecinium	\$200/5ml (0.5%)
Timolol in Ocodose	Timoptic®	0.25%, 0.5%	None	\$450/mo (0.5%)
Cholinergics				
Echothiophate	Phospholine Iodide	1.25%	Chlorbutanol	\$100/5ml
Combination				
Timolol/Dorzolamide	Cosopt PF®	0.2%/0.5%	None	\$110/mo

References

1. Glaucoma. Basic and Clinical Science Course. 2014-2015. American Academy of Ophthalmology.
2. Camras CB, Alm A, Watson P, Stjernschantz J. Latanoprost, a prostaglandin analog, for glaucoma therapy: efficacy and safety after 1 year of treatment in 198 patients. Latanoprost Study Group. *Ophthalmology*. 1996;103(11):1916-1924.
3. Alward WLM. *Glaucoma: The Requisites*. Mosby. 1999.
4. Sena DF, Lindsley K. Neuroprotection for treatment of glaucoma in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013; 2: CD006539.
5. Strahlman E, Tipping R, Vogel R. A double-masked, randomized 1-year study comparing dorzolamide (Trusopt), timolol, and betaxolol. International Dorzolamide Study Group. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1995;113(8):1009-1016.
6. Drugs for some common eye disorders. *Treat Guide Med Letter*. 2012 Nov; 10(123):79-86.
7. Lee AG, Anderson R, Kardon RH, Wall M. Use of Acetazolamide in Sulfonamide-Allergic Patients With Neurologic Channelopathies. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2004; 138: 114-118.
8. De Saint Jean M, Debbasch C, Brignole F, et al. Toxicity of preserved and unpreserved antiglaucoma topical drugs in an in vitro model of conjunctival cells. *Curr Eye Res* 2000;20:85-94.
9. Burstein NL. Corneal cytotoxicity of topically applied drugs, vehicles and preservatives. *Surv Ophthalmol* 1980;25:15-30.
10. Burstein NL. The effects of topical drugs and preservatives on the tears and corneal epithelium in dry eye. *Trans Ophthalmol Soc UK* 1985;104:402-409.
11. Pisella PJ, Pouliquen P, Baudouin C. Prevalence of ocular symptoms and signs with preserved and preservative free glaucoma medication. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2002;86:418-423.

Suggested Citation Format

Flanary WE, Myers (Provencher) LA, Alward WLM. Medical management of glaucoma: A primer. *EyeRounds.org*. posted September 1, 2015; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/glaucoma-medical-treatment

last updated: 09/01/2015

MIGS: Minimally Invasive Glaucoma Surgery

Austin R. Fox, MD, Tyler B. Risma, MD, Jason P. Kam, MD, Daniel I. Bettis, MD

September 27, 2017

Introduction

Glaucoma is the leading cause of irreversible blindness in the world with an estimated global burden of over 64 million people that is projected to increase to 111.8 million by 2040.[1] Currently, the only modifiable risk factor for glaucoma is intraocular pressure (IOP), and lowering IOP is the mainstay of treatment to date. Traditionally, topical medications, laser, and incisional surgery (trabeculectomy or tube shunts) have been the primary means to lower IOP and treat glaucoma. Topical medications require patient adherence, and cost may present a barrier to access. Selective laser trabeculoplasty (SLT) is typically effective initially, but its effectiveness can decrease over time.[2] Trabeculectomy and tube shunt surgeries are highly effective but carry a higher risk of complications. In the Tube Versus Trabeculectomy (TVT) Study, IOP decreased by a mean of 41.4% with tube surgery and 49.5% with trabeculectomy with decreased requirement for medication in both groups at 5 years follow up.[3] However, early complications (≤ 1 month) were seen in 21% of tube group and 37% of the trabeculectomy group, and late complications (> 1 month) were seen in 34% of the tube group and 36% of the trabeculectomy group. The rate of reoperation for complications was 22% in the tube group and 18% in the trabeculectomy group.[4] As an alternative to traditional glaucoma treatments, minimally invasive glaucoma surgery (MIGS) has shown promise for the future management of glaucoma.

The cardinal features of MIGS, as proposed by Saheb and Ahmed in 2012 [5], are:

- ◆ Ab interno, micro-incisional approach (*note: InnFocus MicroShunt uses an ab-externo approach.)
- ◆ Minimal trauma/disruption to normal anatomy and physiology
- ◆ Demonstrable/reliable IOP lowering
- ◆ Extremely high safety profile
- ◆ Rapid post-op recovery, with minimal need for follow-up

MIGS typically require shorter operation time and allow for more rapid recovery. MIGS can be combined with cataract extraction (CE) for patients with mild to moderate glaucoma and cataracts. While MIGS have been approved for and studied in open angle glaucoma (OAG), they have also been used for other forms of glaucoma, including pseudoexfoliation, post-traumatic, pediatric, and ocular hypertension. With a lower risk profile, MIGS may be well-suited as a first line surgical intervention for monocular or high-risk patients. Though early studies show MIGS may be less effective in lowering IOP than traditional glaucoma surgeries, MIGS do fill a gap in the treatment of patients who would benefit from lower IOP but do not warrant the risk of traditional surgery. The growing array of MIGS work

by increasing trabecular outflow, increasing uveoscleral outflow, increasing subconjunctival outflow, or decreasing aqueous production.

See Table 1: Overview of MIGS procedures and descriptions.

iStent (Glaukos Corporation)

The iStent Trabecular Micro-Bypass Stent was the first FDA-approved (2012) trabecular microbypass. It works by incising then stenting Schlemm's canal to increase trabecular outflow. The iStent is a 1.0 mm x 0.3 mm, heparin-coated, non-ferromagnetic titanium (allowing magnetic resonance imaging up to 3 T). Its tapered design allows it to slide into Schlemm's canal, where it is then anchored by its 3 retention arches (Figure 1). The iStent is indicated for mild to moderate OAG previously treated with glaucoma drops, and performed in conjunction with CE.



Figure 1. iStent Trabecular Micro-Bypass Stent. Source: Glaukos Corporation, www.glaukos.com/healthcare-professionals/istent/ Image used with permission.

Multiple randomized controlled trials (RCTs) have been conducted regarding the iStent. The iStent Study Group conducted the largest RCT including 240 subjects with mild to moderate glaucoma.

At 1 year, there was a significant difference in the iStent with CE group versus the control CE alone group in achieving the primary endpoint of an IOP ≤ 21 mmHg without glaucoma medications (72% vs 50%, $p < 0.001$). A secondary endpoint, decrease in IOP of $\geq 20\%$ without glaucoma medications, was also significantly different between the 2 groups (66% vs 48%, $p = 0.003$). In addition, there was a significant difference in the reduction of medication burden among the groups at 1 year: 0.2 ± 0.6 medications were required in the iStent with CE group versus 0.4 ± 0.7 medications required in the CE alone group ($p = 0.016$).[6]

Table 1: Overview of MIGS procedures and descriptions.

MIGS:	Specifics / Procedure:
Increase Trabecular Outflow	
iStent Micro-Bypass	Heparin-coated, non-ferromagnetic titanium stent; 1.0 mm x 0.3 mm. <i>Ab interno</i> insertion into Schlemm's canal
Gonioscopy-assisted transluminal trabeculotomy (GATT)	<i>Ab interno</i> trabeculotomy using illuminated microcatheter (iTrack; Ellex) or prolene/nylon suture passed through a 1-2 mm goniotomy into Schlemm's canal 360° and lysed through the trabecular tissue
Trabectome	<i>Ab interno</i> trabeculectomy using combination of electrocautery, irrigation and aspiration
TRAB 360 Trabeculotomy	<i>Ab interno</i> trabeculotomy using disposable, non-powered device from which a flexible nylon-like trabeculotome is advanced into Schlemm's canal for 180° and then lysed (x2 to perform up to 360° trabeculotomy)
Kahook Dual Blade	<i>Ab interno</i> trabeculotomy using a single use, tapered, stainless steel blade
Ab interno canaloplasty	Illuminated microcatheter (iTrack; Ellex) and viscosurgical device used to cannulate and viscodilate Schlemm's canal
Hydrus Microstent	Crescent-shaped scaffold (8-mm long) composed of nickel-titanium alloy, <i>Ab interno</i> insertion into Schlemm's canal
Increase Uveoscleral / Suprachoroidal/ Supraciliary Outflow	
CyPass Micro-Stent	Fenestrated micro-stent, composed of biocompatible, polyimide material (6.35 mm x 510 mm, 300 mm lumen) <i>Ab interno</i> insertion between anterior chamber/sclera and suprachoroidal space
iStent Supra	Heparin-coated stent (4mm long, 0.16-0.17mm lumen) composed of polyethersulfone (PES) with a titanium sleeve. <i>Ab interno</i> insertion between anterior chamber/sclera and suprachoroidal space
Increase Subconjunctival Outflow	
XEN Glaucoma Treatment System	Tissue-conforming tube implant (6-mm long) composed of gelatin and glutaraldehyde material <i>Ab interno</i> insertion from the anterior chamber, through sclera into the subconjunctival space, bleb forming
InnFocus MicroShunt	Flexible microshunt (8.5 mm x 0.350 mm, 70 µm lumen) composed of SIBS (poly(styrene-block-isobutylene-block-styrene)) <i>Ab-externo</i> , subconjunctival (via peritomy) insertion through scleral needle tract into anterior chamber, connecting it to sub-Tenon's space, bleb forming
Decrease Aqueous Production	
Endocyclophotocoagulation	<i>Ab interno</i> cyclodestruction of ciliary body epithelium using continuous energy (810nm wavelength)

At 2 years, the proportion of subjects achieving primary outcome remained significantly higher in the iStent with CE group (61% vs 50%, $p = 0.036$), however the difference in IOP decrease $\geq 20\%$ without glaucoma medications was not significantly different between the 2 groups (53% vs 44%, $p = 0.09$), and there was also no significant difference in number of glaucoma medications used ($p = 0.09$). After 2 years, IOP in the iStent with CE group was 8.4 mm Hg lower than baseline IOP, and IOP in the CE alone group was

7.5 mm Hg lower than baseline IOP, which was not a statistically significant difference.[7] The iStent Study Group showed that the iStent's efficacy was modest but allowed a prolonged reduction in IOP and medication burden. Importantly, there were no serious complications associated with the iStent. The most common complications were stent obstruction (4.3%) or malposition (2.6%), neither of which caused any adverse events.

Multiple iStents

To evaluate the efficacy of multiple iStents (2 or 3) in conjunction with CE, a prospective study of 53 eyes with OAG was conducted.[8] After 1 year, the overall mean IOP was significantly lower (14.3 ± 2.9 mmHg) than baseline (18.0 ± 4.0 mmHg) ($p < 0.001$) in each group (2 or 3) ($p < 0.001$). There was also a significant decrease in mean glaucoma medication at 1 year by 74% (2.7 ± 1.0 to 0.7 ± 1.1 , $p < 0.001$). Additionally, 31 study eyes (59%) were off of all medications at 1 year. This study showed that multiple iStents can be safely implanted and result in effective IOP reduction on fewer glaucoma medications.

iStent Inject - The 2nd Generation iStent

The iStent Inject is a 2nd generation iStent, which was developed with the premise that multiple iStents may be more effective than a single iStent. It is smaller in size (0.36 mm x 0.23 mm) and designed for perpendicular insertion into Schlemm's canal, no longer requiring parallel sliding of the iStent for positioning (*Figure 2*). Each device comes pre-loaded with 2 stents, so that both can be inserted in one procedure. A RCT of 192 subjects showed that implantation of 2 iStent Injects is comparable to medical treatment with two agents (latanoprost and timolol) in reducing IOP after 1 year.[9] Both the iStent Inject group and medication group had similar reductions in IOP (8.1 ± 2.6 mmHg and 7.3 ± 2.2 mmHg) and achieved similar rates of IOP reduction $\geq 20\%$ compared to baseline at 1 year (94.7% and 91.8%). As with the original iStent, there was a highly favorable safety profile with the iStent Inject.[9]

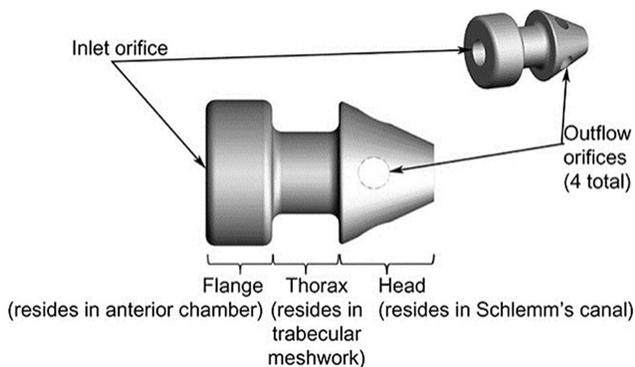


Figure 2. iStent Inject Source: Belovay et al. J Cataract Refract Surg. 2012;38(11):1911-7.[8]

Gonioscopy-assisted transluminal trabeculotomy (GATT)

GATT was first described as a minimally-invasive form of *ab interno* trabeculotomy by Grover *et al.* in 2014.[10] An illuminated microcatheter (iTrack; Ellex) or suture (typically 5-0 or 6-0 nylon or prolene) is passed through a 1-2 clock hour goniotomy into Schlemm's canal then advanced for 360 degrees. It is then pulled centrally, applying force to lyse through the trabecular meshwork (TM) and creating a

360-degree trabeculotomy (fig. 3. [10]). The iTrack microcatheter has a 200-micron diameter shaft with a lubricated coating, along with a lighted tip, which can be constantly or intermittently illuminated to monitor catheter location. Like other MIGS, GATT is indicated for medically-uncontrolled OAG and can be performed with or without CE.

Grover *et al.* conducted a retrospective review of 85 consecutive patients for whom GATT was performed with or without CE.[10] At 12 months follow-up of 57 primary OAG patients, IOP decreased by 11.1 ± 6.1 mmHg (40%) on an average of 1.1 ± 1.8 fewer glaucoma medications. For 28 patients with secondary OAG, IOP decreased by 19.9 ± 10.2 mmHg (57%) on an average of 1.9 ± 2.1 fewer medications. There was no statistically significant difference in IOP change related to lens status or whether concurrent CE was performed in eyes undergoing GATT.[10] The primary complication was transient hyphema in 30% of patients, which resolved in most patients by 1 month post-operatively. However, hyphema was still present in 3 patients at 1 month post-operatively, 1 patient at 3 months, and 1 patient at 6 months. Additional glaucoma surgery was needed in 9% (8/85) of the patients. Due to the nature of the procedure, there are several absolute contraindications: required anticoagulation, bleeding diatheses, angle closure, obscured angle structures, severe endothelial compromise, or intraocular lens instability. Relative contraindications include previous corneal transplant and an inability to elevate patient's head 30° during the first postoperative week.

In a retrospective review of the pediatric population, Grover *et al.* showed GATT to be a viable treatment option equivalent to *ab externo* trabeculotomy for the treatment of primary congenital glaucoma and juvenile OAG.[11]

SEE VIDEO AT: <https://youtu.be/y463tW3lh0Q>

Trabectome (NeoMedix Inc.)

Trabectome is an FDA-approved (2004) device used to perform *ab interno* trabeculectomy (AIT). Trabectome combines electrocautery with irrigation and aspiration and consists of a 19.5 gauge handpiece with a bipolar 550 kHz electrode. The handpiece is disposable and requires a separate irrigation and aspiration console with a high frequency generator (*Figure 4*). As the electrocautery ablates trabecular meshwork up to 180 degrees, the natural drainage pathway is exposed. Simultaneously aspiration and irrigation are used to remove the ablated tissue to allow aqueous outflow. Initially, trabectome was indicated for primary OAG patients with uncontrolled IOP on maximal medical therapy, however many cases have reported the use of trabectome in a wide array of glaucoma subtypes, including narrow angle glaucoma.[12] In addition, AIT has been shown to be a good option in patients with pseudoexfoliation glaucoma and with a history of a failed trabeculectomy.[13,14]

No RCTs have been conducted examining trabectome. However, a meta-analysis compiled the data of 14 studies including 5,091 subjects and found an overall (66%) aver-

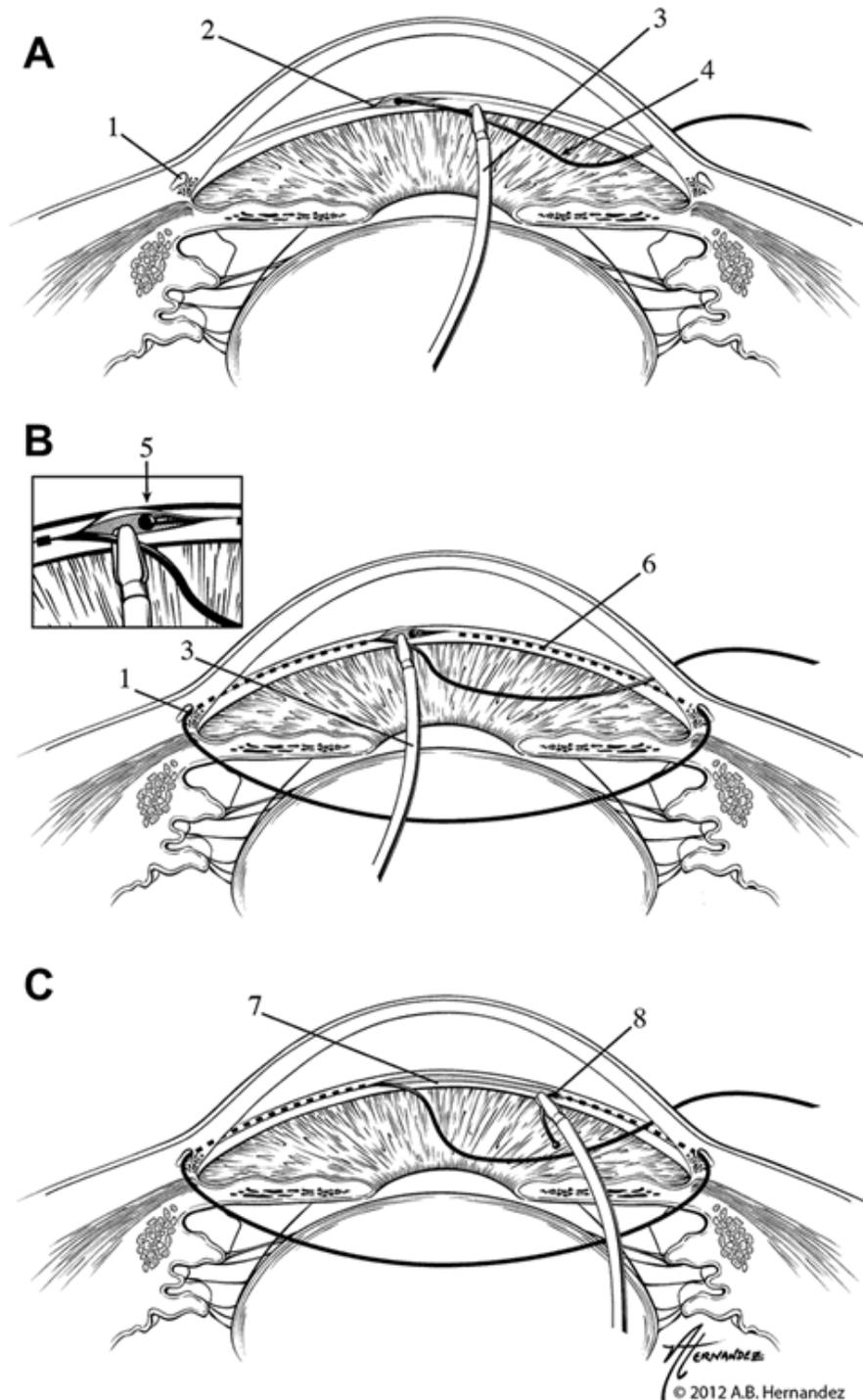


Figure 3. Illustrations documenting the key steps of the gonioscopy-assisted transluminal trabeculotomy procedure. A, Initial cannulation of Schlemm's canal within the anterior chamber. B, The catheter (or suture) has been passed 360° around the canal. C, The distal tip of the catheter (or suture) has been retrieved and is being externalized, thus creating the circumferential trabeculotomy.

1 = Schlemm's canal; 2 = initial goniotomy site; 3 = microsurgical forceps; 4 = either the suture or microcatheter; 5 = distal end of the suture or microcatheter after it has been passed 360° around Schlemm's canal; 6 = path of the suture or microcatheter within Schlemm's canal; 7 = trabecular shelf that is created after this procedure; 8 = trabeculotomy that is created when the distal end of the suture or catheter is retrieved and externalized. Image used with permission.[10]

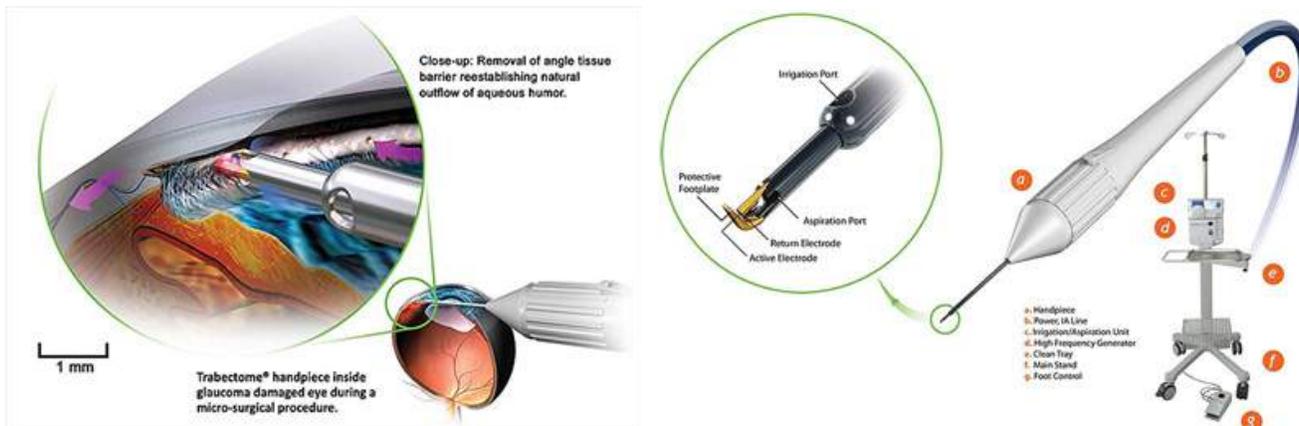


Figure 4. Trabectome Procedure, Handpiece, and Console. Source: NeoMedix Corporation, www.neomedix.net/Learning/Library/Images Images used with permission.



5a: TRAB 360 device

5b: procedure

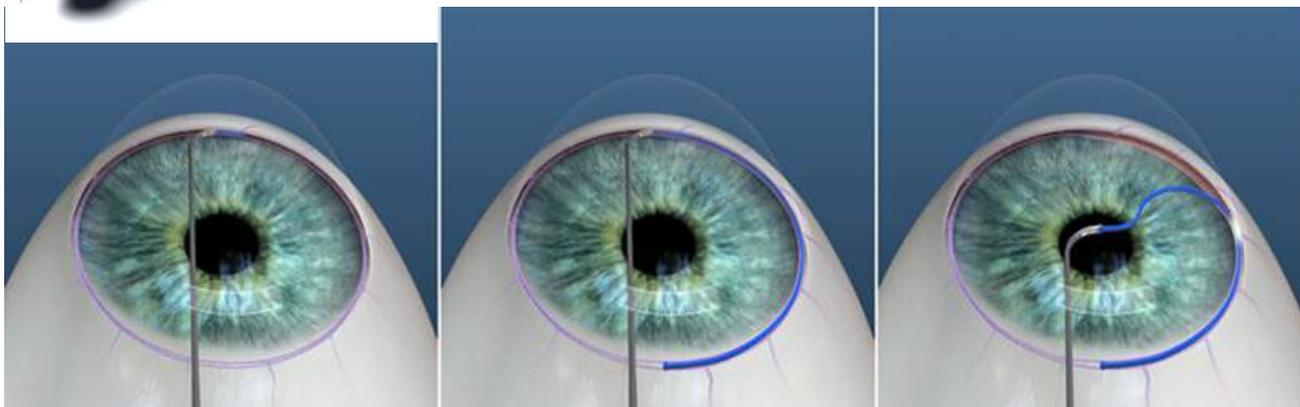


Figure 5. TRAB 360 device and procedure. Source: Sight Sciences, <http://www.sightsciences.com>

age rate of success, defined as IOP ≤ 21 mmHg with 20% decrease while avoiding reoperation, after 2 years.

Trabectome alone resulted in a 10.5 ± 1.9 mmHg (39%) decrease in IOP with 0.99 ± 0.54 fewer glaucoma medications with an average success rate of 46% after 2 years.

Trabectome performed with CE resulted in a 6.24 ± 1.98 mmHg (27%) decrease in IOP with 0.76 ± 0.35 fewer glaucoma medications with an average success rate of 85% after 2 years.

The most common complications reported after trabectome were transient hyphema, peripheral anterior synechiae, corneal injury, and transient IOP spike. The rate of serious vision-threatening complications was minimal (< 1%), and these included hypotony (IOP < 5mmHg) 1 month after surgery, cyclodialysis cleft, choroidal hemorrhage, and endophthalmitis.[15]

TRAB 360 Trabeculotomy (Sight-Sciences)

TRAB 360 is a disposable, non-powered device used to perform an ab interno 360° trabeculotomy. The TRAB 360 device consists of a cannula, from which a flexible nylon-like trabeculotome is advanced into Schlemm's canal for 180 degrees (Figure 5). After the trabeculotomy is created, the trabeculotome can be retracted once and then advanced into the remainder of Schlemm's canal in the opposite direction for up to a total of 360 degrees. Like other trabeculotomy procedures, TRAB 360 is indicated for open angle glaucoma when IOP is not optimized on medical management.

Initial results from a study of the TRAB 360 device were reported by Sarkisian et al. at the 2015 American Society of Cataract and Refractive Surgery (ASCRS) Annual Meeting.[16] Surgical success, defined as IOP between

6-21 mmHg, was achieved in 25 of 30 eyes (83%) with or without glaucoma medications at the final follow-up visit. Mean IOP decreased from 19.8 ± 6.4 mmHg to 13.5 ± 4.6 at final follow up. Glaucoma medication burden was also decreased from a mean of 1.1 ± 1.2 pre-operative glaucoma medications to a mean of 0.2 ± 0.5 medications at the final visit. Mean time of follow-up was 131.5 ± 101.6 days. Transient hyphema was the most frequent postoperative complication and resolved by 1 week postoperatively in all cases.

Kahook Dual Blade (New World Medical)

The Kahook Dual Blade is a single-use, tapered, stainless steel blade used to incise and remove a nasal strip of trabecular meshwork tissue (Figure 6). After the tissue is engaged by the tapered tip, it travels up the angled ramp, where it meets two parallel blades. As the blades are advanced, this results in a ribbon of TM tissue that is separated from Schlemm's canal. Afterwards, the strip of TM is removed from the anterior chamber. Through one incision, the TM may be removed for a total of up to 180 degrees. Unlike Trabectome, there is no need for additional machinery for electrocautery, and theoretically, there is no collateral thermal damage. Currently, there are no published clinical trials on the Kahook Dual Blade. In a preclinical study of human donor corneoscleral rims, the Kahook Dual Blade showed more complete excision of TM tissue on histologic analysis with minimal damage to adjacent tissue as compared to a microvitrectomy blade and the Trabectome (NeoMedix Inc.). In subsequent human eye perfusion studies, all devices showed significant reduction in IOP.[17] Figure 6

See video at www.kdbcert.com



Figure 6. Kahook Dual Blade and device. Source: New World Medical, Inc. Images used with permission.

Ab interno Canaloplasty

Ab interno canaloplasty (ABiC) increases aqueous outflow through cannulation of Schlemm's canal with an illuminated microcatheter (iTrack, Ellex), which is then withdrawn as an ophthalmic viscosurgical device is injected to viscodilate Schlemm's canal and the proximal collector channels. It has been theorized that viscodilation may also create microperforations within the TM to aid in aqueous outflow. As the viscoelastic is injected, blanching of episcleral vessels, which is indicative of a patent collecting system, serves as an indirect indicator of success. Indications for ABiC include mild to moderate OAG when maximal medical management and laser trabeculoplasty have failed. ABiC can be a better option for high risk monocular patients or for patients who are unable to stop anticoagulation, as ABiC minimally disrupts the TM with lower rates of hyphema. Contraindications to *ab interno* canaloplasty are similar to those of GATT (mentioned above), as proposed by Grover *et al.*[10] ABiC can be performed as a standalone procedure or in conjunction with CE.

In a retrospective review, Gallardo and Khaimi reported favorable results on 228 eyes treated with ABiC with and without CE.[18] Overall, mean preoperative IOP was 19.0 ± 6.5 mm Hg, and the mean preoperative number of glaucoma medications was 2.0 ± 1.0 . At 12 months post-operatively, mean IOP decreased 30% to 13.3 ± 2.0 mm Hg, and the mean postoperative number of glaucoma medications decreased by 50% to 1.0 ± 1.0 . The specific complications were not reported in Gallardo's and Khaimi's series, however in a case series of 20 eyes achieving similar success, there was only 1 reported complication of Descemet's detachment during injection of viscoelastic.[18] There were no reported cases of significant hyphema in either of these series.

See video at goo.gl/aAf8EX

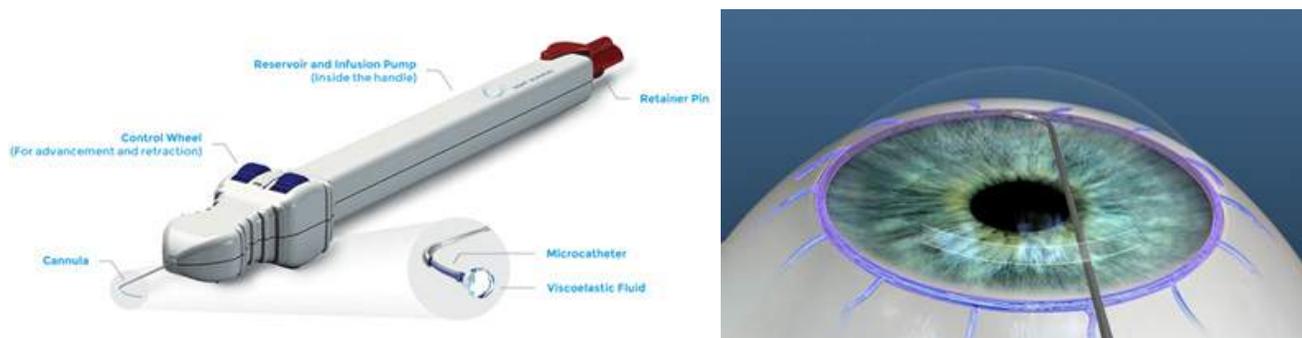


Figure 7. VISCO360 Viscosurgical System. Source: Sight Sciences, <http://www.sightsciences.com> Images used with permission.

VISCO360 Viscosurgical System (*Sight Sciences*)

VISCO360 Viscosurgical System is a device, similar to TRAB360, through which ABiC can be performed (*Figure 7*). There are no published data on the VISCO360. However, there is an ongoing multicenter, RCT evaluating the safety and effectiveness of the VISCO 360 Canaloplasty in primary OAG as compared to SLT.[19]

Hydrus Microstent (*Ivantis, Inc*)

The Hydrus Microstent improves aqueous outflow into multiple collector channel ostia by serving as an "intracanalicular scaffold" for Schlemm's canal and a bypass of the TM. The Hydrus Microstent is an 8-mm ("3 clock hours") long, crescent-shaped scaffold composed of a nickel-titanium alloy (nitinol) with windows and spines (*Figure 8*) and comes preloaded in a hand-held injector. Hydrus implantation is currently being investigated in conjunction with CE and is indicated for mild to moderate OAG.

In a prospective, multicenter RCT (HYDRUS II), 100 OAG patients were randomized to a Hydrus Microstent with CE arm and a CE alone arm. At 2 years, there was a statistically significant difference in the primary endpoint of a 20% reduction in diurnal, washed-out IOP compared to baseline. The primary endpoint was met in 80% (40/50) of patients in the Hydrus Microstent with CE arm compared to 46% (23/50) in the CE alone arm ($p = 0.001$). At 2 years, the mean reduction in IOP in the Hydrus Microstent with CE arm (9.4 mmHg) was significantly lower than in the CE alone arm (7.4 mmHg) ($p = 0.01$). There was also a statistically significant difference in mean glaucoma medications per patient after 2 years, decreasing from 2.0 ± 1.0 to 0.5 ± 1.0 medications in the Hydrus Microstent with CE arm and from 2.0 ± 1.1 to 1.0 ± 1.0 in the CE alone arm ($p = 0.02$). The proportion of patients who did not require medications after 2 years was 73% in the Hydrus Microstent with CE arm and 38% in the CE alone arm ($p = 0.001$). In this study, there was a significantly higher rate of focal peripheral anterior synechiae (PAS) in the Hydrus Microstent with CE arm at 2-years of follow-up (6/50, $p = 0.01$). However, PAS had no effect on outcomes, as IOP and medication use were similar to that in the overall Hydrus Microstent with

CE arm.[20] Other prospective, multicenter RTCs are being conducted including the HYDRUS III study, which compares the Hydrus Microstent with the iStent, and the HYDRUS IV study, which is the largest MIGS RCT, including 556 subjects with mild to moderate glaucoma.[21]

Cypass Micro-stent (*Alcon*)

The CyPass Micro-stent is a FDA-approved (2016) suprachoroidal shunt used to increase uveoscleral outflow. The CyPass device itself is a flexible, fenestrated micro-stent sized 6.35 mm x 510 μ m with a 300 μ m lumen and composed of biocompatible, polyimide material (*Figure 9*). It comes preloaded with the micro-stent on a guide-wire conformed to the shape of the sclera to facilitate dissection and insertion between the anterior chamber/sclera and suprachoroidal space. The CyPass Micro-stent is indicated for mild to moderate primary OAG.

The COMPASS Trial was a multicenter RCT including 505 subjects with mild to moderate primary OAG. Subjects were intraoperatively randomized into a CyPass Micro-stent with CE arm (374 subjects) and a CE alone arm (131 subjects).[22] At 2 years, there was a statistically significant difference in the primary endpoint, a 20% reduction in diurnal, washed-out IOP compared to baseline. This endpoint was met in 77% of the Cypass Micro-stent with CE arm compared to 60% in the CE arm ($p = 0.001$). After 2 years, the mean reduction in IOP in the Cypass Micro-stent with CE arm (7.4 mmHg) was significantly lower than in the CE arm (5.4 mmHg) ($p < 0.001$). There was also a statistically significant difference in mean glaucoma medications per patient and the proportion of patients who did not require medications after 2 years. At 2 years, patients in the Cypass Micro-stent group decreased the number of medications from a baseline of 1.4 ± 0.9 to 0.2 ± 0.6 . In the CE alone arm, medication use decreased from a baseline of 1.3 ± 1.0 to 0.6 ± 0.8 . After 2 years, 85% in the Cypass Micro-stent with CE arm and 59% in the CE alone arm did not require medications ($p < 0.001$). There were no significant differences in the rate of adverse events between the two arms. However, reported adverse events included transient BCVA loss ≥ 2 lines (8.8%), visual field loss progression (6.7%), transient iritis (8.6%), transient corneal edema (3.5%), and transient hypotony (2.9%).[22]

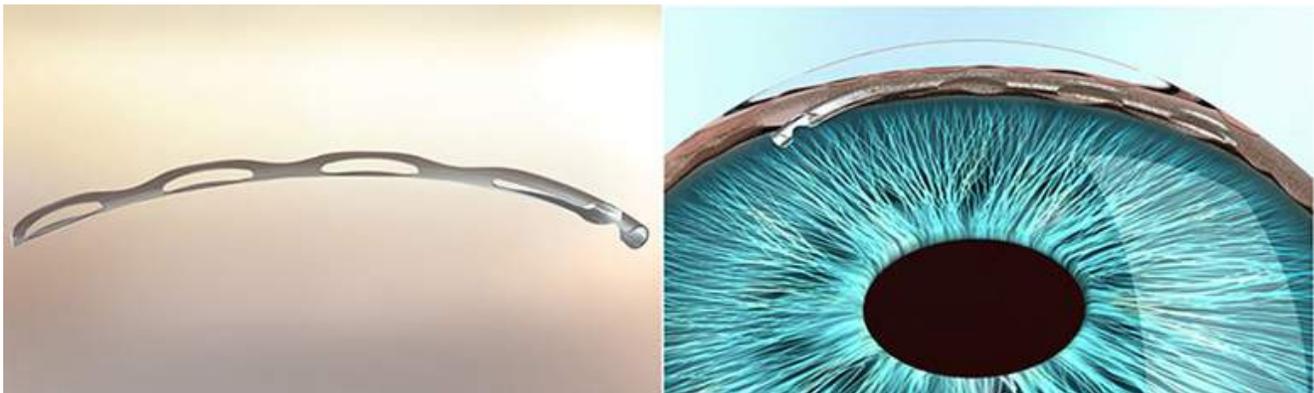


Figure 8. Hydrus Microstent Device. Source: Ivantis, Inc. Images used with permission.

iStent SUPRA (Glaukos Corporation)

The iStent SUPRA is a suprachoroidal stent, which is also designed to increase uveoscleral outflow. The device is a heparin-coated, 4 mm tube with a 0.16 - 0.17 mm lumen, made of polyethersulfone (PES) with a titanium sleeve. As with the original iStent, the device has retention ridges to hold the device in place (*Figure 10*). The iStent SUPRA is preloaded into an injector device, which is used to direct the device between the anterior chamber/sclera and suprachoroidal space. Placement of the iStent SUPRA can be combined with CE and is indicated for mild to moderate OAG.

Katz *et al.* conducted a prospective study of 80 subjects with moderate to advanced OAG on 2 glaucoma medications. Eighty subjects received the iStent SUPRA and travoprost postoperatively and agreed to be followed for 5 years.[23,24] After follow-up through 1 year (n=42), 98% of eyes met the primary endpoint of 20% reduction in IOP with reduction in 1 medication. The mean medicated diurnal IOP decreased from 20.4 mmHg to 12.7 mmHg at 1 year and to 11.9 mmHg at 2 years. The preoperative mean washed-out IOP was 24.8 mmHg, and after a 1 month medication wash-out at both 1 and 2 year time points, mean washed-out IOP was 16.7 mmHg and 17.0 mmHg respectively. Additionally, an IOP \leq 15 mmHg was achieved in 90% of eyes on travoprost at 2 years. Transient hypotony (IOP < 5mmHg) was observed at week one in 2 eyes, both of which resolved by 1 month. One case was associated with choroidal detachment, which resolved by 3 months. BCVA was stable or improved in all but 1 subject due to cataract progression. To gain FDA approval, Glaukos recently completed enrollment (February 2017) for a prospective RCT including 505 subjects with moderate to mild primary OAG and cataract.[25]

XEN gel stent (Allergan)

The XEN gel stent is an FDA-approved (2016) subconjunctival stent, which allows aqueous outflow from the anterior chamber into the subconjunctival space to lower IOP. It is a 6 mm tube composed of gelatin and glutaraldehyde. The implant is preloaded within a 27-gauge needle on a disposable injector. The device is inserted into the anterior chamber, passed *ab interno*, and then tunneled through sclera to deploy the device within the subconjunctival space (*Figure 10*). After implantation, the device creates a filtering bleb. It may be performed with or without adjuvant antimetabolites (mitomycin C), which in this case would be injected beneath the conjunctiva.

There are three sizes of the XEN gel stent based on lumen diameter. The XEN45 (45 μ m lumen) is the only currently FDA-approved size and is for use in patients with refractory glaucoma failing surgical treatment, primary OAG, pseudo-exfoliative, or pigmentary glaucoma with open angles that have failed maximum medical therapy.

In a multicenter, single-arm clinical trial including 65 patients, the implantation of the XEN45 gel stent resulted in a 20% reduction in mean diurnal IOP from baseline on the

same or fewer number of glaucoma medications in 76.3% of subjects at 12 months.[27] There was a decrease in IOP from a mean baseline of 25.1 ± 3.7 mmHg to 15.9 ± 5.2 mmHg. At 12 months, the mean number of glaucoma medications decreased from baseline of 3.5 ± 1.0 to 1.7 ± 1.5 . Most common adverse events included hypotony (IOP < 6 mmHg), BCVA loss \geq 2 lines (n = 4 at 12 months), and an IOP increase > 10 mmHg from baseline. The reported cases of hypotony were transient and resolved in all cases without sequelae. Six of the 17 subjects with an IOP increase > 10 mmHg from baseline had a secondary glaucoma procedure performed prior to the 12-month visit. Needling procedures were needed in 21 subjects due to a flat bleb with the absence of microcysts, fibrotic or blocked bleb filtration area, or a high risk of bleb failure as determined by investigators.

Two other sizes of the XEN gel stents (63 μ m and 140 μ m) have been studied in pilot trials, showing significant IOP reduction and achieving complete success in 29/34 (85%) patients and qualified success in 40/45 (89%) patients. However, there were high rates of eyes requiring needling with or without antifibrotics in both studies: 12/37 (32%) and 21/49 (47%) respectively. Though there were few complications, anterior chamber fill with a viscoelastic was required in 2/34 (6%) and 4/45 (9%) of subjects.[28 ,29] Antifibrotics were not used intraoperatively, but it is thought that the rate of needling would be lower if used during placement of the XEN gel stent, which is currently under study.

InnFocus Microshunt (InnFocus Inc/Santen)

The InnFocus Microshunt also allows aqueous drainage into the subconjunctival space, however it is placed using an *ab externo* approach. The device is 8.5 mm x 0.350 mm with a 70 μ m lumen and composed of SIBS [poly(-styrene-block-isobutylene-block-styrene)] material which regulates aqueous flow (*Figure 12*). After making a small conjunctival peritomy, a needle is used to create a small scleral pocket, within which a smaller needle enters the anterior chamber. The device is then implanted and allows aqueous humor to drain from the anterior chamber into sub-Tenon's space to form a bleb. As in trabeculectomy, mitomycin C is routinely placed in the area of the intended bleb. InnFocus Microshunt implantation may be performed with or without CE. The InnFocus Microshunt is not yet FDA-approved, but is indicated for the treatment of mild, moderate, or severe OAG.

Few published studies have evaluated the InnFocus Microshunt, but clinical trials are being conducted to obtain FDA approval.[30] In a prospective, observational study of 23 eyes having failed maximal medical therapy, 14 eyes received the InnFocus Microshunt and 9 eyes received InnFocus Microshunt in conjunction with CE.[31] After 3 years of follow-up (n = 22), the qualified rate of success, defined as IOP \leq 14 mm Hg and IOP reduction \geq 20%, was 95%. IOP decreased from 23.8 ± 5.3 mmHg to 10.7 ± 3.5 mmHg, and the mean number of glaucoma medications de-

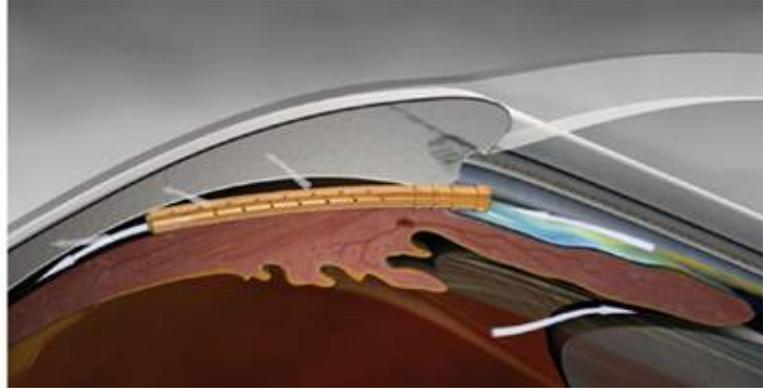


Figure 9. A) CyPass Micro-stent device. B) CyPass Micro-stent device inserted into suprachoroidal space. Source: Alcon. Images used with permission

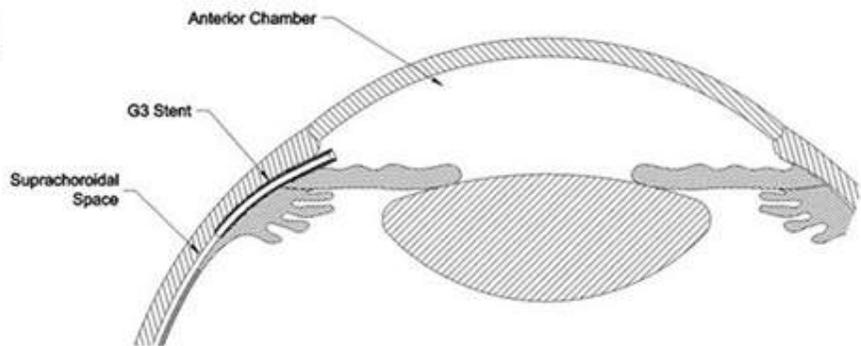


Figure 10. A) iStent SUPRA device. B) iStent SUPRA inserted into suprachoroidal space. Source: Surgical Innovations in Glaucoma. Springer[26] Images used with permission from Springer-Verlag, New York

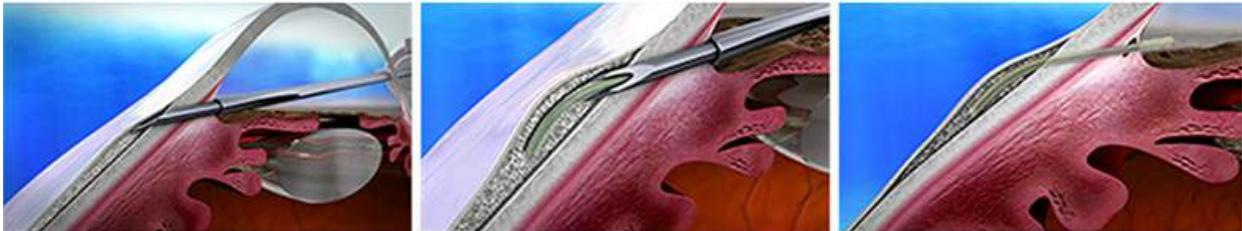


Figure 11. Insertion of the XEN Gel Shunt into Subconjunctival Space. Source: www.aquesys.com/xen Images used with permission.

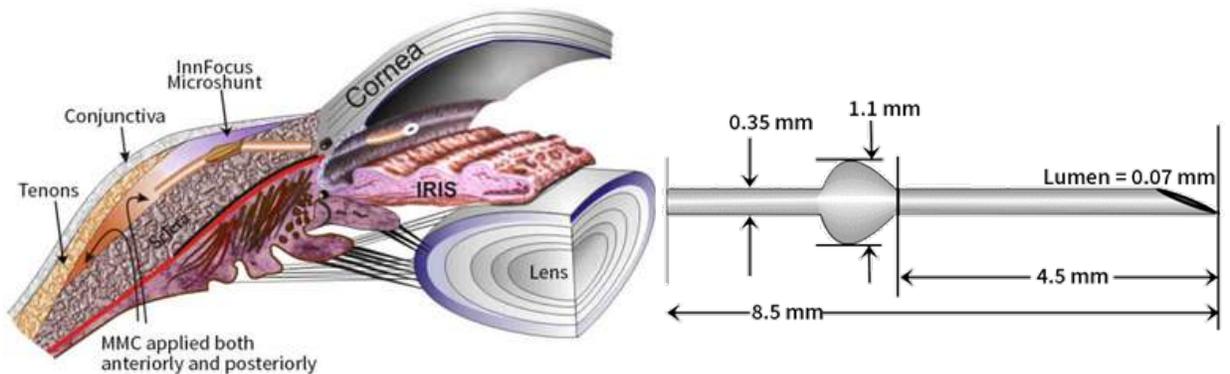


Figure 12. InnFocus Microshunt implanted between subconjunctival space and anterior chamber. Image used with permission from InnFocus, Inc.[30]

creased from 2.4 ± 0.9 to 0.7 ± 1.1 . Reported complications included transient hypotony in 3 patients and transient choroidal effusion in 2 patients, all of which spontaneously resolved by week 3 and week 12, respectively. Additionally, 3 patient

Endocyclophotocoagulation ECP (Endo Optiks Inc)

Endocyclophotocoagulation (ECP) consists of cyclodestruction of the ciliary body epithelium to reduce aqueous production and therefore IOP. The ECP probe is reusable device, which includes a laser source, camera, and light source. After it is introduced into the anterior chamber, the probe can then be directed towards the anterior ciliary processes to deliver precise continuous energy (810 nm wavelength) for successful photocoagulation, visualized as localized shrinkage and whitening of the processes (*Figure 13*). Through a single corneal incision, approximately 240 to 300 degrees of the ciliary processes can be treated, but incisions are needed for a 360-degree treatment. As expected, the greater the amount of processes treated, the greater the reduction in IOP and need for glaucoma medications.[32]

Excessive energy or overtreatment results in eruption of ciliary processes and may be accompanied by a "popping" sound. ECP induces an inflammatory response, and steroids (intravenous or oral) are often helpful to suppress inflammation and reduced IOP spikes. ECP may be utilized in many types of glaucoma (open or closed angle), includ-

ing pediatric glaucoma.[33] ECP may be used as an initial management option for mild to moderate glaucoma or for patients with advanced glaucoma that have failed previous management.[34] ECP can be performed with or without CE but is better suited for pseudophakic or aphakic eyes, as ECP can lead to cataract and zonular damage.

In a recent, non-randomized prospective study, Francis et al. showed ECP with CE to be effective in decreasing IOP and medication burden, compared to CE alone in a group of 160 consecutive patients with medically-controlled OAG. [35] The rate of success, defined as IOP 5 - 21 mmHg and reduction in glaucoma medications without a rise in IOP, was significantly higher in the ECP with CE group compared to the CE alone group after 3 years ($p < 0.01$). Similarly, IOP and required glaucoma medications were significantly lower in the ECP with CE group as compared to the CE alone group. After 2 years, the mean IOP in the ECP with CE group ($n = 80$) decreased from baseline of 18.1 ± 3.0 mmHg to 16.0 ± 3.3 mmHg on fewer glaucoma medications (1.5 ± 0.8 to 0.4 ± 0.7), and the mean IOP decreased from 18.1 ± 3.0 mmHg to 17.3 ± 3.2 mmHg on fewer glaucoma medications (2.4 ± 1.0 to 2.0 ± 1.0) in the control group ($n = 80$). Reported adverse events included hyphema, inflammation, and IOP spike. Smaller, prospective studies have also shown ECP to be comparable to traditional incisional glaucoma surgeries with fewer complications.[36 ,37]

Also see Endocyclophotocoagulation video, at www.endooptiks.com/video/BasicECP.mp4

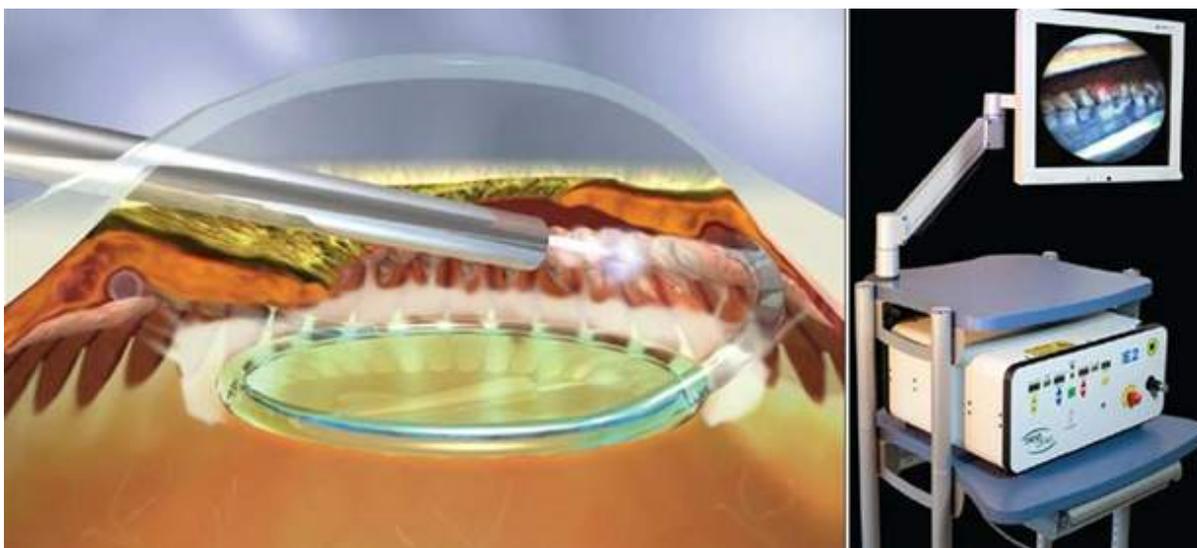


Figure 13. Endocyclophotocoagulation. ECP probe in ciliary sulcus space delivering energy to ciliary processes. Video screen of cryophotocoagulated ciliary processes after ECP procedure. Images used with permission. Source: Beaver Visitec, Int'l, Inc.

Cost of MIGS

One study conducted by Iordanous *et al.* compared the cost of Trabectome, iStent, and ECP to glaucoma medications in the Ontario Health Insurance Plan.[38] Though physician fees and start up costs were not included for each MIGS device, the cumulative cost savings of successful Trabectome, iStent, and ECP procedures as compared to mono-drug, bi-drug, and tri-drug therapy were shown

to be modest over a 6 year period (Figure 14). Trabectome had the greatest cost savings, followed by ECP, and then iStent. While glaucoma management can be a financial burden, many other factors, such as effectiveness, safety, quality of life, or compliance, must be further considered as well. As MIGS are further developed and more widely used, more evidence and long-term follow-up will allow further study of cost-effectiveness.

Table 2: Relative effectiveness of MIGS Procedures based on decrease in IOP and decrease in medications for selected studies. Note *Combined procedure MIGS with cataract extraction **Mean follow up.

MIGS Procedure	Decrease in IOP	Decrease in Medications	Study Type
iStent Micro-Bypass* [7]	8.4 mmHg @ 2 years	0.8 @ 2 years	Randomized controlled trial
iStent Inject [9]	8.1 mmHg @ 1 year	Not available	Prospective, randomized trial
Gonioscopy-assisted transluminal trabeculotomy (GATT)* [10]	8.4 mmHg @ 1 year	1.9 @ 1 year	Retrospective review
Trabectome* [15]	6.2 mmHg @ 2 years	0.76 @ 2 years	Meta-analysis
TRAB 360 Trabeculotomy [16]	6.3 mmHg @ 131.5 days**	0.9 @ 131.5 days**	Retrospective review
Ab interno canaloplasty* [18]	4.0 mmHg @ 1 year	1.0 @ 1 year	Case-series review
Hydrus Microstent* [20]	9.4 mmHg @ 2 years	1.5 @ 2 years	Randomized controlled trial
CyPass Micro-Stent* [22]	7.4 mmHg @ 2 years	1.2 @ 2 years	Randomized controlled trial
iStent Supra [23 ,24]	7.8 mmHg @ 2 years	Not available	Prospective, single arm clinical trial
XEN Glaucoma Treatment System [27]	9.2 mmHg @ 1 year	1.8 @ 1 year	Prospective, single arm clinical trial
InnFocus MicroShunt* [31]	16.2 mmHg @ 3 years	1.6 @ 3 years	Prospective, single arm clinical trial
Endocyclophotocoagulation* [35]	2.1 mmHg @ 2 years	1.1 @ 2 years	Prospective case-control study

Table 3: Cumulative 6-Year Cost Comparison of Trabectome, iStent, and ECP versus Mono-drug, Bi-drug, and Tri-drug Therapy. Adapted from Journal of Glaucoma. 23(2):e112-e118, 2014.[38]

Cumulative Cost Per Patient (Canadian Dollar \$, 2014)						
	1 year	2 year	3 year	4 year	5 year	6 year
Trabectome	744.00	744.00	744.00	744.00	744.00	744.00
iStent	1044.00	1044.00	1044.00	1044.00	1044.00	1044.00
Endoscopic Photocoagulation	244.00	244.00	244.00	244.00	244.00	244.00
Medical Therapy						
Mono-drug	170.54	341.08	511.61	682.15	852.69	1023.23
Bi-drug	386.09	772.18	1158.28	1544.37	1930.46	2316.55
Tri-drug	528.12	1056.24	1584.36	2112.48	2640.60	3168.71

Conclusion

MIGS is a relatively new category of procedures with a limited number of studies showing largely acceptable safety profiles and modest efficacy. While MIGS surgeries currently appear unlikely to supplant traditional incisional glaucoma surgeries, they fill an important gap between medical therapy and incisional surgery for mild to moderate glaucoma and can often mitigate medication burden. As the area of MIGS continues to evolve, more rigorous studies with longer follow-up will increase our understanding of the full efficacy and safety of MIGS procedures.

DISCLAIMER: EyeRounds editorial board members, the authors, and the University of Iowa do not recommend or endorse any specific tests, drugs, devices, products, services, physicians, or medical institutions that may be mentioned or referenced on this web site. Manufacturers of products and procedures mentioned have no influence on the editorial content or presentation and such content does not imply or express endorsements of any product, service, or company.

References

1. Tham YC, Li X, Wong TY, Quigley HA, Aung T, Cheng CY. Global prevalence of glaucoma and projections of glaucoma burden through 2040: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ophthalmology* 2014;121(11):2081-2090. [PubMed.gov/24974815](http://pubmed.gov/24974815)
2. Leahy KE, White AJ. Selective laser trabeculoplasty: current perspectives. *Clin Ophthalmol* 2015;9:833-841. [PubMed.gov/26005327](http://pubmed.gov/26005327)
3. Gedde SJ, Schiffman JC, Feuer WJ, Herndon LW, Brandt JD, Budenz DL, Tube versus Trabeculectomy Study G. Treatment outcomes in the Tube Versus Trabeculectomy (TVT) study after five years of follow-up. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2012;153(5):789-803 e782. [PubMed.gov/22245458](http://pubmed.gov/22245458)
4. Gedde SJ, Herndon LW, Brandt JD, Budenz DL, Feuer WJ, Schiffman JC, Tube Versus Trabeculectomy Study G. Postoperative complications in the Tube Versus Trabeculectomy (TVT) study during five years of follow-up. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2012;153(5):804-814 e801. [PubMed.gov/22244522](http://pubmed.gov/22244522)
5. Saheb H, Ahmed, II. Micro-invasive glaucoma surgery: current perspectives and future directions. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2012;23(2):96-104. [PubMed.gov/22249233](http://pubmed.gov/22249233)
6. Samuelson TW, Katz LJ, Wells JM, Duh YJ, Giamporcaro JE, Group USIS. Randomized evaluation of the trabecular micro-bypass stent with phacoemulsification in patients with glaucoma and cataract. *Ophthalmology* 2011;118(3):459-467. [PubMed.gov/20828829](http://pubmed.gov/20828829)
7. Craven ER, Katz LJ, Wells JM, Giamporcaro JE, iStent Study G. Cataract surgery with trabecular micro-bypass stent implantation in patients with mild-to-moderate open-angle glaucoma and cataract: two-year follow-up. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2012;38(8):1339-1345. [PubMed.gov/22814041](http://pubmed.gov/22814041)
8. Belovay GW, Naqi A, Chan BJ, Rateb M, Ahmed, II. Using multiple trabecular micro-bypass stents in cataract patients to treat open-angle glaucoma. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2012;38(11):1911-1917. [PubMed.gov/22980724](http://pubmed.gov/22980724)
9. Fea AM, Belda JL, Rekas M, Junemann A, Chang L, Pablo L, Voskanyan L, Katz LJ. Prospective unmasked randomized evaluation of the iStent inject ((R)) versus two ocular hypotensive agents in patients with primary open-angle glaucoma. *Clin Ophthalmol* 2014;8:875-882. [PubMed.gov/24855336](http://pubmed.gov/24855336)
10. Grover DS, Godfrey DG, Smith O, Feuer WJ, Montes de Oca I, Fellman RL. Gonioscopy-assisted transluminal trabeculotomy, ab interno trabeculotomy: technique report and preliminary results. *Ophthalmology* 2014;121(4):855-861. [PubMed.gov/24412282](http://pubmed.gov/24412282)
11. Grover DS, Smith O, Fellman RL, Godfrey DG, Butler MR, Montes de Oca I, Feuer WJ. Gonioscopy assisted transluminal trabeculotomy: an ab interno circumferential trabeculotomy for the treatment of primary congenital glaucoma and juvenile open angle glaucoma. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2015;99(8):1092-1096. [PubMed.gov/25677669](http://pubmed.gov/25677669)
12. Bussell II, Kaplowitz K, Schuman JS, Loewen NA, Trabectome Study Group. Outcomes of ab interno trabeculectomy with the trabectome by degree of angle opening. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2015;99(7):914-919. [PubMed.gov/25336577](http://pubmed.gov/25336577)
13. Ting JL, Damji KF, Stiles MC, Trabectome Study G. Ab interno trabeculectomy: outcomes in exfoliation versus primary open-angle glaucoma. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2012;38(2):315-323. [PubMed.gov/22322166](http://pubmed.gov/22322166)
14. Bussell, II, Kaplowitz K, Schuman JS, Loewen NA, Trabectome Study G. Outcomes of ab interno trabeculectomy with the trabectome after failed trabeculectomy. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2015;99(2):258-262. [PubMed.gov/25170064](http://pubmed.gov/25170064)
15. Kaplowitz K, Bussell, II, Honkanen R, Schuman JS, Loewen NA. Review and meta-analysis of ab-interno trabeculectomy outcomes. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2016;100(5):594-600. [PubMed.gov/26733487](http://pubmed.gov/26733487)
16. Sarkisian SR, Allan EJ, Ding K, Dvorak J, Badawi DY. New Way for Ab Interno Trabeculotomy: Initial Results [poster]. ASCRS ASOA Symposium and Congress; 17-21 April 2015; San Diego, CA. ascrs.confex.com/ascrs/15am/webprogram/Paper15533.html
17. Seibold LK, Soohoo JR, Ammar DA, Kahook MY. Preclinical investigation of ab interno trabeculectomy using a novel dual-blade device. *Am*

- J Ophthalmol* 2013;155(3):524-529 e522. [PubMed.gov/23218696](#)
18. Ellex iScience. Ab-Interno Canaloplasty: A Comprehensive Minimally Invasive Glaucoma Surgery That Keeps Its Promise: 12 month case series review, 2016. [Last rev.; accessed on 13 Sept. 2017] www.ellex.com/wp-content/uploads/sites/9/ABiC-Whitepaper-12-Months-1.pdf
 19. U.S. National Institutes of Health. Randomized Study of the Safety and Effectiveness of the Sight Sciences VISCO™360 Viscosurgical System Versus SLT in Primary Open Angle Glaucoma (VISCO360 Study). Bethesda, MD: ClinicalTrials.gov, 2016. [Last rev. on 25 July 2017; accessed on 18 Sept. 2017] www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02928289
 20. Pfeiffer N, Garcia-Feijoo J, Martinez-de-la-Casa JM, Larrosa JM, Fea A, Lemij H, Gandolfi S, Schwenn O, Lorenz K, Samuelson TW. A Randomized Trial of a Schlemm's Canal Microstent with Phacoemulsification for Reducing Intraocular Pressure in Open-Angle Glaucoma. *Ophthalmology* 2015;122(7):1283-1293. [PubMed.gov/25972254](#)
 21. U.S. National Institutes of Health. Safety & Effectiveness Study of the Hydrus Device for Lowering IOP in Glaucoma Patients Undergoing Cataract Surgery. Bethesda, MD: ClinicalTrials.gov, 2016. [Last rev. on 5 Sept. 2017; accessed on 18 Sept. 2017] www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02928289
 22. Vold S, Ahmed, II, Craven ER, Mattox C, Stamper R, Packer M, Brown RH, Ianchulev T, CyPass Study G. Two-Year COMPASS Trial Results: Supraciliary Microstenting with Phacoemulsification in Patients with Open-Angle Glaucoma and Cataracts. *Ophthalmology* 2016;123(10):2103-2112. [PubMed.gov/27506486](#)
 23. Myers JS, Katz LJ. Results of suprachoroidal stent and topical travoprost for reduction of IOP and medication in open-angle glaucoma [Abstract]. Annual Meeting Program and Abstract Book. The 24th Annual AGS Meeting; February 27, 2014; Washington, DC., p. 70; 2014
 24. Emerick GT. Highlights of the AGS Annual Meeting: The latest research findings from the 24th annual meeting of the American Glaucoma Society, held February 26th to March 2nd. *Glaucoma Today* 2014, glaucomatoday.com/pdfs/gt0314_rsrch.pdf. (March/April):10-11
 25. Glaukos Corp. Glaukos Completes Patient Enrollment in Pivotal Phase of U.S. IDE Clinical Trial for iStent SUPRA®. [Press Release Feb. 16, 2017]. San Clemente, CA: Business Wire, 2017. www.businesswire.com/news/home/20170216005253/en/
 26. Hill RA, Haffner D, Voskanyan L. The iStent® MIGS Family: iStent®, iStent Inject®, and iStent Supra® In: Samples JR, Ahmed IIK, editors. *Surgical Innovations in Glaucoma*. New York: Springer-Verlag; 2014; p. 147-156.
 27. Allergan Inc. Directions for use for the XEN Glaucoma Treatment System: Allergan, Inc., 2017. [Last rev. on Feb. 2017; accessed on March 6 2017] allergan-web-cdn-prod.azureedge.net/actavis/actavis/media/allergan-pdf-documents/labeling/xen/dfu_xen_glaucoma_treatment_system_us_feb2017.pdf
 28. Sheybani A, Dick HB, Ahmed, II. Early Clinical Results of a Novel Ab Interno Gel Stent for the Surgical Treatment of Open-angle Glaucoma. *J Glaucoma* 2016;25(7):e691-696. [PubMed.gov/26561420](#)
 29. Sheybani A, Lenzhofer M, Hohensinn M, Reitsamer H, Ahmed, II. Phacoemulsification combined with a new ab interno gel stent to treat open-angle glaucoma: Pilot study. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2015;41(9):1905-1909. [PubMed.gov/26482822](#)
 30. InnFocus Inc. FDA Approves InnFocus Glaucoma Study Expansion: Final Clinical Testing Phase to BEgin. [Press Release Nov. 10, 2015]: CISION, 2015. www.prnewswire.com/news-releases/fda-approves-innfocus-glaucoma-study-expansion-300175743.html
 31. Batlle JF, Fantes F, Riss I, Pinchuk L, Alburquerque R, Kato YP, Arrieta E, Peralta AC, Palmberg P, Parrish RK, 2nd, Weber BA, Parel JM. Three-Year Follow-up of a Novel Aqueous Humor MicroShunt. *J Glaucoma* 2016;25(2):e58-65. [PubMed.gov/26766400](#)
 32. Kahook MY, Lathrop KL, Noecker RJ. One-site versus two-site endoscopic cyclophotocoagulation. *J Glaucoma* 2007;16(6):527-530. [PubMed.gov/17873713](#)
 33. Carter BC, Plager DA, Neely DE, Sprunger DT, Sondhi N, Roberts GJ. Endoscopic diode laser cyclophotocoagulation in the management of aphakic and pseudophakic glaucoma in children. *J AAPOS* 2007;11(1):34-40. [PubMed.gov/17307681](#)
 34. Chen J, Cohn RA, Lin SC, Cortes AE, Alvarado JA. Endoscopic photocoagulation of the ciliary body for treatment of refractory glaucomas. *Am J Ophthalmol* 1997;124(6):787-796. [PubMed.gov/9402825](#)
 35. Francis BA, Berke SJ, Dustin L, Noecker R. Endoscopic cyclophotocoagulation combined with phacoemulsification versus phacoemulsification alone in medically controlled glaucoma. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2014;40(8):1313-1321. [PubMed.gov/25088629](#)
 36. Lima FE, Magacho L, Carvalho DM, Susanna R, Jr., Avila MP. A prospective, comparative study between endoscopic cyclophotocoagulation and the Ahmed drainage implant in refractory glaucoma. *J Glaucoma* 2004;13(3):233-237. [PubMed.gov/15118469](#)
 37. Gayton JL, Van Der Karr M, Sanders V. Combined cataract and glaucoma surgery: trabeculectomy versus endoscopic laser cycloablation. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 1999;25(9):1214-1219. [PubMed.gov/10476504](#)
 38. Iordanous Y, Kent JS, Hutnik CM, Malvankar-Mehta MS. Projected cost comparison of Trabectome, iStent, and endoscopic cyclophotocoagulation versus glaucoma medication in the Ontario Health Insurance Plan. *J Glaucoma* 2014;23(2):e112-118. [PubMed.gov/23807348](#)

Suggested Citation Format

Fox AR, Risma TB, Kam JP, Bettis DI. MIGS: Minimally Invasive Glaucoma Surgery. EyeRounds.org. posted September 27, 2017; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/MIGS/

last updated: 09/27/2017

Tutorials

Neuro-Ophthalmology

Visual Field Testing: A basic tutorial

Joy N. Carroll and Chris A. Johnson, Ph.D.

August 22, 2013

Introduction: Components of Vision

Vision is a combination of distinct measurable functions: visual acuity, color vision, vernier (alignment) acuity, the perception of movement and change in luminous intensity (flicker) or differences in luminous intensity (contrast). Visual acuity is the ability to determine fine detail and distinguish one object from another. Acuity is tested with vision charts of letters or images.

Changes in luminous intensity are perceived as flicker, and the difference in luminous intensity from one object to another is perceived as contrast [1]. The visual field encompasses the entire region of space seen while gaze is directed at any central object. This tutorial explains visual field testing.

The Visual Field

Under normal daylight (photopic) conditions, the smallest or least intense visible objects are only seen in the central region of the visual field. In the periphery, objects must be larger or more intense to be identified. A normal visual field extends approximately 100° temporally (laterally), 60° nasally, 60° superiorly, and 70° inferiorly [2]. A physiologic scotoma (a blind spot) exists at 15° temporally where the optic nerve leaves the eye. Definitive location varies slightly on an individual basis. The average blind spot is 7.5° in diameter, vertically centered 1.5° below the horizontal meridian [3]. See figure 1. For dim night lighting (scotopic) conditions, the mid periphery is the most sensitive region of the visual field.

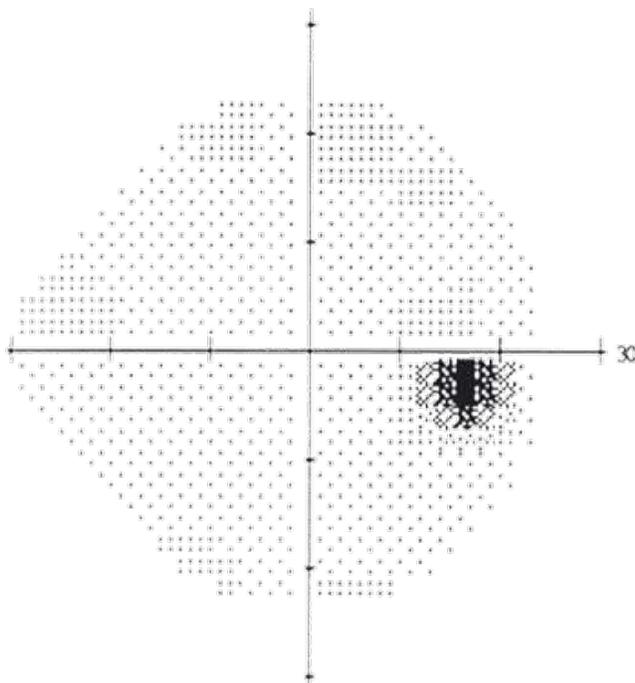


Figure 1: Physiologic scotoma. The scotoma is the area of increased pixelation, indicating decreased visual acuity.

Anatomy & Physiology

The visual field corresponds to the topographic arrangement of photoreceptors in the eye. When photons of light are absorbed by the photoreceptor cells of the retina, a cis-trans isomerization of 11-cis chromophore begins the phototransduction cascade, resulting in hyperpolarization of bipolar and horizontal cells, and ultimately activation of ganglion cells, which form the nerve fiber layer [4]. The nerve fibers travel to the optic nerve head, where the optic nerve originates. At the optic nerve head (also known as the optic disc), there are no photoreceptors, only nerve fibers. This region corresponds to the physiologic scotoma.

The highest density of cone (photopic) photoreceptors is located in the macula. The ganglion cell axons which ultimately join to form the optic nerve travel horizontally as the papillomacular bundle from the macula to the temporal aspect of the optic disc. The nerve fibers respect the median raphe along the horizontal meridian. The ganglion cells originating temporal to the macula must also travel to the optic disc without crossing the median raphe. To do so they must arc around the papillomacular bundle, forming the appropriately named arcuate fibers. Ganglion cells originating in the areas of the retina nasal to the disc do not have to arc around the macula. They are therefore oriented radially, making a fairly straight path to the optic nerve. Visual field defects resulting from ganglion cell loss, such as those from glaucoma, correspond to these anatomical patterns.

It is important to note that visual field coordinates are the opposite of retinal coordinates. Light entering the eye from the temporal visual field is detected by photoreceptors on

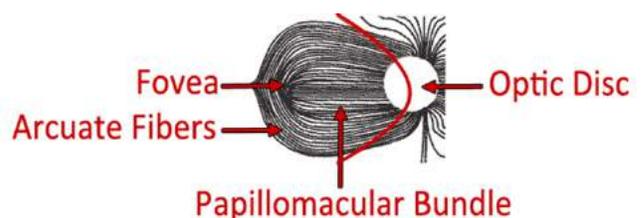


Figure 2: Ganglion Cell Pathways

the nasal side of the retina and light entering from the nasal visual field is detected by the temporal photoreceptors. Similarly, light from the superior visual field is absorbed in the inferior retina and vice versa. Therefore, a patient with injury to the ganglion cells in the temporal retina would be predicted to have a nasal visual field defect.

Rays of Light on the Retina

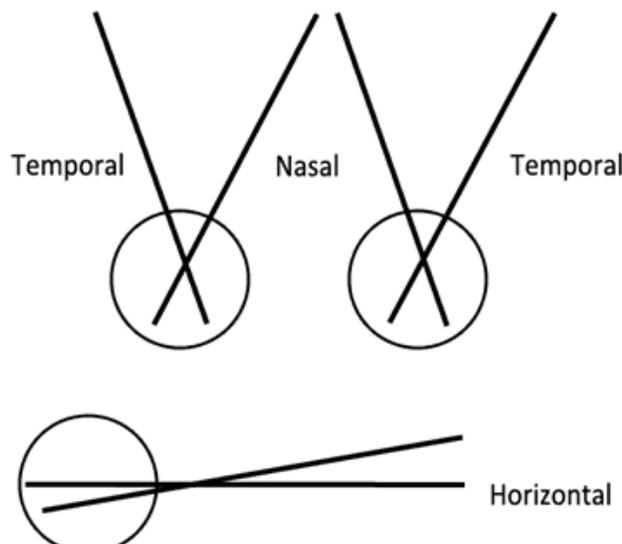


Figure 3: Light Paths to the Retina. Light originating superior to the eye is detected by the inferior retina. Light originating temporal to the eye is detected by the nasal aspect of the retina.

History

Recognition of the visual field extends back more than 2,000 years to the time of Hippocrates, who recognized a hemianopsia [5]. Visual fields are frequently evaluated by simply covering one eye and asking the patient to look straight ahead while using peripheral vision to identify an object, or the number of fingers shown by the examiner. The field is often tested at only four locations, which is sensitive only for large field defects. This method of testing is referred to as **confrontation visual field evaluation**.

Quantification of visual fields was developed during the nineteenth century. Jannik Bjerrum began mapping visual fields by asking patients to identify whether a white object on the end of a black stick, in front of a black screen, was seen. Several targets of varying sizes on the wand were tested, effectively mapping the variation in size required for vision in different areas of the field. This method of testing, known as the tangent screen, only measures the central 30° of the visual field [5].

The Amsler grid is another tool for measuring the central visual field occupied by the macula (approximately 8 degrees in diameter). The test consists of a card with horizontal and vertical black lines intersecting on a white background, held at a distance of 25 cm or 40 cm. While fixing gaze on a point in the center of the grid, areas that are

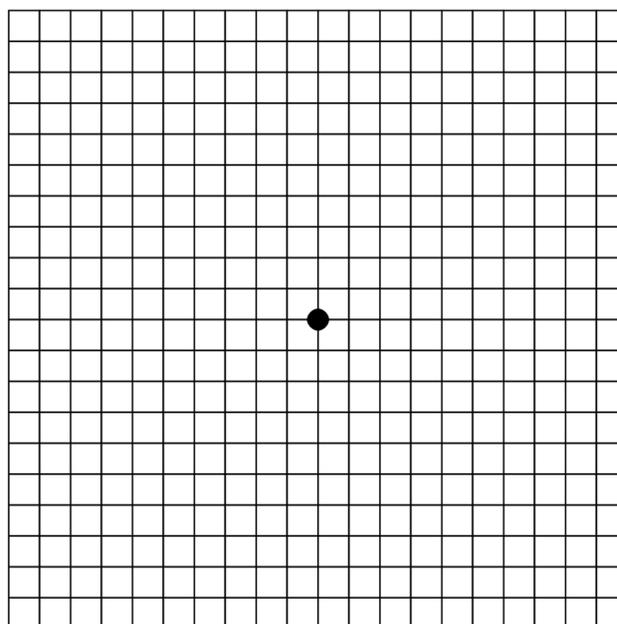


Figure 4: Amsler grid

blurry, absent, or distorted are identified by the patient. Central vision corresponds with the macula, hence the use of Amsler grids to follow macular pathology clinically [5].

Kinetic and Static Perimetry

A method of testing the complete visual field was developed by Hans Goldmann. His bowl-shaped perimeter uses bright light as targets superimposed on a white background. Targets may vary in size, luminance, and color. Goldmann perimetry requires trained perimetrists to measure and draw the visual field. Challenges include cost and inter-perimetrist variability [5]. In practice, Goldmann perimetry is a form of kinetic perimetry: a stimulus is *moved* from beyond the edge of the visual field into the field. The location at which the stimulus is first seen marks the outer perimeter of the visual field for the size of the stimulus tested.

Automated perimetry was developed in the 1970s. As the name suggests, automated perimetry maps a visual field with the aid of a computer. The Octopus perimeter, the Humphrey Field Analyzer, and Humphrey Matrix are a few of the available automated perimeters. Although the Octopus can perform a modified kinetic perimetry, most automated perimetry is static: *stationary* stimuli, varying in size and intensity, are presented in specific locations within the visual field [6].

Humphrey Visual Field Test

Several basic conditions must be met for a successful map of the visual field to be produced by any method. The individual must be able to maintain a constant gaze toward a fixed location for several minutes. Each eye is tested separately while the opposite eye is covered with



Figure 5: Humphrey Visual Field Analyzer

a patch. Refractive correction must be made with a test lens. Spectacles must not be worn because they can cause false defects in the visual field due to their shape [6]. In addition, correction must be made for presbyopia, to reduce accommodative strain. Standard adjustments for presbyopia are available based on age alone. To correct an astigmatism >0.75 diopters, a cylindrical lens must be used. If the eyelid or lashes obstruct the visual axis, the lid may be taped to the forehead to lift it out of the way.

During Humphrey Visual Field (HVF) testing, the patient places his head in the chinrest and fixes his gaze toward a central fixation point in a large, white bowl. As stated above, this test is an example of static perimetry. It assesses the ability to see a non-mobile stimulus which remains for a brief moment (200 ms) in the visual field. When the patient sees a presented stimulus, he presses the button on a handheld remote control. Different locations within a given region of the visual field are tested until the threshold, or the stimulus intensity seen 50% of the time, is seen at each test location.

Stimuli vary in size and luminous intensity. Goldmann size III (about $\frac{1}{2}$ degree in diameter) is generally used, but Goldmann size V (approximately 2 degrees in diameter) is available for patients with decreased visual acuity ($<20/200$) or other visual impairment. Goldmann sizes I, II, and III are rarely used clinically. The luminous intensity of the stimuli can be varied over a range of 0.08 to 10,000 apostilbs (asb). It is reported in decibels (dB) of attenu-

ation, or dimming, extending from 0 dB (the brightest, unattenuated stimulus) to 51 dB (the dimmest, maximally attenuated stimulus). If the patient is unable to see even the brightest, unattenuated stimulus, it is reported as <0 dB.

The Swedish Interactive Thresholding Algorithm (SITA) is frequently used. SITA is a forecasting procedure that uses Bayesian statistical properties that is similar to the methods used for providing weather information and predictions. SITA allows for more rapid analysis than would be possible without forecasting. By taking into account a user's results in nearby locations, stimuli that are unlikely to be seen, or extremely likely to be seen are not tested exhaustively. Instead the stimuli that are likely near threshold are tested.

Reading the Humphrey Visual Field Printout

All of the information provided on the visual field printout is important. Patient identity information and the specific test and stimulus size are located near the top of the analysis. It is important to verify that the patient's birthdate was properly entered as an error will result in comparisons with normal individuals in the wrong age group.

Beneath the patient's name is a statement giving information about the testing parameters, such as "Central 24-2 Threshold Test." The first statement, "Central 24" indicates that the central 24 degrees of visual field were analyzed. The next number indicates how the grid of points is aligned to the visual axis. The number "1" indicates that the middle points are overlying the horizontal and vertical meridians. The number "2" indicates that the grid of points straddles these meridians. This is the setting most commonly used, as it is easier to assess whether visual field defects respect the horizontal or vertical midline.

Next on the report are the reliability indices, including fixation losses, false positives, and false negatives. Fixation losses occur when the patient reports seeing a stimulus that is presented in the predicted area of the physiologic blind spot. False positives occur when a patient presses the button when no stimulus is presented. Eager-to-please participants sometimes struggle with high false positive rates (i.e., they are "trigger happy"). False positives can often be corrected by providing a simple statement that many stimuli will not be seen even with normal vision. False negatives occur when a patient fails to see a significantly brighter stimulus at a location than was previously seen. False negatives are usually the result of attention lapses or fatigue and are difficult to correct.

The visual threshold is the intensity of stimulus seen 50% of the time at each location. The threshold values of each tested point are listed in decibels in the sensitivity plot. Higher numbers mean the patient was able to see a more attenuated light, and thus has more sensitive vision at that location. To the right of the numerical sensitivity plot is the grayscale map. This map presents sensitivity across the patient's visual field with lighter regions indicating higher sensitivity and darker regions reflecting lower sensitivi-

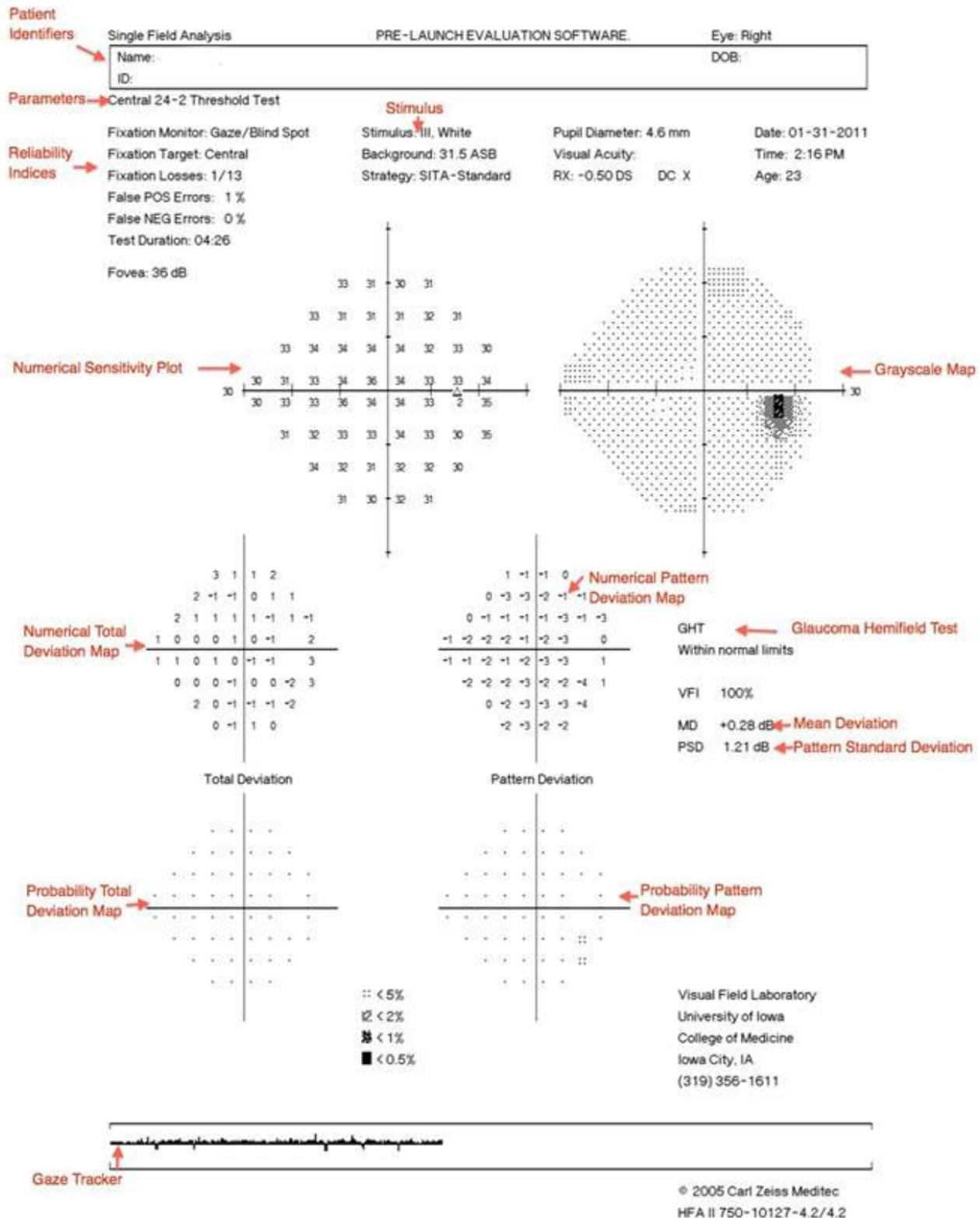


Figure 6: HVF 24-2. Courtesy Michael Wall, M.D.

ty. The sensitivities are not compared to any normative database. Therefore the map may draw attention to an irregularity within a field, but may minimize field loss if loss is more homogenous across the field. Caution should be used as it can be misleading based on where the machine chooses to make the cutoff between the different shades of gray. The raw threshold data should always be assessed in conjunction with the grayscale representation.

The numerical total deviation map compares the patient's visual sensitivity to an average normal individual of the same age. It is useful to compare with age-matched normal thresholds as sensitivity normally decreases gradually with age. Positive values represent areas of the field where the patient can see dimmer stimuli than the average individual of that age. Negative values represent decreased sensitivity from normal.

The numerical pattern deviation map shows discrepancies within a patient's visual field by correcting for generalized decreases in visual sensitivity. It is useful to show localized areas of sensitivity loss hidden within a field that is diffusely depressed. For example, a person with dense cataracts may have decreased threshold across the entire visual field and this may obscure more focal losses due to coexisting disorders like glaucoma. Rather than comparing the patient's threshold values with a normative database, the pattern deviation analysis finds the patient's 7th most sensitive (85th percentile) non-edge point and gives it a value of zero [6]. Each other test location is then compared with this value to correct for any generalized depression. It has been demonstrated that this method is the best for separating widespread or diffuse loss from localized loss.

The bottom-most probability plots are grayscale versions of the total deviation and pattern deviation maps. These maps may be useful to visually represent the statistical significance of the total and pattern deviation calculations. The grayscale maps should only be interpreted in conjunction with the numerical maps to avoid extrapolations.

On the right side of the printout are several useful numbers. The glaucoma hemifield test (GHT) compares groups of corresponding points above and below the horizontal meridian to assess for significant difference which may be consistent with glaucoma. Mean deviation (MD) is the mean deviation in the patient's results compared to those expected from the age-matched normative database. This calculation weighs center points more highly than peripheral points. Pattern standard deviation (PSD) is a depiction of focal defects. It is determined by comparing the differences between adjacent points. Higher values represent more focal losses, while lower values can represent either no loss or diffuse loss. Short-term fluctuations (SF) are a calculation portraying the variability between repeated measurements of the same test location. High SF decreases the reliability of the test. Corrected pattern standard deviation (CPSD) corrects the PSD for the SF. If there is high variability when testing the same point (high SF), PSD is given less weight due to decreased predictive value, and CPSD will therefore appear lower than PSD.

Along the bottom of the HVF printout is a gaze tracker. The patient's pupil is monitored during testing, and each time the pupil moves (representing a loss of fixation or head alignment), an upstroke is recorded. Losses of fixation decrease the accuracy of visual field testing because abnormalities will not correspond with the expected anatomic region of the retina and some may be missed entirely. When the gaze tracker loses view of the pupil (representing a blink or droopy upper eyelid), a downstroke is recorded. Pupillary obstruction can also decrease the accuracy of results.

Goldmann Visual Field Testing

Goldmann visual field (GVF) perimetry is not as widely available as HVF because it requires skilled perimetrists who manually map the visual field without the aid of a computer algorithm. Light is projected into a white bowl with a standardized background light intensity. The projected light forms a fairly circular stimulus. Six stimulus sizes are available, ranging from 0.0625 mm² (about 6 minutes of arc diameter) to 64 mm² (about 2 degrees in diameter) when viewed at 30 cm, which is the standard distance between the patient's eye and the stimulus on the background. The overall field mapping technique used is a form of kinetic perimetry, where a stimulus is moved into the field of vision. When the patient sees the stimulus, he indicates so with a low-tech method. At the University of Iowa a washer is given to the patient, with instructions to tap the table with the washer whenever the stimulus is seen. The perimetrist then makes a mark at the point where the stimulus was seen. To account for reaction time, a good perimetrist consistently adjusts the location of the mark. At the conclusion of the tests, the marks are connected by lines to form smooth boundaries of the visual field, or isopters. Areas of decreased sensitivity (scotomata) are mapped by an opposite process, beginning at the center of the area of loss and moving the target outward in at least 8



Figure 7: Goldmann Perimeter

directions (different clock hours). The different colors used represent stimuli of different sizes and luminous intensities.

Goldmann Visual Field Interpretation

The final result of a GVF is a diagram similar to a topographic map. An analogy commonly used to conceptualize these diagrams is the "island of vision." In this analogy, the visual field is an island with a central peak and the altitude correlates with the visual sensitivity in a given location. In this analogy, physiologic blind spot is represented by a pit or a well in the island. The isopters are named with three characters: a Roman numeral, an Arabic number, and a letter. The Roman numeral indicates the Goldmann size of the stimulus. The Arabic number and letter indicate the attenuation of the light. The combination "4e" is used when there is no attenuation. For each Arabic number less than "4," the light is attenuated by 5 dB. For each letter earlier in the alphabet than "e," the light is attenuated by 1 dB. Within the confines of an isopter, the patient is able to see a light of this size and intensity. Scotomata are represented by areas shaded with a solid color. The color represents the depth of the scotoma, or the dimmest, smallest stimulus the patient is unable to see in that area. For example, in figure 8, the physiologic blind spot is shaded orange

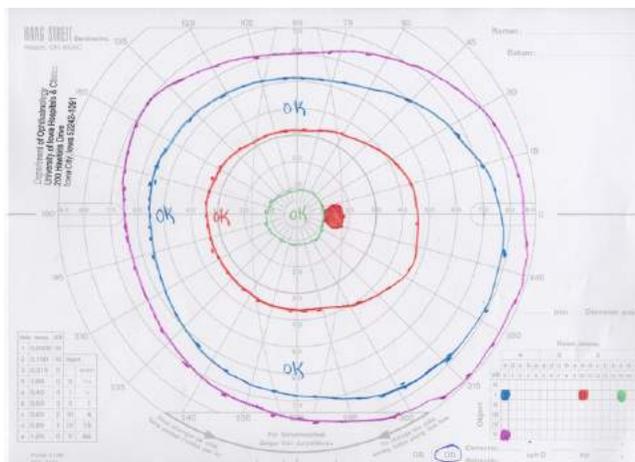


Figure 8: Goldmann Visual Field. Courtesy Chris A. Johnson, Ph.D.

like the I2e isopter. This suggests the patient is unable to see the I2e stimulus in the area but was able to see the dimmer I4e stimulus.

Glaucomatous Visual Field Defects

Loss of optic nerve axons in glaucoma eventually results in visual field defects, but the defects may not be evident until a considerable percentage of axons are lost. After that point in disease progression, further progression can be followed with serial visual field measurements. The visual field defects associated with glaucoma are not specific for the disease. For example, a generalized depression of the entire field is a change associated not only with glaucoma, but could also be the result of a cataract. Additional examples of glaucomatous changes include but are not limited to focal depression, focal or generalized contraction of the visual field, and blind spot baring (reduced sensitivity directly around the optic nerve head) [7].

Scotomata are islands of reduced sensitivity within the visual field surrounded by areas of better vision. Islands shaped like commas are named Seidel scotomata. Islands that arc in the shape of the arcuate fibers are Bjerrum or arcuate scotomata. Those that affect the center of vision are central scotomata and those that are located around the central ten degrees of the visual field are paracentral scotomas. If a defect is located in the nasal field and extends ten degrees along the horizontal meridian in a single isopter, or 5 degrees in multiple isopters, it is known as a nasal step.

End stage glaucoma can result in a superior or inferior hemifield defect, or even loss of all vision other than a central or temporal island of vision. Visual acuity (which is a measure of central vision) may remain 20/20, but the peripheral field of vision may be severely reduced.

Patterns of Visual Field Loss [7,8,9]

Damage to visual mechanisms along various portions of the visual pathways from the optics and photoreceptors up to the visual centers of the brain will produce different shapes and patterns of visual field loss. To assist you in being able to properly interpret visual fields, a table indicating the classic patterns of visual field loss associated with damage to different visual structures is presented (see table, next page).

Online Resources

- ◆ EyeWiki by The American Academy of Ophthalmology (eyewiki.aao.org/Standard_Automated_Perimetry)
- ◆ Imaging and Perimetry Society (perimetry.org)

Patterns Visual Field Loss**Classic Location of Defect**

Generalized decrease in sensitivity	Media opacity (cornea, lens, or vitreous), decreased attention
Constriction of the visual field	Retina, optic nerve, small pupils
Ring scotoma	Retina degeneration
Central scotoma	Macula or optic nerve
Cecocentral scotoma	Papillomacular nerve bundle or nearby retina in region between the macula and optic nerve head
Arcuate scotoma	Arcuate retina ganglion cell nerve fiber bundles or retinal vasculature
Temporal wedge	Nasal retina radial fibers entering the optic nerve
Blind spot enlargement	Optic nerve
Multiple scattered defects	Retina
Hemifields respecting the horizontal meridian	Retina ganglion cell nerve fiber bundles or less commonly retinal vasculature
Hemifields respecting the vertical meridian	Optic chiasm or posterior visual pathways
Bitemporal	Optic chiasm
Homonymous	Optic chiasm or optic radiations
Horizontal tongue	Lateral geniculate body
Congruous bilateral defects	Nearer to the optic chiasm
Incongruous bilateral defects	Nearer to the posterior visual cortex
"Pie in the sky"	Temporal lobe
"Pie on the floor"	Parietal lobe
"Punched out" defects	Occipital lobe

References

1. Anderson DR. Standard Perimetry. *Ophthalmol Clin N Am* 2003;16: 205-212. [PMID: 12809158]
2. Ramulu P. Standard Automated Perimetry. 2012. [Cited 2013 May 29]; Available from eyewiki.aao.org/Standard_Automated_Perimetry
3. Armaly MF. The size and location of the normal blind spot. *Arch Ophthalmol*. 1969; 81(2):192-201. [PMID: 5764683]
4. Palczewsk K. Chemistry and Biology of Vision. *The Journal of Biological Chemistry* 2012; 287(3): 1612-1619. [PMID: 22074921]
5. Johnson CA, Wall M, Thompson HS. A history of perimetry and visual field testing. *Optom Vis Sci*. 2011 Jan;88(1):E8-15. [PMID: 21131878]
6. Sample PA, Dannheim F, Artes P, Dietzsch J, Henson D, Johnson CA, Ng M, Schiefer U, Wall M. Imaging and Perimetry Society Standards and Guidelines. *Optom Vis Sci* 2011;88:4-7. [PMID: 21099442]
7. Alward, WL. (1999) Perimetry. In: WL Alward, Glaucoma: The Requisites, 1e (pp. 56-102). Mosby.
8. Johnson CA. Detecting functional changes in the patient's vision – Visual Field Analysis. Schacknow and Samples, *The Glaucoma Book*, Wilmington, PA: Springer, 2010, Chapter 23, p. 229-264.
9. Johnson CA, Wall M. The Visual Field. Chapter 35 in *Adler's Physiology of the Eye*, 11th ed (Levin, Nilsson, Ver Hoeve, Wu, Kaufman and Alm, eds), 2011, pp 655-676.

Citing this article

Carroll JN, Johnson CA. Visual Field Testing: A basic tutorial. *EyeRounds.org*. August 21, 2013; available from EyeRounds.org/tutorials/VF-testing/

last updated: 8/21/2013

Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension (Pseudotumor Cerebri)

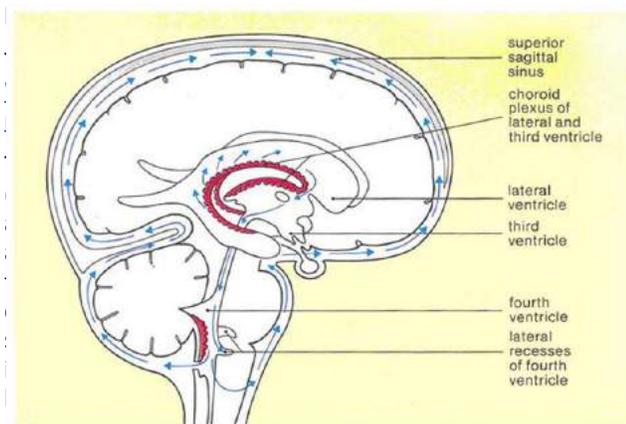
Michael Wall, M.D.

The University of Iowa
Department of Neurology and
Department of Ophthalmology and Visual Sciences

The initial sections of this tutorial are written with the goal of informing patients, the final sections regarding the medical treatment of IIH are written with the physician in mind.

Introduction

Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension is a condition of high pressure in the fluid around the brain. It is also known as pseudotumor cerebri because there are some of the signs and symptoms of a brain tumor without a brain tumor



Perkin D, Rose FC, Blackwood W, Shawdon HH. Atlas of Clinical Neurology. Philadelphia: JB Lippincott, 1986. Fig 1.1.

Figure 1. The cerebrospinal fluid circulation. (used with permission)

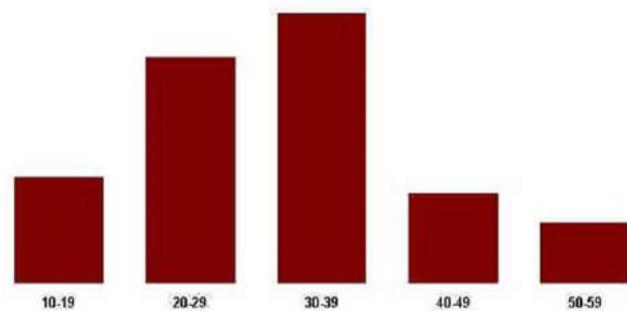
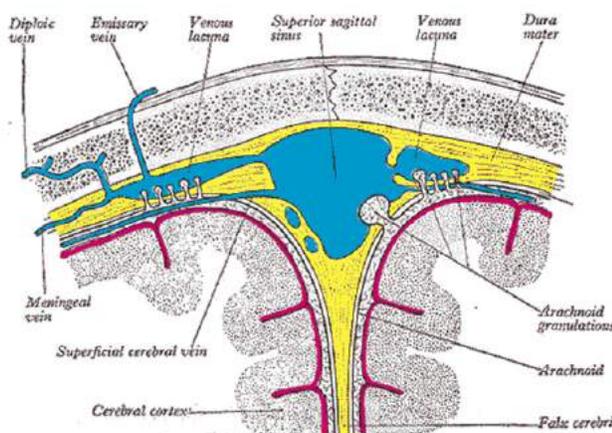


Fig 3. Age at diagnosis of IIH

What causes idiopathic intracranial hypertension?

Although we do not know what causes IIH, we have many clues. The condition occurs mostly in women in the childbearing years. The symptoms often start or worsen during a period of weight gain. The disease is rare in thin men. This has led some researchers to look for hormonal changes within the body. To date no consistent changes in hormones have been found.

Although no associated conditions besides recent weight gain are usually found, many conditions have been linked to high intracranial pressure. Any disorder that blocks the flow of spinal fluid between the brain and its route to the blood, the jugular vein, can cause raised pressure. For example, scarring cells next to the brain that absorb the spinal fluid (the arachnoid granulations) can cause raised pressure. Similarly, blood clots in the veins draining the brain can cause increased intracranial pressure (a disorder called venous sinus thrombosis). Withdrawal of corticosteroids, high doses of vitamin A or excessive intake of foods containing considerable vitamin A (such as liver), use of body building-type steroids and possibly certain drugs such as tetracycline and lithium can cause raised intracranial pressure. These conditions can mimic IIH.



Warwick R, Williams PL. Gray's Anatomy, 35th British ed. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders, 1973. fig. 7.166, p. 991.

Figure 2. Meninges and Superficial Cerebral Veins. (used with permission)

What are the typical symptoms of IIH?

The symptoms most commonly reported by IIH patients followed by their frequency are:

- ◆ headache (94%)
- ◆ transient visual obscurations or blurring (68%)
- ◆ pulse synchronous tinnitus or "wooshing noise" in the ear (58%)
- ◆ pain behind the eye (44%)
- ◆ double vision (38%)
- ◆ visual loss (30%)
- ◆ pain with eye movement (22%)

Headache

Headache is present in nearly all patients with IIH and is the usual symptom for which patients seek medical attention. The headaches of the IIH patient are usually severe and daily; they are often throbbing. They are different from previous headaches, may awaken the patient and usually last hours. Nausea is common and vomiting less so. The headache is often the worst head pain ever experienced. Although uncommon, the presence of pain behind the eyeball that is worsened movements of the eyes can occur.

Transient visual obscurations

Visual obscurations are episodes of transient blurred vision that usually last less than 30 seconds and are followed by full recovery of vision. Visual obscurations occur in about 3/4 of IIH patients. The attacks may involve one or both eyes. They are not correlated with the degree of intracranial hypertension or with the extent of optic nerve swelling. Visual obscurations do not appear to be associated with poor visual outcome.

Pulsatile intracranial noises

Pulsatile intracranial noises or pulse-synchronous tinnitus is common in IIH. The sound is often unilateral. In patients with intracranial hypertension, compression of the jugular vein on the side of sound abolishes it. It is likely due to turbulence and narrowing of the transverse venous sinus (See Figure below), known to occur with increased intracranial pressure.

Visual loss

The most serious problem patients have is vision loss. (Figure 5, 6) About 5% of patients go blind in at least one eye. These are usually patients who do not return for follow-up evaluation or seek attention very late in their course.

A further scientific discussion can be found with this article: Wall M, George D. Idiopathic intracranial hypertension. A prospective study of 50 patients. Brain. 1991 Feb;114 (Pt 1A):155-80. PubMed PMID: 1998880).

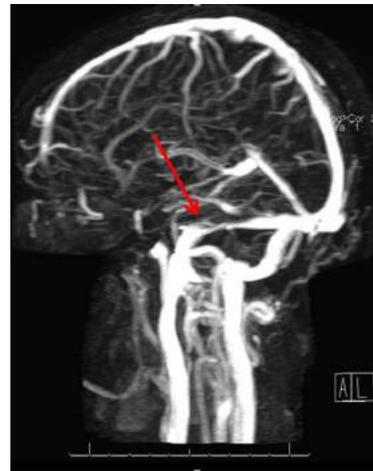


Fig. 4. This figure shows is a magnetic resonance venogram showing veins draining the brain. The arrow points to a narrow transverse venous sinus likely responsible for pulsatile tinnitus.

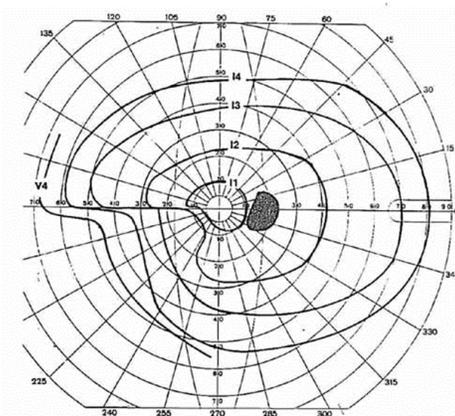


Figure 5. At typical visual field defect present using Goldmann perimetry in an IIH patient. Notice the large blind spot (black filled area) and the lower left indentation (an inferior nasal nerve fiber bundle defect).

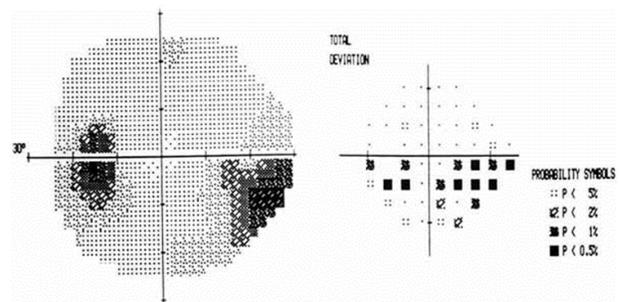


Figure 6. A similar inferior nasal nerve fiber bundle defect in an IIH patient found with automated perimeter (Humphrey perimeter). These defects may resolve fully with treatment.

How is the diagnosis of IIH made?

The diagnosis of IIH is made by identifying the typical symptoms of the disease along with documentation of a high spinal fluid pressure (measured during a spinal tap). The neurologic examination is normal except for the presence of swollen optic nerves called papilledema (seen by examining the back of the eye). (Figs 7-12) Sometimes double vision occurs, caused by limitation of lateral eye movement. Lastly, neuroimaging procedures such as CT scans or MRI scanning are normal except for signs known to occur with increased pressure.



Figure 7. Normal optic nerve (central pinkish disk)

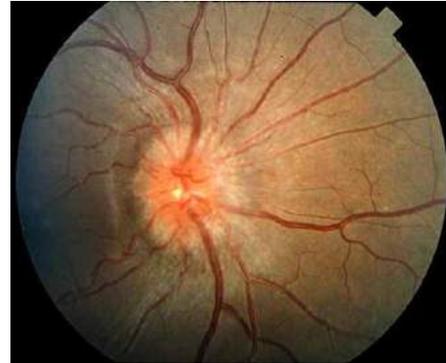


Figure 10. Grade II papilledema. The halo of edema now surrounds the optic disc.

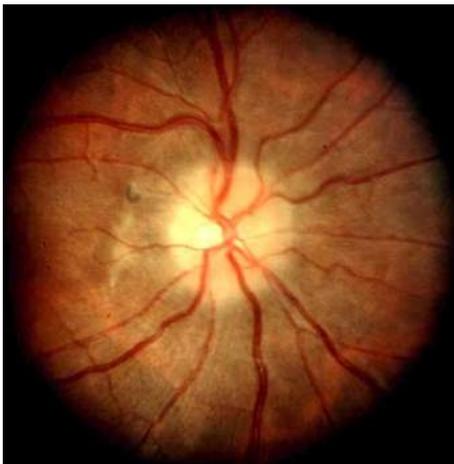


Figure 8. An optic nerve with mild swelling (papilledema). Note the pathologic "C"-shaped halo of edema surrounding the optic disk (Grade I papilledema).

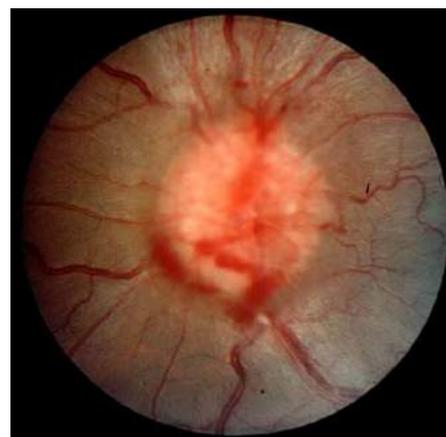


Figure 11. Grade IV papilledema. With more severe swelling in addition to a circumferential halo, the edema covers major blood vessels as they leave the optic disk (grade III) and vessels on the disk (grade IV). A subretinal hemorrhage is present at 7 o'clock.

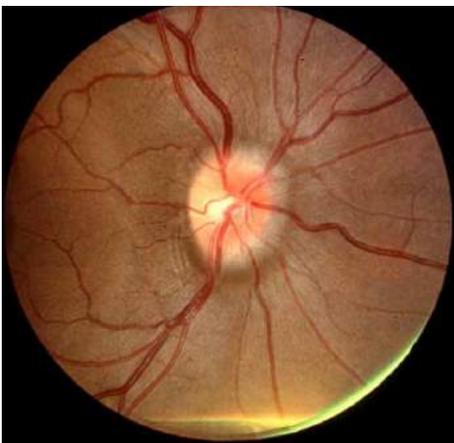


Figure 9. Grade I papilledema, Another example of an optic nerve with mild papilledema.

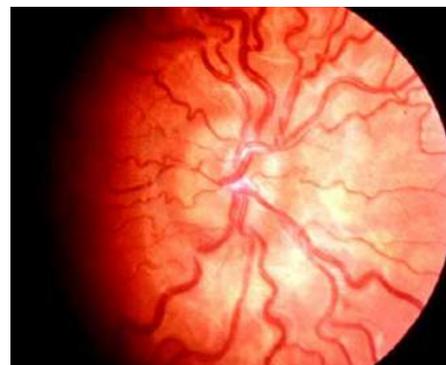


Figure 12. Pseudopapilledema. A patient with an elevated optic nerve present since birth. There is no halo, no major vessel covering a small nerve with abnormal vessel branching and tortuosity.

What is the relationship between optic nerve swelling and visual loss?

Why do the optic nerves swell with increased intracranial pressure?

Idiopathic intracranial hypertension is a disorder of increased in the fluid filled spaces around the brain pressure of unknown cause. The increased pressure takes place in the subarachnoid space, a space between the brain / spinal cord complex and its coverings called the meninges (Figure 1, 2). When a spinal tap is done, the needle is placed in the subarachnoid space to measure the pressure. Well, the eye is an outgrowth of the brain and with this outgrowth, the subarachnoid space continues right up to the optic nerve head (optic disc, papilla) in the back of the eyeball. When the pressure increases in this space, fibers in the optic nerve are compressed. This makes it harder for the neurons to transport their proteins and organelles so there is a decrease or slow down in flow in optic nerve fibers. This buildup is seen as swelling or edema of the optic nerve head or papilla, hence the term papilledema. A more extensive discussion can be found in Wall, M. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep* 2008; 8:87-93. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11910-008-0015-0>

What is the danger of papilledema to vision?

When the optic nerve fibers are under pressure, their microcirculation or blood supply is also under pressure. This results in decreased blood flow to the optic nerve, damage to the nerve and resultant visual loss. Since all the optic nerve fibers are under pressure, a visual field examination is necessary to determine whether visual loss is taking place so that the appropriate treatment can be started.

Can vision loss be reversed?

Fortunately, visual loss can be reversed. However, much depends on how long the visual loss has been present. In some cases, full recovery takes place and in others partial recovery. Most patients with visual loss have **some recovery with treatment** (Wall M, George D. Idiopathic intracranial hypertension: a prospective study of 50 patients. *Brain*, 1991; 114A(1): 155–180. doi.org/10.1093/oxford-journals.brain.a101855).

What are the earliest signs of permanent vision loss?

The most common early sign of visual loss is inferior nasal loss found with visual field testing. However, other types of visual loss can occur. What is important is that it is rare for early visual loss to involve the central area of vision. And, early peripheral visual loss is seldom recognized by the patient. This is yet another reason why perimetry is very necessary in the evaluation and management of patients with idiopathic intracranial hypertension.

How is IIH treated?

Treatment for patient with IIH can be divided into medical treatment and surgical treatment. The cornerstone of medical treatment is weight loss. It does not appear to be the total number of pounds lost. Some patients are effectively treated by losing one pound every week or two for several months and then maintaining the weight loss. It has been shown that loss of 5-10% of body weight is often sufficient for optic disc edema to regress, symptoms resolve and vision improve.

Loss of fluid can also be obtained using diuretics (fluid pills). Diamox (acetazolamide) is the most commonly used medication. It is relatively safe but nearly all patients have tingling of the fingers and toes. This tingling is a benign symptom and suggests the medication is working. Patients also experience that carbonated soft drinks taste metallic. Less commonly, kidney stones can occur and rarely other blood disorders. Another diuretic commonly used that appears to be effective in some patients is Lasix (furosemide).

Please see supplemental information at the end of Part I regarding side effects of acetazolamide.

While there is no evidence based treatment to guide medical therapy there is currently an ongoing National Eye Institute sponsored trial, the Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension Treatment Trial (IIHTT) (www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01003639). The trial has two aims. One is to determine if acetazolamide (Diamox) with a low sodium weight reduction diet is superior to placebo with the diet. The second aim is to investigate the cause of idiopathic intracranial hypertension. Further information can be found at the NORDIC website (www.nordicclinicaltrials.com).

The surgical treatments currently used are optic nerve sheath fenestration (making slits in the optic nerve sheath or covering) (Figure 13) and CSF shunting procedures (running a tube from the spinal fluid space into the abdominal

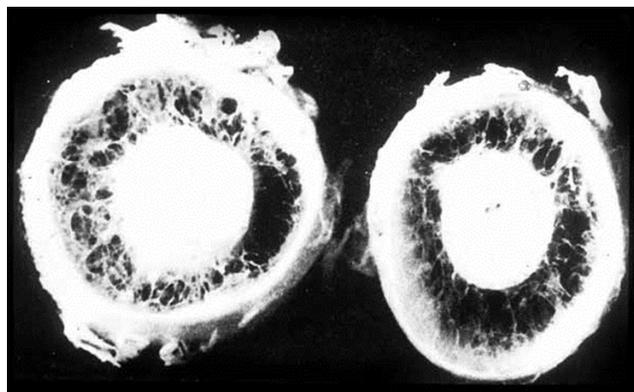


Figure 13. Cut sections of optic nerves (post-mortem) from a patient with papilledema. Note the large space, filled with the web-like strands of arachnoid between the nerve and the nerve sheath. With optic nerve sheath surgery, a hole is cut in the sheath of the nerve that allows fluid to leak and pressure to decrease. from Sergott RC, Savino PJ, Bosley TM. Modified optic nerve sheath decompression provides long-term visual improvement for pseudotumor cerebri. *Arch Ophthalmol* 1988; 106:1391-1397.

cavity or a vein). These procedures are used when patients do not respond adequately to medical therapy. Optic nerve sheath fenestration is done first by an incision into the orbit. The eyeball is moved to the side and the optic nerve sheath is exposed. Slits or a large hole are then placed in the optic nerve sheath and fluid drains out, thereby taking pressure off the optic nerve.

The second surgical procedure, called CSF shunting, is done as follows. Tubing is placed in the spinal fluid space, (either the space entered during a lumbar puncture or space in or around the brain and tubing is then run to the abdomen or a vein). This lowers the pressure around the brain and optic nerve, thereby eliminating the symptoms of raised intracranial pressure. Unfortunately, these procedures are complicated by various problems, the most severe one being some patients have periodic occlusion of the tubing with recurrence of symptoms and sometimes vision loss. A repeat operation is then needed. An overview of treatment is summarized in figure 14.

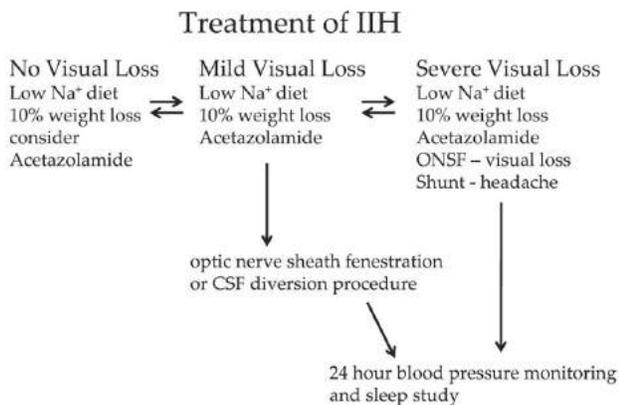


Figure 14. Treatment strategies for IIH. Treatment algorithm for IIH. Visual loss does not include enlargement of the blind spot unless it is compromising vision. Optic Nerve Sheath fenestration is preferred to steroids. Downward arrows show the next step when vision worsens

Management of the pregnant IIH patient

Pregnancy occurs in IIH as often as in the general population and in any trimester. Patients with IIH during pregnancy do not have an increased spontaneous abortion rate. Therapeutic abortion to limit progressive disease is not indicated. The pregnant patient with IIH should be treated as any other patient with IIH. Also, the pregnancy should be managed like any other. The major exception is caloric restriction because of its adverse effect of ketosis on the fetus. Weight gain can be limited to 20 pounds or the amount recommended by an obstetrician.

Use of corticosteroids has not been associated with birth defects in humans. Acetazolamide may be used after 20 weeks gestation; use before 20 weeks has been associated with one case of sacrococcygeal teratoma. Glycerol and thiazide diuretics probably should not be used in the second half of pregnancy because of the risk of decrease in

placental blood flow. There is no obstetric contraindication to surgery for those that require it.

How is visual loss prevented?

The best way to prevent visual loss is to test vision regularly with a visual field examination called perimetry. Patients should be followed frequently with tests of vision until the doctor is confident that there is no vision loss occurring. Vision testing should then be done once or twice a year or whenever new symptoms occur. Unfortunately, IIH is a life-long disease and tends to occur during periods of weight gain. The symptoms though are very treatable and, if treatment is started early enough, the vision loss is reversible.

For an update, please see the appendix of this article “Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension Treatment Trial (IIHTT). What Have We Learned?”

Diamox (acetazolamide) side effects

Tingling or pins and needles feelings around the mouth and in the hands and feet is a common side effect of acetazolamide and suggests the medicine is working. Nearly everyone who takes acetazolamide notices that carbonated beverages taste metallic. Renal stones, although painful, are very treatable. These occur in a few percent of patients.

A rare but serious side effect is aplastic anemia. This is when the bone marrow fails to produce an adequate number of red and white blood cells. It occurs in one in 15,000 patient years on acetazolamide. That means for every 15,000 patients on acetazolamide for one year, one will develop this potentially fatal side effect. Statistically speaking, if you drive a car you are more likely to die from an automobile accident.

- ◆ Aplastic anemia usually occurs in the first six months of therapy
- ◆ Aplastic anemia from acetazolamide has been reported most often in the elderly

Should you have repeated blood work to check for aplastic anemia?

- ◆ In 1987 dollars it has been estimated that it would cost about \$650,000 to detect one case, adjusted for inflation, that’s about \$1.4 million in 2018.
- ◆ Finding the case and stopping the medication does not necessarily cure the patient; this is unlike mammograms, chest x-rays and proctoscopy which are shown to improve detection of a potentially fatal treatable disease,
- ◆ In a perfect world, we could test everybody for everything that is potentially fatal and provide all people with all available medical care; unfortunately this is not realistic to do.

Side effects as rare as aplastic anemia from acetazolamide are often not tested for. Our dilemma is: do you burden thousands of patients with the cost and inconvenience of monthly and bimonthly testing to find something very rare that you may not be able to treat? This philosophical issue ultimately must be faced and decided by the patient. It is the patient’s money and life and is, therefore, the patient’s decision whether to spend their money on monitoring the blood (a complete blood count) for aplastic anemia while taking acetazolamide.

End Part I

Part II: Medical Treatment of IIH

(written for physicians)

Treatment of raised intracranial pressure is both medical and surgical. It is aimed mainly at lowering of intracranial pressure and secondarily at treating symptoms directly, for example headache. Unfortunately, all reports to date are anecdotal as there have not been any controlled clinical treatment trials for idiopathic intracranial hypertension. While there is no evidence based treatment to guide medical therapy there is currently an ongoing National Eye Institute sponsored trial, the [Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension Treatment Trial \(clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01003639\)](https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01003639). The trial has two aims. One is to determine if acetazolamide (Diamox) with a low sodium weight reduction diet is superior to placebo with the diet. The second aim is to investigate the cause of idiopathic intracranial hypertension. Further information can be found at the [NORDIC website \(www.nordicclinicaltrials.com/\)](http://www.nordicclinicaltrials.com/).

Weight Loss

Weight loss has been used to treat IIH for many years. Newborg in 1974 reported remission of papilledema in all nine patients placed on a strict diet. She used a low calorie adaptation of Kempner's rice diet. The patient's intake was 400-1000 calories per day by fruits, rice, vegetables and occasionally 1-2 oz of meat. Fluids were limited to 750-1250 ml/day and sodium to less than 100 mg/day. All patients had reversal of their papilledema. Unfortunately, there was no mention of the patients' visual testing.[1]

The beneficial effects of weight loss have also been reported more recently. Kupersmith and colleagues retrospectively reviewed the charts of 250 IIH medically treated IIH patients from two centers and tabulated results on 56 patients that had at least 6 months of follow-up and otherwise met entry criteria.[2] The mean time to improve one papilledema grade was about 4 months in patients with weight loss compared with about 1 year in patients without weight loss. Papilledema resolved in 28/38 patients with weight loss compared with 8/20 without weight loss.

Johnson and coworkers retrospectively studied 15 IIH patients treated with acetazolamide and weight loss for 24 weeks.[3] They reported 3.3% weight loss in patients having one grade of improvement in their papilledema grade. Nine of 10 patients that improved took acetazolamide as did the four patients that did not lose weight and had no improvement in papilledema grade. Our experience from a pilot study with 29 patients has also been that improvement often occurs with only modest degrees of weight loss. Greer however, reported a group of six obese patients that became asymptomatic without weight loss.[4] Sinclair and coworkers, have shown diet over a three month period lowers intracranial pressure.

Resolution of IIH in a patient following surgically induced weight loss (gastric exclusion procedure) was first reported by Amaral.[5] Sugarman and coworkers performed gastric weight reduction surgery in 24 morbidly obese women with IIH.[6] Five patients were lost to follow-up. Symptoms resolved in all but one patient within 4 months of the procedure. Two patients regained weight associated with return of their symptoms. There were significant but treatable surgically-related complications.

Since marked recent weight gain is a predictor of visual deterioration[7] and we have observed papilledema resolve with weight loss as the only treatment, we strongly encourage our patients to pursue a supervised weight loss program. As Friedman and colleagues have shown, there is a subset of IIH patients with orthostatic edema.[8] Low salt diets and fluid restriction may also be beneficial for IIH patients. This may be especially true in patients that lose only a few percent of their total body mass yet have resolution of their optic disc edema. It is not yet clear whether improvement occurs because of weight loss per se or other changes in diet such as fluid or sodium restriction.

Lumbar Puncture

Repeated lumbar puncture, although still used by some neurologists, leaves much to be desired as a treatment. Lumbar puncture has only a short-lived effect on CSF pressure; Johnston and Paterson[9] found a return of pressure to pre-tap level after only 82 minutes. Interestingly, Weisberg[10] reported 6 of 28 patients treated with serial lumbar punctures symptomatically improved.

Repeated lumbar punctures also raise the risk of developing intraspinal epidermoid tumors presumably caused by implantation of epidermal cells. Lastly, repeated lumbar punctures to measure CSF pressure do so at only one point in time. Since CSF pressure fluctuates widely throughout the day, this information has only limited clinical use for modifying treatment plans. Following the patient's papilledema (which reflects the mean intracranial pressure) is a superior index of the mean intracranial pressure.

Corticosteroids

Paterson[13] first reported the efficacy of corticosteroids for treating IIH in five of six consecutive patients. Weisberg[10] has documented prompt beneficial initial responses to steroids. Corticosteroids are still used to treat this disease but their mechanism of action remains unclear. The side effects of weight gain, striae, and acne are particularly unfortunate for these obese patients. Although patients treated with steroids often respond well, there may be recurrence of papilledema with rapid tapering of the dose. This may be accompanied by severe worsening of visual function. A prolonged tapering may prevent return of symptoms and signs in some patients.

Use of corticosteroids to treat IIH patients has largely been abandoned by most neuro-ophthalmologists.

Thiazide Diuretics

Jefferson and Clark[15] treated 30 patients with various types of oral dehydrating agents (chlorthalidone, hydroflumethiazide, glycerol and urea). All patients were also placed on a weight reduction diet. They used blind spot size as their main outcome measure. This measure can be problematic for many reasons including changes in refractive error[16] and changes in stimulus speed and reaction times between exams. Fourteen of these patients had reduced visual acuity, and in all, vision improved with therapy. Friedman treated 30 women with IIH with chlorthalidone and spironolactone.[8] In 15, dextroamphetamine or phenteramine was added and 18 patients also were treated with acetazolamide. This treatment did not consistently reduce headaches and only four of the 30 patients had improvement in their papilledema. Thiazides are not first line drugs to treat idiopathic intracranial hypertension.

Acetazolamide

In 1974, McCarthy and Reed[17] showed inhibition of CSF flow but not until over 99.5% of choroid plexus carbonic anhydrase was inhibited. Lubow and Kuhr, in 1976, reported a series of IIH patients, many of whom were treated successfully with acetazolamide (Diamox®) and weight reduction.[18] An important study was published in 1978 by Gücer and Viernstein.[19] They used intracranial pressure monitoring before and after treatment in four IIH patients. They monitored acetazolamide treatment in two of the patients and showed gradual CSF pressure reduction in both. They only reported the dose in one of the patients (four grams of acetazolamide per day). Ten years later, Tomsak et al.,[20] documented resolution of papilledema with photographs of the optic disc in four patients treated with one gram of acetazolamide a day. Acetazolamide appeared to be an effective medication in their patients with results occurring over several months.

The mechanism of action of acetazolamide is likely multifactorial. It has been found to reduce CSF production in humans by 6-50%.[21] It has been thought to work by inhibition of carbonic anhydrase that causes a reduction in transport of sodium ions across choroid plexus epithelium. Also, it changes the taste of foods and causes carbonated beverages to taste metallic. This may aid the patient in weight loss. Additionally, some patients experience nausea, further helping them to lose weight.

Topiramate (Topamax) is a structurally related medication used for headache. It has weight loss as a side effect! To date, it appears about as effective as acetazolamide but is considerably more expensive.

The most effective dose is not yet determined. In addition to the gustatory side effects, patients commonly experience tingling in the fingers, toes, and perioral region, and less commonly, malaise, nausea and anorexia are reported. Rarely patients will develop renal stones. Metabolic acidosis, evidenced by lowered serum bicarbonate, is a

good measure of compliance. Younger patients tolerate acetazolamide better than older ones and the Diamox 500mg sequels appeared to be better tolerated. Aplastic anemia is so rare, some advocate not monitoring complete blood counts. Zimran and Beutler estimate the cost of finding one case would be \$1.5 million.[22] While it has been suggested that patients that are sulfa allergic should not use acetazolamide because of potential cross reaction, there is no conclusive evidence for withholding the drug in sulfa allergic patients. If patients develop renal stones, one can discontinue the medication or continue usage with periodic ultrasound examinations to see if the renal stones are recurring.

Furosemide

It has been documented that furosemide (Lasix®) can lower intracranial pressure.[7,23-25] Furosemide has also been used to treat IIH.[26] It appears to work by both diuresis and reducing sodium transport into the brain.[28]

Based on an assumption by McCarthy and Reed[17] that the effects of acetazolamide and furosemide might be additive, Schoeman treated pediatric IIH patients with this combination therapy.[29] In a controlled trial of children with tuberculous meningitis, 57 with communicating hydrocephalus were randomly assigned to three treatment groups: antituberculous drugs only; or additional intrathecal hyaluronidase or oral acetazolamide and furosemide in addition to antituberculous treatment. Acetazolamide and furosemide in combination was significantly more effective in achieving normal ICP than antituberculous drugs alone.[30]

Schoeman then treated eight pediatric IIH patients with oral acetazolamide (37-100 mg/kg) and furosemide (1 mg/kg) until the papilledema cleared. He used continuous 1-hour lumbar cerebrospinal fluid pressure monitoring these children with IIH on admission and at weekly intervals until the baseline pressure became normal. Six children had an increased baseline cerebrospinal fluid pressure, whereas raised intracranial pressure was diagnosed in three children based on an abnormal pulse wave and/or pressure waves. The mean baseline pressure normalized in all patients within 6 weeks of start of therapy. As with all treatments of IIH, all reports to date are anecdotal and recommended treatments vary widely.

Glycerol

Oral glycerol is a form of cerebral dehydration first recommended in 1963 to reduce intracranial pressure. A single dose of one gram/kg of glycerol will raise serum osmolality from 295 to 320 mOsm/L in 90 minutes, and reduce CSF pressure for 3 to 5 hours. Doses every four hours can cause a reversed osmotic gradient and a rebound increase in intracranial pressure[31,32] while a six hour interval is too long and allows the pressure to recur. Together, the added calories the large volume of glycerol needed, the awkwardness for a working person to use this medication, the nauseating side effects, and other side effects make this a

cumbersome medication for IHH. It is rarely used today for increased intracranial pressure.

Treatment of Headache

Sometimes, in spite of full medical therapy to reduce CSF pressure, headaches persist. We have success in some patients with standard prophylactic vascular headache remedies. However, caution should be used in patients with visual loss as the hypotension that accompanies many of these medications can accelerate the visual loss.

Patients with idiopathic intracranial hypertension also have other headache syndromes. Especially in patients with a migraine history, analgesic rebound or caffeine rebound headaches may coexist. It may require IV dihydroergotamine to break this troublesome headache syndrome.

Recommendations

Weight loss is the cornerstone of therapy for idiopathic intracranial hypertension. We recommend a low salt, weight reduction diet with loss of about 5 - 10% of body weight followed by stable weight. This goal, of modest weight loss, is more likely to succeed than the usual aggressive weight loss program.

In our experience, acetazolamide appears to be an effective treatment for idiopathic intracranial hypertension. We start the patient with a dose of 250 mg orally twice daily and increase the dose every four days by 250 mg until a dose of 1 gram a day is reached or the patient becomes intolerant to the side effects. If tolerated we give the medication twice daily with meals. If after one to two months there is no substantial improvement in visual function or symptoms, we gradually increase the dose to two grams per day. Doses of up to four grams a day may be needed but we usually obtain a beneficial effect in the one to two gram a day range. If acetazolamide is not well tolerated we use furosemide or topiramate. Modification of therapy is based on a combination of the patient's symptoms, visual field examinations and changes in papilledema.

Reference List

1. Newborg B. Pseudotumor cerebri treated by rice reduction diet. *Arch Intern Med* 1974; 133:802-807.
2. Kupersmith MJ, Gamell L, Turbin R, Peck V, Spiegel P, Wall M. Effects of weight loss on the course of idiopathic intracranial hypertension in women. *Neurology* 1998; 50(4):1094-1098.
3. Johnson LN, Krohel GB, Madsen RW, March GA, Jr. The role of weight loss and acetazolamide in the treatment of idiopathic intracranial hypertension (pseudotumor cerebri). *Ophthalmology* 1998; 105(12):2313-2317.
4. Greer M. Benign intracranial hypertension. VI. Obesity. *Neurology* 1965; 15:382-388.
5. Amaral JF, Tsiaris W, Morgan T, Thompson WR. Reversal of benign intracranial hypertension by surgically induced weight loss. *Arch Surg* 1987; 122:946-949.
6. Sugeran HJ, Felton WL, III, Sismanis A, Kellum JM, DeMaria EJ, Sugeran EL. Gastric surgery for pseudotumor cerebri associated with severe obesity. *Ann Surg* 1999; 229(5):634-640.
7. Wall M, George D. Idiopathic intracranial hypertension. A prospective study of 50 patients. *Brain* 1991; 114:155-180.
bit.ly/2EJlkmH
8. Friedman DI, Streeten DH. Idiopathic intracranial hypertension and orthostatic edema may share a common pathogenesis. *Neurology* 1998; 50(4):1099-1104.
9. Johnston I, Paterson A. Benign intracranial hypertension. II. CSF pressure and circulation. *Brain* 1974; 97:301-312.
10. Weisberg LA. Benign intracranial hypertension. *Medicine* 1975; 54:197-207.
11. Batnitzky S, Keucher TR, Mealey T, Jr., Campbell RL. Iatrogenic intraspinal epidermoid tumors. *JAMA* 1977; 237:148-150.
12. Manno NJ, Uihlein A, Kernohan JW. Intraspinal epidermoids. *J Neurosurg* 1962; 19:754-756.
13. Paterson R, DePasquale N, Mann S. Pseudotumor Cerebri. *Medicine* 1961; 40:85-99.
14. Weisberg LA, Chutorian AM. Pseudotumor cerebri of childhood. *Am J Dis Child* 1977; 131:1243-1248.
15. Jefferson A, Clark J. Treatment of benign intracranial hypertension by dehydrating agents with particular reference to the measurement of the blind spot area as a means of recording improvement. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatr* 1976; 39:627-639.
16. Corbett JJ, Jacobson DM, Mauer RC, Thompson HS. Enlargement of the blind spot caused by papilledema. *Am J Ophthalmol* 1988; 105:261-265.
17. McCarthy KD, Reed DJ. The effect of acetazolamide and furosemide on CSF production and choroid plexus carbonic anhydrase activity. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 1974; 189:194-201.
18. Lubow M, Kuhr L. Pseudotumor cerebri: comments on practical management. In: Glaser JS, Smith JL, editors. *Neuro-ophthalmology*, Vol. IX. St. Louis: C.V. Mosby, 1976: 199-206.
19. Gucer G, Vierenstein L. Long-term intracranial pressure recording in management of pseudotumor cerebri. *J Neurosurg* 1978; 49:256-263.
20. Tomsak RL, Niffenegger AS, Remler BF. Treatment of pseudotumor cerebri with Diamox (acetazolamide). *J Clin Neuro-ophthalmol* 1988; 8:93-98.
21. Rubin RC, Henderson ES, Ommaya AK, Walker MD, Rall DP. The production of cerebrospinal fluid in man and

- its modification by acetazolamide. *J Neurosurg* 1966; 25(4):430-436.
22. Zimran A, Beutler E. Can the risk of acetazolamide-induced aplastic anemia be decreased by periodic monitoring of blood cell counts? *Am J Ophthalmol* 1987; 104(6):654-658.
 23. Pollay M, Fullenwider C, Roberts PA, Stevens FA. Effect of mannitol and furosemide on blood-brain osmotic gradient and intracranial pressure. *J Neurosurg* 1983; 59(6):945-950.
 24. Roberts PA, Pollay M, Engles C, Pendleton B, Reynolds E, Stevens FA. Effect on intracranial pressure of furosemide combined with varying doses and administration rates of mannitol. *J Neurosurg* 1987; 66:440-446.
 25. Vogh BP, Langham MR, Jr. The effect of furosemide and bumetanide on cerebrospinal fluid formation. *Brain Research* 1981; 221(1):171-183.
 26. Corbett JJ. The 1982 Silversides lecture. Problems in the diagnosis and treatment of pseudotumor cerebri. *Can J Neurol Sci* 1983; 10:221-229.
 27. Cottrell JE, Robustelli A, Post K, Turndorf H. Furosemide- and mannitol-induced changes in intracranial pressure and serum osmolality and electrolytes. *Anesthesiology* 1977; 47(1):28-30.
 28. Buhrley LE, Reed DJ. The effect of furosemide on sodium-22 uptake into cerebrospinal fluid and brain. *Experimental Brain Research* 1972; 14(5):503-510.
 29. Schoeman JF. Childhood pseudotumor cerebri: clinical and intracranial pressure response to acetazolamide and furosemide treatment in a case series. *Journal of Child Neurology* 1994; 9(2):130-134.
 30. Schoeman J, Donald P, van Zyl L, Keet M, Wait J. Tuberculous hydrocephalus: comparison of different treatments with regard to ICP, ventricular size and clinical outcome. *Developmental Medicine & Child Neurology* 1991; 33(5):396-405.
 31. Guisado R, Tourtellotte WW, Arieff AI, Tomiyasu U, Mishra SK, Schotz MC. Rebound phenomenon complicating cerebral dehydration with glycerol. *J Neurosurg* 1975; 42:226-228.
 32. Rottenberg DA, Hurwitz BJ, Posner JB. The effect of oral glycerol on intraventricular pressure in man. *Neurology* 1977; 27:600-608.
 33. Corbett JJ, Nerad JA, Tse DT, Anderson RL. Results of optic nerve sheath fenestration for pseudotumor cerebri. The lateral orbitotomy approach. *Arch Ophthalmol* 1988;106:1391-1397.
 34. Corbett JJ, Thompson HS. The rational management of idiopathic intracranial hypertension. *Arch Neurol* 1989;46:1049-1051.
 35. Durcan FJ, Corbett JJ, Wall M. The incidence of pseudotumor cerebri. Population studies in Iowa and Louisiana. *Arch Neurol* 1988;45:875-877.
 36. Giuseffi V, Wall M, Siegel PZ, Rojas PB. Symptoms and disease associations in idiopathic intracranial hypertension (pseudotumor cerebri): a case-control study. *Neurology* 1991;41:239-244.
 37. Ireland B, Corbett JJ, Wallace RB. The search for causes of idiopathic intracranial hypertension. A preliminary case-control study. *Arch Neurol* 1990;47:315-320.
 38. Lessell S. Pediatric pseudotumor cerebri (idiopathic intracranial hypertension). *Surv Ophthalmol* 1992;37:155-166.
 39. Meador KJ, Swift TR. Tinnitus from intracranial hypertension. *Neurology* 1984;34:1258-1261.
 40. Sergott RC, Savino PJ, Bosley TM. Modified optic nerve sheath decompression provides long-term visual improvement for pseudotumor cerebri. *Arch Ophthalmol* 1988; 106:1391-1397.
 41. Wall M, George D. Visual loss in pseudotumor cerebri. Incidence and defects related to visual field strategy. *Arch Neurol* 1987;44:170-175.
 42. Wall M. The headache profile of idiopathic intracranial hypertension. *Cephalalgia* 1990;10:331-335.
 43. Wall, M. Idiopathic intracranial hypertension. *Neurol Clin* 9:73-95, 1991.

Appendix.

Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension Treatment Trial (IIHTT). What Have We Learned?

[Michael Wall, MD](#)

February 4, 2015

Results of the IIHTT were published in the April 23, 2014 edition of the *Journal of the American Medical Association* (JAMA). Full text available at [Effect of Acetazolamide on Visual Function in Patients with Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension and Mild Visual Loss: The Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension Treatment Trial. JAMA 2014;311\(16\):1641-1651. dx.doi.org/10.1001/jama.2014.3312.](#)

What is the Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension Treatment Trial?

The Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension Treatment Trial is a multicenter, double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study of acetazolamide in 165 IIH participants with mild visual loss. All participants received a lifestyle modification program that included weight reduction with a program emphasizing lifestyle management and a low sodium diet. The main purpose of the trial was to determine the effect of acetazolamide in reducing or reversing visual loss after 6 months of treatment when added to the weight reduction program. Secondary purposes were to determine if acetazolamide lowered CSF pressure, improved quality of life and decreased optic nerve swelling. The structure of the trial is outlined in Figure 1.

Who was included in the trial?

Idiopathic intracranial hypertension (IIH) is a disorder primarily of overweight women of childbearing age characterized by increased intracranial pressure with its associated signs and symptoms including debilitating headaches and vision loss in an alert and oriented patient. Neuroimaging and CSF analysis are normal except for raised intracranial pressure. Also, no secondary cause of intracranial hypertension is apparent. The above features comprise the modified Dandy criteria for IIH and were necessary for entry into the trial.

The other important entry criterion was having mild visual loss. This was defined for study purposes as having a mean deviation (measure of average loss across the visual field on an automated visual field test) of from -2 to -7 dB. Additional inclusion and exclusion criteria can be found in the pdf of the primary outcome paper by clicking on the link at the top of the page.

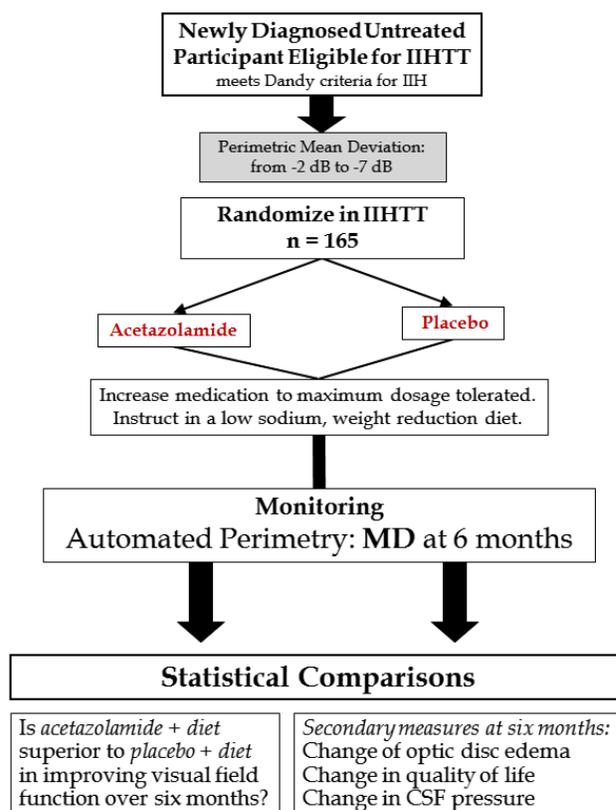


Figure 1. Study design of the IIHTT.

What did the trial conclude?

In IIH patients with mild visual loss, it was found that subjects taking acetazolamide, a type of diuretic, along with a low sodium diet program had significantly better visual outcomes than those taking placebo along with the diet. In addition, the patients taking acetazolamide also had significantly improved papilledema (optic nerve head swelling), quality of life measures and lower cerebrospinal fluid pressure.

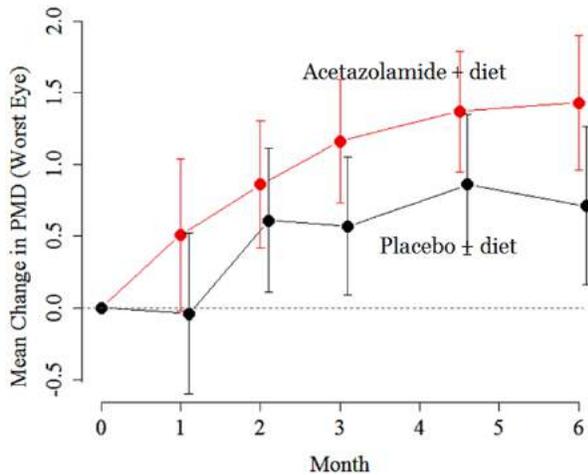


Figure 2. The acetazolamide-plus-diet group in red had a statistically significant improvement in visual field mean deviation with most of the change occurring in the first month.

What was new or unusual about the findings?

1. This is the first time there has been proof that acetazolamide use in IIH improves visual outcome.
2. The beneficial effects of acetazolamide and diet are independent. So, although the acetazolamide-plus-diet patients lost twice as much weight as placebo-plus-diet patients, the acetazolamide effect on PMD was independent of the weight loss. The average weight loss in the trial was 6%.
3. The patients with moderate to severe optic nerve swelling recovered substantially more vision than those with mild swelling.
4. Acetazolamide has its greatest effect on visual field function and papilledema in the first month of escalating dosage to the maximum dosage tolerated that did not interfere with activities of daily living.
5. Marked worsening of visual field function was much less common in the acetazolamide-plus-diet group compared to the placebo-plus-diet group (6 patients vs. 1) and risk factors for marked worsening were presence of high grade papilledema and lower visual acuity measures at baseline.
6. Many IIHTT subjects tolerated maximal dosages of acetazolamide up to four grams per day. While there were many expected side effects, quality of life measures were significantly better in the acetazolamide-plus-diet group. There was no permanent morbidity (bodily damage) from acetazolamide use.
7. IIH patients on acetazolamide as the only diuretic did not need potassium supplementation.

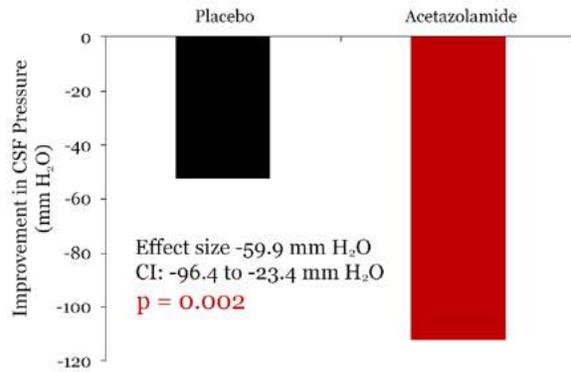
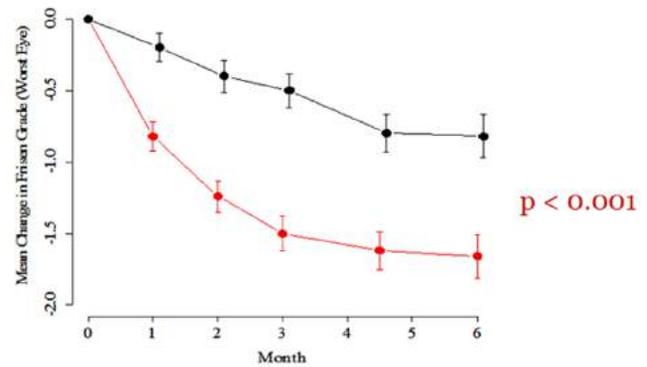


Figure 3. Change in CSF pressure. Both the placebo-plus-diet in black and acetazolamide-plus-diet groups in red improved from baseline but the acetazolamide-plus-diet group improved about twice as much.



Grades of Papilledema



Figure 4. Change in papilledema grade. Both groups improved from baseline but the acetazolamide-plus-diet group in red improved much more.

What are the broader implications of the findings in terms of clinical relevance?

The broad implication is that for the first time, there is evidence from a randomized clinical trial that acetazolamide combined with a low sodium weight reduction program improves vision, reduces optic nerve head swelling, reduces intracranial pressure and shows improvement in quality of life measures. The main implication is there is now scientific evidence that acetazolamide improves vision in idiopathic intracranial hypertension while improving quality of life.

What does it mean that the main outcome article concluded the clinical importance of the improvement in visual field function is modest and yet to be determined?

While acetazolamide caused a *statistically* significant effect on visual field function in this group of patients with mild visual loss, the effect size of 0.71 dB may not be a *clinically*-significant amount of visual improvement. However, visual quality of life measures were statistically and clinically significantly better in the acetazolamide group compared with the placebo group. This suggests the effect is clinically significant.

Taking into account the IIHTT study design and methods, results, and limitations, how should clinicians apply the findings to patient management?

In patients with mild visual loss acetazolamide in the maximally tolerated dosage coupled with a low sodium weight loss program (with a goal of 6% total weight loss) should be used. This is especially true in patients with moderate to marked papilledema. There was three times the visual field improvement in subjects with high degrees of papilledema than with low grade papilledema. Since acetazolamide in the maximally tolerated dosage plus diet significantly lowers CSF pressure, improves general and visual quality of life scores and reduces papilledema, this combination is suggested for all patients with mild visual loss.

Patients without visual loss that have grades one or two papilledema may be managed with diet alone. They should be followed closely and if they worsen, acetazolamide can be added. Patients with worse than -7 dB mean deviation can be treated with this medical regimen or surgery but there are no clinical trials to guide therapy. A reasonable compromise in these patients would be to start treatment with acetazolamide-plus-diet and go to surgery if there is any worsening.

Treatment of Nystagmus and Saccadic Oscillations

Matthew J. Thurtell, MBBS FRACP and John J. Brinkley, MD

June 23, 2013

Introduction

Nystagmus is often encountered in ophthalmology practice, having a prevalence of about 24 per 10,000 in the general population.[1] Unlike physiologic nystagmus, where the slow phases of nystagmus minimize retinal image slip, the slow phases of pathologic nystagmus cause retinal image slip. Retinal image slip of greater than 5 degrees per second produces a decline in visual acuity, partly because the image of the object of interest no longer lies on the fovea, and illusory motion of the visual environment known as oscillopsia.[2,3] Saccadic intrusions and oscillations can also cause visual symptoms, such as difficulty reading, since they take the eye off target so that the image of the object of interest no longer lies on the fovea.[2]

Goals of Treatment

The goal of treatment is to reduce visual symptoms (e.g., blurred vision, oscillopsia) by reducing the speed of nystagmus slow phases or by suppressing saccadic oscillations. Treatments that stop the eyes from moving altogether (e.g., botulinum toxin injections into the extraocular muscles) are not ideal, because they cause oscillopsia during head movements (due to loss of the vestibulo-ocular reflex) and diplopia (due to loss of vergence eye movements).[2] Thus, treatments that suppress the abnormal eye movements without affecting normal eye movements are preferred. Note that some types of nystagmus (e.g., gaze-evoked) and saccadic intrusions (e.g., square-wave jerks) do not usually give visual symptoms and, thus, do not require specific treatment.

General Approaches to Treatment

Treatments for nystagmus that have been proposed include medical, optical, surgical, and other miscellaneous treatments (Table 1); few of these have been evaluated in prospective masked clinical trials.[2,4] Likewise, a variety of treatments for saccadic oscillations have been proposed; few have been evaluated in prospective masked clinical trials.[2] Most treatments aim to suppress the abnormal eye movements without affecting normal eye movements, whereas others aim to negate the visual consequences of the abnormal eye movements. Choice of treatment depends on the type of nystagmus or saccadic oscillation and its characteristics. While some patients will derive benefit from one treatment approach, others require a combination of treatments.[2,4]

Treatment of Acquired Forms of Nystagmus

Medical treatments are usually the most effective for treating acquired forms of nystagmus. Optical, surgical, and other treatments can also be helpful. The dosing and common side-effects of medical treatments for acquired forms of nystagmus are summarized in Table 2.[5]

Peripheral Vestibular Nystagmus

Nystagmus can result from peripheral vestibular diseases, such as vestibular neuritis, Ménière's disease, and benign paroxysmal positional vertigo. In most cases, the nystagmus is short-lived or intermittent. The associated vertigo, nausea, and vomiting are often more distressing to the patient than are the visual symptoms from the nystagmus. Consequently, the patient is best managed with treatments directed towards the underlying disorder.[6]

Video <https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=180306>

Downbeat Nystagmus

Downbeat nystagmus is common and often causes disabling visual symptoms (e.g., vertical oscillopsia). Many affected patients seek treatment. Clonazepam, a GABA_A-agonist, has been shown to improve downbeat nystagmus in two uncontrolled trials.[7,8] Baclofen, a GABA_B-agonist, was thought to suppress downbeat nystagmus,[9,10] but did not produce a consistent benefit in a double-masked trial.[11] Gabapentin, now thought to act as an $\alpha 2\delta$ -1 calcium channel antagonist[12] and N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonist,[13] did not consistently improve downbeat nystagmus in the same trial.[11] Anticholinergics have been suggested as a potential treatment.[14] However, a prospective double-masked trial showed

Table 1: Proposed Treatments for Nystagmus[4]

Treatment Approach	Examples
Medical	Gabapentin Memantine 4-aminopyridine 3,4-diaminopyridine Baclofen Clonazepam Valproate Trihexyphenidyl Benztropine Scopolamine Isoniazid Carbamazepine Barbiturates Alcohol Acetazolamide Brinzolamide (topical) Cannabis
Optical	Contact lenses Contact lens and spectacle combinations Prisms Electro-optical devices
Surgical	Anderson-Kestenbaum procedure Cüppers' divergence procedure Recession of rectus muscles Tenotomy and reattachment procedure
Other (Miscellaneous)	Botulinum toxin Acupuncture Biofeedback Cutaneous stimulation

that trihexyphenidyl produced only a modest improvement with significant side-effects.[15]

Recent trials have demonstrated that the aminopyridine potassium channel blockers are effective for downbeat nystagmus. 3,4-diaminopyridine and 4-aminopyridine have been shown to suppress downbeat nystagmus, although they are more effective in patients with cerebellar degenerations and less effective in those with focal cerebellar lesions.[16,17] 4-aminopyridine appears to be more effective than 3,4-diaminopyridine.[18] Both drugs are well tolerated, although they can cause seizures (usually in patients with a predisposition to epilepsy who are given high dosages) and cardiac arrhythmias in patients with QT inter-

val prolongation. The mechanism by which they suppress downbeat nystagmus is unclear, although they might work by altering the firing of cerebellar Purkinje cells.[19] 3,4-diaminopyridine has been shown to modulate the gravity-dependence of downbeat nystagmus and, thus, might suppress the nystagmus by modulating otolithic pathways.[20] An extended-release formulation of 4-aminopyridine is available in the US and is approved for the treatment of gait difficulties in multiple sclerosis (MS) patients.[21] At present, the aminopyridines are first-line treatment for downbeat nystagmus (see Table 2 for recommended dosing). In those who do not respond, a trial of clonazepam could be considered (Table 2). Surgery (e.g., tenotomy and reattachment) can be considered for treating severe in-

Table 2: Drug Treatments for Acquired Nystagmus[5]

Nystagmus Type	Treatment (dose, frequency)	Common Side-Effects
Peripheral Vestibular Nystagmus	Treatment of underlying disorder	Not applicable
Downbeat Nystagmus	4-aminopyridine (5-10mg, tid)	Dizziness, paresthesias, incoordination
	3,4-diaminopyridine (10-20mg, tid)	Dizziness, paresthesias, incoordination
	Clonazepam (0.5-1mg, bid)	Drowsiness, dizziness, incoordination
Upbeat Nystagmus	Memantine (10mg, qid)	Lethargy, dizziness, headache
	4-aminopyridine (5-10mg, tid)	Dizziness, paresthesias, incoordination
	Baclofen (5-10mg, tid)	Drowsiness, dizziness, lethargy
Torsional Nystagmus	Gabapentin (300mg, qid)	Dizziness, incoordination, drowsiness
Seesaw Nystagmus	Alcohol	Drowsiness, incoordination, vomiting
	Clonazepam (0.5-1mg, bid)	Drowsiness, dizziness, incoordination
	Memantine (10mg, qid)	Lethargy, dizziness, headache
Periodic Alternating Nystagmus	Baclofen (5-10mg, tid)	Drowsiness, dizziness, lethargy
	Memantine (5-10mg, qid)	Lethargy, dizziness, headache
Acquired Pendular Nystagmus in MS	Gabapentin (300mg, qid)	Dizziness, incoordination, drowsiness
	Memantine (10mg, qid)	Lethargy, dizziness, headache
Acquired Pendular Nystagmus in OPT	Gabapentin (300mg, qid)	Dizziness, incoordination, drowsiness
	Memantine (10mg, qid)	Lethargy, dizziness, headache
	Trihexyphenidyl (5-20mg, tid)	Dry mouth, blurred vision, dizziness

Abbreviations: bid, twice daily; MS, multiple sclerosis; OPT, oculopalatal tremor; qid, four times daily; tid, three times daily

tractable oscillopsia in patients with downbeat nystagmus, either alone or in combination with medical therapy,[22] but clinical trials are yet to be performed.

Video <https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=180371>

Upbeat Nystagmus

Upbeat nystagmus can produce vertical oscillopsia, but the nystagmus resolves spontaneously; long-term treatment is only required if it is persistent. There have been very few clinical trials evaluating proposed treatments. One uncontrolled trial reported a benefit with baclofen. [9] A prospective double-masked cross-over trial reported reduction of upbeat nystagmus or upbeat components of nystagmus with memantine, a non-competitive NMDA receptor antagonist, but not with gabapentin.[23] In another study, 4-aminopyridine suppressed upbeat nystagmus in one patient.[24] A trial of memantine, 4-aminopyridine,

or baclofen could be considered in patients with visual symptoms from persistent upbeat nystagmus (see Table 2 for recommended dosing).

Video: <https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=180329>

Torsional Nystagmus

Torsional nystagmus can cause disabling oscillopsia. However, there have been very few clinical trials evaluating proposed treatments. A double-masked cross-over trial reported a modest reduction with gabapentin, but little response to memantine, in a single patient.[23] While further studies are required to identify medications that suppress torsional nystagmus, a trial of gabapentin could be considered in patients with visual symptoms from persistent torsional nystagmus (see Table 2 for recommended dosing).

Video: <https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=180297>

Seesaw Nystagmus

Acquired seesaw nystagmus is rarely encountered, but can give rise to disabling oscillopsia. Several small studies have suggested that pendular seesaw nystagmus can be suppressed by alcohol or clonazepam in individual patients.[25-27] A double-masked cross-over trial reported that the jerk form (hemi-seesaw nystagmus) can be suppressed with gabapentin or memantine.[23] Treatment with clonazepam, gabapentin, or memantine could be considered in patients with visual symptoms from persistent seesaw nystagmus (see Table 2 for recommended dosing).

Video: <https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=188591>

Periodic Alternating Nystagmus

Patients with acquired periodic alternating nystagmus often complain of oscillopsia. Several non-randomized and non-controlled studies have reported complete suppression of the nystagmus with baclofen.[28-30] The efficacy of baclofen in treating periodic alternating nystagmus has been confirmed in primates.[31] A benefit from memantine has been reported in a patient whose nystagmus was refractory to baclofen.[32] At present, baclofen is considered first-line treatment for acquired periodic alternating nystagmus, while memantine could be tried in those patients who do not respond to baclofen (see Table 2 for recommended dosing).

Video <https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=180294>

Acquired Pendular Nystagmus in Multiple Sclerosis

Acquired pendular nystagmus (APN) can occur in patients with multiple sclerosis (MS) and causes disabling visual symptoms. The hypothesis that it arises due to instability of the ocular motor neural integrator led to testing of drugs thought to have effects on GABA- and glutamate-mediated mechanisms. GABAergic drugs (e.g., clonazepam, valproate, and isoniazid) were found to help some patients in early studies.[33,34] The effects of gabapentin, which was initially thought to have GABAergic effects, were compared with those of baclofen in a double-masked study including patients with APN.[11] Visual acuity improved with gabapentin, but not baclofen, and only gabapentin reduced median nystagmus slow phase speed. However, some patients had no response to gabapentin or reported severe side-effects (e.g., ataxia). Gabapentin was subsequently compared with vigabatrin, which is known to be purely GABAergic.[35] Gabapentin suppressed APN, but vigabatrin did not, suggesting that gabapentin might suppress APN by a non-GABAergic mechanism; gabapentin

is now thought to exert its effect via the $\alpha\delta$ -1 calcium channel subunit[12] and NMDA receptors.[13] Two recent prospective masked trials have confirmed that gabapentin is often effective in suppressing APN in MS, but not all patients respond.[23,36]

Several prospective masked trials have demonstrated that memantine can suppress APN in patients with MS when given in doses of 40-60mg per day.[23,36,37] It can reduce APN in those patients who do not respond to gabapentin.[23,37] However, patients with MS can develop a reversible exacerbation of MS symptoms when receiving 30mg or more of memantine per day[38] and, thus, gabapentin may be the preferred initial treatment for APN in MS (see Table 2 for recommended dosing). There is a potential role for combining drug therapies (e.g., gabapentin and memantine), but no clinical trials have been conducted to date. Surgery (e.g., tenotomy and reattachment) might also be effective in suppressing APN in patients with severe intractable oscillopsia,[22] but should not be routinely recommended as clinical trials are yet to be performed.

Video: <https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=180282>

Acquired Pendular Nystagmus in Oculopalatal Tremor

The nystagmus of oculopalatal tremor (OPT) often causes severe intractable oscillopsia. Several studies have evaluated the effect of anticholinergic agents on the nystagmus of OPT. Although individual patients can respond to trihexyphenidyl,[39,40] it was only modestly effective in a prospective masked trial.[15] A prospective double-masked trial comparing intravenously-administered scopolamine, benztrapine, and glycopyrrolate found that scopolamine reduced the nystagmus of OPT, whereas benztrapine was less effective, and glycopyrrolate had no effect.[14] However, treatment with intravenous scopolamine resulted in significant side-effects and is not practical for day-to-day treatment. Transdermal scopolamine was also found to be unreliable, given that it can make the nystagmus worse in some patients or cause significant side-effects.[41] Two prospective double-masked cross-over trials have demonstrated that gabapentin and memantine can suppress the nystagmus of OPT.[11,23] Although the nystagmus of OPT is often more refractory to treatment with gabapentin and memantine than is APN due to MS, a trial of therapy is worthwhile (see Table 2 for recommended dosing). There is a potential role for combined drug therapies (e.g., gabapentin and memantine) or surgical therapy (e.g., tenotomy and reattachment), but these treatment approaches have not been evaluated in clinical trials.

Treatment of Congenital Forms of Nystagmus

Treatment for congenital forms of nystagmus depends on the severity of visual symptoms, severity of any associated afferent visual system anomalies, and the characteristics of the nystagmus itself.[2,4] Some patients do not have visual symptoms, especially if “foveation periods” are well developed, and most do not complain of oscillopsia.[42] Those with impaired vision might have so due to afferent visual system anomalies (e.g., optic nerve or foveal hypoplasia),[2] such that suppression of the nystagmus does not produce a significant improvement in vision. However, patients with visual symptoms with intact afferent visual systems can benefit from treatments that suppress the nystagmus.[2,4]

Infantile Nystagmus Syndrome

Infantile nystagmus can be treated using optical, surgical, and medical approaches.[2,4] Optical treatments are simple, safe, and may be all that is required to improve vision. Correction of refractive error alone might bring about an appreciable improvement in vision.[43,44] Use of contact lenses might be preferred over spectacle lenses, because contact lenses often suppress infantile nystagmus by an uncertain mechanism.[45] Spectacle lenses are preferred in patients whose nystagmus suppresses with convergence, because prism can be added to induce convergence, and thereby suppress the nystagmus and improve visual acuity, during viewing of far targets.[46] Sufficient convergence can be produced by a pair of 7 diopter base-out prisms with -1 diopter sphere added to compensate for the accompanying accommodation.

Several surgical procedures can be considered for treatment of infantile nystagmus. The Anderson-Kestenbaum procedure aims to move the attachments of the extraocular muscles, so that the null point of the nystagmus is shifted to the straight ahead position.[47,48] The Anderson-Kestenbaum procedure also leads to decreased nystagmus intensity outside of the null zone and may improve head posture.[49-51] However, selection of patients who will benefit requires measurement of visual acuity and nystagmus in different gaze positions. Cüppers’ divergence procedure can be effective in patients whose nystagmus suppresses with convergence; the procedure diverges the eyes, so that the patient is required to converge during far viewing.[52,53] In some patients, combining the Anderson-Kestenbaum and Cüppers’ divergence procedures can produce a better outcome than either procedure alone.[53] Another surgical approach involves large recessions of the horizontal rectus muscles,[54-58] sometimes in combination with other procedures,[59] to produce sup-

pression of the nystagmus. However, the nystagmus can increase following an initial improvement, due to adaptive changes. It has been observed that some suppression of the nystagmus and broadening of the null zone follows almost all surgical procedures for infantile nystagmus, which led to the suggestion that merely detaching the muscles, dissecting the perimuscular fascia, and re-attaching them at the same site (“tenotomy and reattachment”) might suppress the nystagmus.[60] Studies in a canine model support this hypothesis.[61] Clinical trials indicate that some patients treated with tenotomy and reattachment show improvement in some measures of visual and ocular motor function following horizontal rectus surgery,[62-64] but not all reports agree.[65] Since the operation may have its effects by disrupting extraocular proprioceptive feedback signals, variations on the original procedure have been proposed.[66] Carefully selected patients with infantile nystagmus can benefit from surgical treatments that are tailored to their individual visual and ocular motor findings: (1) if there is a narrow eccentric null zone, then the Anderson-Kestenbaum procedure could be considered; (2) if the nystagmus is reduced with convergence, then Cüppers’ divergence procedure could be considered; and (3) if neither of these conditions apply, then tenotomy and reattachment could be considered. Patients with infantile nystagmus and afferent visual system anomalies (e.g., oculo-cutaneous albinism) are less likely to benefit from surgical intervention.[67]

Medical treatments of infantile nystagmus are less favorable, since they would need to be given life-long and can cause side-effects. A randomized, controlled, double-masked trial comparing gabapentin and memantine found that the nystagmus intensity and visual acuity improved in both treatment groups.[68] However, patients with afferent visual system anomalies derived only a small benefit. Recent studies have reported that infantile nystagmus might be suppressed with carbonic anhydrase inhibitors, including oral acetazolamide and topical brinzolamide.[69,70] Infantile nystagmus can also be reduced after smoking cannabis.[71] Lastly, gene therapy holds the potential for treatment of nystagmus associated with congenital retinal disorders. For example, in an animal model of Leber’s congenital amaurosis, successful gene therapy restored vision and reduced the associated nystagmus.[72-75]

Other Congenital Forms of Nystagmus

The treatment options for other congenital forms of nystagmus are limited. Treatment for latent nystagmus (fusional maldevelopment nystagmus syndrome) consists of measures to improve vision, such as correction of refractive error and treatment of amblyopia.[2,4] Spasmus nutans syndrome typically resolves spontaneously and does not require specific intervention.[2,4]

Treatment of Intractable Nystagmus

There are several treatment options for patients who do not respond to the approaches listed above. Optical devices that negate the visual effects of the nystagmus can be tried. One such approach consists of using high-plus spectacle lenses in combination with high-minus contact lenses.[2,4,76] While the visual effects of the nystagmus can be effectively negated using this approach, it is only useful when the patient is stationary and viewing monocularly, since the visual effects of normal eye movements are also negated.[77] Another approach involves use of an electro-optical device, which measures the ocular oscillations and incorporates image-shifting optics to negate, in real-time, their visual effects.[78] Electro-optical devices are best suited for patients with pendular forms of nystagmus, since the abnormal eye movements can be more easily distinguished from normal eye movements, but these devices remain experimental and are not yet commercially available. Treatments to stop the eyes from moving altogether, such as botulinum toxin injections into the extraocular muscles, can also be considered in patients with intractable nystagmus. While the injections can lead to reduced oscillopsia and improved visual acuity, patients often develop diplopia and ptosis.[79-84] Furthermore, normal eye movements are impaired and the treatment is only effective for several weeks to months, making botulinum toxin injections limited in therapeutic value.[2,4]

Treatment of Saccadic Oscillations

The treatment of saccadic oscillations depends on whether the patient has visual symptoms from the oscillations. Some forms of saccadic oscillation, such as square-wave jerks, do not cause visual symptoms and, thus, do not require specific treatment.[2] For saccadic oscillations that cause visual symptoms, medical treatments are most effective.[2]

Macrosaccadic Oscillations

Macrosaccadic oscillations often result in difficulty with reading, but there are few clinical trials investigating proposed treatments. Memantine reduced the frequency of the oscillations and improved reading ability in one family with macrosaccadic oscillations due to cerebellar ataxia and, thus, could be considered in patients with symptomatic macrosaccadic oscillations.[85]

Ocular Flutter and Opsoclonus

Ocular flutter and opsoclonus can produce oscillopsia. When due to brainstem encephalitis, treatment with intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIg), corticosteroids, azathioprine, or monoclonal antibodies directed against B-lymphocytes can speed recovery.[86-88] In adults with paraneoplastic opsoclonus, treatment of the underlying tumor can produce an improvement in the oscillations.[87] Plasmapheresis, IVIg, and immunoabsorption therapy can also be effective.[89-91] Opsoclonus in children with neural crest tumors often responds to corticosteroids[92] and sometimes to IVIg.[93] New therapies with monoclonal antibodies directed against B-lymphocytes may be effective.[88] Occasional patients gain a benefit from medications, such as gabapentin,[94] but formal clinical trials have not been conducted.

[Ocular Flutter](#) Video:

<https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=180316>

[Opsoclonus](#) Video:

<https://collections.lib.utah.edu/details?id=180305>

References

1. Sarvananthan, N., Surendran, M., Roberts, E.O., et al.: The prevalence of nystagmus: the Leicestershire nystagmus survey, *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 50:5201-5206, 2009.
2. Thurtell, M.J., Leigh, R.J.: Nystagmus and saccadic intrusions, *Handb Clin Neurol* 102:333-378, 2011.
3. Demer, J.L., Amjadi, F.: Dynamic visual acuity of normal subjects during vertical optotype and head motion, *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 34:1894-1906, 1993.
4. Thurtell, M.J., Leigh, R.J.: Therapy for nystagmus, *J Neuroophthalmol* 30:361-371, 2010.
5. Thurtell, M.J., Rucker, J.C., Tomsak, R.L., et al.: Medical treatment of acquired nystagmus, *Expert Rev Ophthalmol* 6:307-314, 2011.
6. Strupp, M., Thurtell, M.J., Shaikh, A.G., et al.: Pharmacotherapy of vestibular and ocular motor disorders, including nystagmus, *J Neurol* 258:1207-1222, 2011.
7. Currie, J.N., Matsuo, V.: The use of clonazepam in the treatment of nystagmus-induced oscillopsia, *Ophthalmology* 93:924-932, 1986.
8. Young, Y.H., Huang, T.W.: Role of clonazepam in the treatment of idiopathic downbeat nystagmus, *Laryngoscope* 111:1490-1493, 2001.
9. Dieterich, M., Straube, A., Brandt, T., et al.: The effects of baclofen and cholinergic drugs on upbeat and downbeat nystagmus, *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 54:627-632, 1991.
10. Kastrup, O., Maschke, M., Keidel, M., et al.: Presumed

- pharmacologically induced change from upbeat- to downbeat nystagmus in a patient with Wernicke's encephalopathy, *Clin Neurol Neurosurg* 107:70-72, 2004.
11. Averbuch-Heller, L., Tusa, R.J., Fuhry, L., et al.: A double-blind controlled study of gabapentin and baclofen as treatment for acquired nystagmus, *Ann Neurol* 41:818-825, 1997.
 12. Bauer, C.S., Nieto-Rostro, M., Rahman, W., et al.: The increased trafficking of the calcium channel subunit $\alpha_2\delta_1$ to presynaptic terminals in neuropathic pain is inhibited by the $\alpha_2\delta_1$ ligand pregabalin, *J Neurosci* 29:4076-4088, 2009.
 13. Kim, Y.S., Chang, H.K., Lee, J.W., et al.: Protective effect of gabapentin on N-methyl-D-aspartate-induced excitotoxicity in rat hippocampal CA1 neurons, *J Pharmacol Sci* 109:144-147, 2009.
 14. Barton, J.J., Huaman, A.G., Sharpe, J.A.: Muscarinic antagonists in the treatment of acquired pendular and downbeat nystagmus: a double-blind, randomized trial of three intravenous drugs, *Ann Neurol* 35:319-325, 1994.
 15. Leigh, R.J., Burnstine, T.H., Ruff, R.L., et al.: The effect of anticholinergic agents upon acquired nystagmus: a double-blind study of trihexyphenidyl and tridihexethyl chloride, *Neurology* 41:1737-1741, 1991.
 16. Strupp, M., Schuler, O., Krafczyk, S., et al.: Treatment of downbeat nystagmus with 3,4-diaminopyridine: a placebo-controlled study, *Neurology* 61:165-170, 2003.
 17. Kalla, R., Glasauer, S., Schautzer, F., et al.: 4-aminopyridine improves downbeat nystagmus, smooth pursuit, and VOR gain, *Neurology* 62:1228-1229, 2004.
 18. Kalla, R., Spiegel, R., Claassen, J., et al.: Comparison of 10-mg doses of 4-aminopyridine and 3,4-diaminopyridine for the treatment of downbeat nystagmus, *J Neuroophthalmol*, 2011.
 19. Glasauer, S., Rossert, C.: Modelling drug modulation of nystagmus, *Prog Brain Res* 171:527-534, 2008.
 20. Helmchen, C., Sprenger, A., Rambold, H., et al.: Effect of 3,4-diaminopyridine on the gravity dependence of ocular drift in downbeat nystagmus, *Neurology* 63:752-753, 2004.
 21. Hauser, S.L., Johnston, S.C.: 4-aminopyridine: new life for an old drug, *Ann Neurol* 68:A8-A9, 2010.
 22. Tomsak, R.L., Dell'Osso, L.F., Jacobs, J.B., et al.: Eye muscle surgery for acquired forms of nystagmus. In: Leigh, R.J., Devereaux, M.W. (Eds): *Advances in Understanding Mechanisms and Treatment of Infantile Forms of Nystagmus*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2008:112-116.
 23. Thurtell, M.J., Joshi, A.C., Leone, A.C., et al.: Crossover trial of gabapentin and memantine as treatment for acquired nystagmus, *Ann Neurol* 67:676-680, 2010.
 24. Glasauer, S., Kalla, R., Büttner, U., et al.: 4-aminopyridine restores visual ocular motor function in upbeat nystagmus, *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 76:451-453, 2005.
 25. Frisén, L., Wikkelso, C.: Posttraumatic seesaw nystagmus abolished by ethanol ingestion, *Neurology* 36:841-844, 1986.
 26. Lepore, F.E.: Ethanol-induced reduction of pathological nystagmus, *Neurology* 37:887, 1987.
 27. Cochin, J.P., Hannequin, D., Domarcolino, C., et al.: Intermittent see-saw nystagmus abolished by clonazepam, *Rev Neurol (Paris)* 151:60-62, 1995.
 28. Halmagyi, G.M., Rudge, P., Gresty, M.A., et al.: Treatment of periodic alternating nystagmus, *Ann Neurol* 8:609-611, 1980.
 29. Furman, J.M., Wall, C., Pang, D.: Vestibular function in periodic alternating nystagmus, *Brain* 113:1425-1439, 1990.
 30. Garbutt, S., Thakore, N., Rucker, J.C., et al.: Effects of visual fixation and convergence in periodic alternating nystagmus due to MS, *Neuroophthalmology* 28:221-229, 2004.
 31. Cohen, B., Dai, M., Yakushin, S.B., et al.: Baclofen, motion sickness susceptibility and the neural basis for velocity storage, *Prog Brain Res* 171:543-553, 2008.
 32. Kumar, A., Thomas, S., McLean, R., et al.: Treatment of acquired periodic alternating nystagmus with memantine: a case report, *Clin Neuropharmacol* 32:109-110, 2009.
 33. Lefkowitz, D., Harpold, G.: Treatment of ocular myoclonus with valproic acid, *Ann Neurol* 17:103-104, 1985.
 34. Traccis, S., Rosati, G., Monaco, M.F., et al.: Successful treatment of acquired pendular elliptical nystagmus in multiple sclerosis with isoniazid and base-out prisms, *Neurology* 40:492-494, 1990.
 35. Bandini, F., Castello, E., Mazzella, L., et al.: Gabapentin but not vigabatrin is effective in the treatment of acquired nystagmus in multiple sclerosis: how valid is the GABAergic hypothesis? *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 71:107-110, 2001.
 36. Starck, M., Albrecht, H., Pöllmann, W., et al.: Acquired pendular nystagmus in multiple sclerosis: an examiner-blind cross-over treatment study of memantine and gabapentin, *J Neurol* 257:322-327, 2010.
 37. Starck, M., Albrecht, H., Straube, A., et al.: Drug therapy for acquired pendular nystagmus in multiple sclerosis, *J Neurol* 244:9-16, 1997.
 38. Villoslada, P., Arrondo, G., Sepulcre, J., et al.: Memantine induces reversible neurologic impairment in

- patients with MS, *Neurology* 72:1630-1633, 2009.
39. Herishanu, Y., Louzoun, Z.: Trihexyphenidyl treatment of vertical pendular nystagmus, *Neurology* 36:82-84, 1986.
 40. Jabbari, B., Rosenberg, M., Scherokman, B., et al.: Effectiveness of trihexyphenidyl against pendular nystagmus and palatal myoclonus: evidence of cholinergic dysfunction, *Mov Disord* 2:93-98, 1987.
 41. Kim, J.I., Averbuch-Heller, L., Leigh, R.J.: Evaluation of transdermal scopolamine as treatment for acquired nystagmus, *J Neuroophthalmol* 21:188-192, 2001.
 42. Abadi, R.V., Whittle, J.P., Worfolk, R.: Oscillopsia and tolerance to retinal image movement in congenital nystagmus, *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 40:339-345, 1999.
 43. Anderson, J., Lavoie, J., Merrill, K., et al.: Efficacy of spectacles in persons with albinism, *J AAPOS* 8:515-520, 2004.
 44. Hertle, R.W.: Examination and refractive management of patients with nystagmus, *Surv Ophthalmol* 45:215-222, 2000.
 45. Dell'Osso, L.F., Traccis, S., Erzurum, S.I.: Contact lenses and congenital nystagmus, *Clinical Vision Science* 3:229-232, 1988.
 46. Serra, A., Dell'Osso, L.F., Jacobs, J.B., et al.: Combined gaze-angle and vergence variation in infantile nystagmus: two therapies that improve the high-visual-acuity field and methods to measure it, *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 47:2451-2460, 2006.
 47. Anderson, J.R.: Causes and treatment of congenital eccentric nystagmus, *Br J Ophthalmol* 37:267-281, 1953.
 48. Kestenbaum, A.: Nouvelle operation de nystagmus, *Bull Soc Ophtalmol Fr* 6:599-602, 1953.
 49. Lee, I.S., Lee, J.B., Kim, H.S., et al.: Modified Kestenbaum surgery for correction of abnormal head posture in infantile nystagmus: outcome in 63 patients with graded augmentation, *Binocul Vis Strabismus Q* 15:53-58, 2000.
 50. Chang, Y.H., Chang, J.H., Han, S.H., et al.: Outcome study of two standard and graduated augmented modified Kestenbaum surgery protocols for abnormal head postures in infantile nystagmus, *Binocul Vis Strabismus Q* 22:235-241, 2007.
 51. Gupta, R., Sharma, P., Menon, V.: A prospective clinical evaluation of augmented Anderson procedure for idiopathic infantile nystagmus, *J AAPOS* 10:312-317, 2006.
 52. Cüppers', C.: Probleme der operativen therapie des okularen nystagmus, *Klin Mbl Augenheilk* 159:145-157, 1971.
 53. Sendler, S., Shallo-Hoffmann, J., Mühlendyck, H.: Die artifiizielle-divergenz-operation beim kongenitale nystagmus, *Fortschr Ophthalmol* 87:85-89, 1990.
 54. von Noorden, G.K., Sprunger, D.T.: Large rectus muscle recession for the treatment of congenital nystagmus, *Arch Ophthalmol* 109:221-224, 1991.
 55. Helveston, E.M., Ellis, F.D., Plager, D.A.: Large recession of the horizontal recti for treatment of nystagmus, *Ophthalmology* 98:1302-1305, 1991.
 56. Alio, J.L., Chipont, E., Mulet, E., et al.: Visual performance after congenital nystagmus surgery using extended hang back recession of the four horizontal rectus muscles, *Eur J Ophthalmol* 13:415-423, 2003.
 57. Atila, H., Erkam, N., Isikcelik, Y.: Surgical treatment in nystagmus, *Eye* 13:11-15, 1999.
 58. Erbagci, I., Gungor, K., Bekir, N.A.: Effectiveness of ret-roequatorial recession surgery in congenital nystagmus, *Strabismus* 12:35-40, 2004.
 59. Arroyo-Yllanes, M.E., Fonte-Vazquez, A., Perez-Perez, J.F.: Modified Anderson procedure for correcting abnormal mixed head position in nystagmus, *Br J Ophthalmol* 86:267-269, 2002.
 60. Dell'Osso, L.F.: Development of new treatments for congenital nystagmus, *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 956:361-379, 2002.
 61. Dell'Osso, L.F., Hertle, R.W., Williams, R.W., et al.: A new surgery for congenital nystagmus: effects of tenotomy on an achiasmatic canine and the role of extraocular proprioception, *J AAPOS* 3:166-182, 1999.
 62. Hertle, R.W., Dell'Osso, L.F., FitzGibbon, E.J., et al.: Horizontal rectus tenotomy in patients with congenital nystagmus, *Ophthalmology* 110:2097-2105, 2003.
 63. Hertle, R.W., Dell'Osso, L.F., FitzGibbon, E.J., et al.: Horizontal rectus muscle tenotomy in children with infantile nystagmus syndrome: a pilot study, *J AAPOS* 8:539-548, 2004.
 64. Wang, Z.I., Dell'Osso, L.F.: Tenotomy procedure alleviates the "slow to see" phenomenon in infantile nystagmus syndrome: model prediction and patient data, *Vision Res* 48:1409-1419, 2008.
 65. Boyle, N.J., Dawson, E.L., Lee, J.P.: Benefits of ret-roequatorial four horizontal muscle recession surgery in congenital idiopathic nystagmus in adults, *J AAPOS* 10:404-408, 2006.
 66. Dell'Osso, L.F., Tomsak, R.L., Thurtell, M.J.: Two hypothetical nystagmus procedures: augmented tenotomy and reattachment and augmented tendon-suture (sans tenotomy), *J Pediatr Ophthalmol Strabismus* 46:337-344, 2009.
 67. Hertle, R.W., Anninger, W., Yang, D., et al.: Effects of extraocular muscle surgery on 15 patients with ocu-

- lo-cutaneous albinism (OCA) and infantile nystagmus syndrome (INS), *Am J Ophthalmol* 138:978-987, 2004.
68. McLean, R., Proudlock, F., Thomas, S., et al.: Congenital nystagmus: randomized, controlled, double-masked trial of memantine/gabapentin, *Ann Neurol* 61:130-138, 2007.
 69. Thurtell, M.J., Dell'Osso, L.F., Leigh, R.J., et al.: Effects of acetazolamide on infantile nystagmus syndrome waveforms: comparisons to contact lenses and convergence in a well-studied subject, *Open Ophthalmol J* 4:42-51, 2010.
 70. Dell'Osso, L.F., Hertle, R.W., Leigh, R.J., et al.: Effects of topical brinzolamide on infantile nystagmus syndrome waveforms: eyedrops for nystagmus, *J Neuroophthalmol* 31:228-233, 2011.
 71. Pradeep, A., Thomas, S., Roberts, E.O., et al.: Reduction of congenital nystagmus in a patient after smoking cannabis, *Strabismus* 16:29-32, 2008.
 72. Narfstrom, K., Katz, M.L., Bragadottir, R., et al.: Functional and structural recovery of the retina after gene therapy in the RPE65 null mutation dog, *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 44:1663-1672, 2003.
 73. Acland, G., Aguirre, G., Ray, J., et al.: Gene therapy restores vision in a canine model of childhood blindness, *Nature Genetics* 28:92-95, 2001.
 74. Jacobs, J.B., Dell'Osso, L.F., Hertle, R.W., et al.: Eye movement recordings as an effectiveness indicator of gene therapy in RPE65-deficient canines: implications for the ocular motor system, *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 47:2865-2875, 2006.
 75. Bennicelli, J., Wright, J.F., Komaromy, A., et al.: Reversal of blindness in animal models of leber congenital amaurosis using optimized AAV2-mediated gene transfer, *Mol Ther* 16:458-465, 2008.
 76. Rushton, D., Cox, N.: A new optical treatment for oscillopsia, *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 50:411-415, 1987.
 77. Leigh, R.J., Rushton, D.N., Thurston, S.E., et al.: Effects of retinal image stabilization in acquired nystagmus due to neurologic disease, *Neurology* 38:122-127, 1988.
 78. Stahl, J.S., Lehmkuhle, M., Wu, K., et al.: Prospects for treating acquired pendular nystagmus with servo-controlled optics, *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 41:1084-1090, 2000.
 79. Helveston, E.M., Pogrebniak, A.E.: Treatment of acquired nystagmus with botulinum A toxin, *Am J Ophthalmol* 106:584-586, 1988.
 80. Leigh, R.J., Tomsak, R.L., Grant, M.P., et al.: Effectiveness of botulinum toxin administered to abolish acquired nystagmus, *Ann Neurol* 32:633-642, 1992.
 81. Tomsak, R.L., Remler, B.F., Averbuch-Heller, L., et al.: Unsatisfactory treatment of acquired nystagmus with retrobulbar botulinum toxin, *Am J Ophthalmol* 119:489-496, 1995.
 82. Ruben, S.T., Lee, J.P., Oneil, D., et al.: The use of botulinum toxin for treatment of acquired nystagmus and oscillopsia, *Ophthalmology* 101:783-787, 1994.
 83. Repka, M.X., Savino, P.J., Reinecke, R.D.: Treatment of acquired nystagmus with botulinum neurotoxin A, *Arch Ophthalmol* 112:1320-1324, 1994.
 84. Carruthers, J.: The treatment of congenital nystagmus with Botox, *J Pediatr Ophthalmol Strabismus* 32:306-308, 1995.
 85. Serra, A., Liao, K., Martinez-Conde, S., et al.: Suppression of saccadic intrusions in hereditary ataxia by memantine, *Neurology* 70:810-812, 2008.
 86. Pless, M., Ronthal, M.: Treatment of opsoclonus-myoclonus with high-dose intravenous immunoglobulin, *Neurology* 46:583-584, 1996.
 87. Bataller, L., Graus, F., Saiz, A., et al.: Clinical outcome in adult onset idiopathic or paraneoplastic opsoclonus-myoclonus, *Brain* 124:437-444, 2001.
 88. Pranzatelli, M.R., Tate, E.D., Travelstead, A.L., et al.: Immunologic and clinical responses to rituximab in a child with opsoclonus-myoclonus syndrome, *Pediatrics* 115:e115-e119, 2005.
 89. Engle, E.C., Hedley-White, T.: A 29-month-old girl with worsening ataxia, nystagmus, and subsequent opsoclonus and myoclonus, *New Engl J Med* 333:1995, 1995.
 90. Cher, L.M., Hochberg, F.H., Teruya, J., et al.: Therapy for paraneoplastic neurologic syndromes in six patients with protein A column immunoadsorption, *Cancer* 75:1678-1683, 1995.
 91. Nitschke, M., Hochberg, F., Dropcho, E.: Improvement of paraneoplastic opsoclonus-myoclonus after protein A column therapy, *New Engl J Med* 332:192, 1995.
 92. Koh, P.S., Raffensperger, J.G., Berry, S., et al.: Long-term outcome in children with opsoclonus-myoclonus and ataxia and coincident neuroblastoma, *J Pediatrics* 125:712-716, 1994.
 93. Fisher, P.G., Wechsler, D.S., Singer, H.S.: Anit-Hu antibody in a neuroblastoma-associated paraneoplastic syndrome, *Ped Neurol* 10:309-312, 1994.
 94. Moretti, R., Torre, P., Antonello, D., et al.: Opsoclonus-myoclonus syndrome: Gabapentin as a new therapeutic proposal, *Eur J Neurology* 7:455-456, 2000.

Suggested Citation Format

Thurtell MJ, Brinkley JJ. Treatment of Nystagmus and Saccadic Oscillations. June 23, 2013; Available from EyeRounds.org/tutorials/Nystagmus/ last updated: 6/24/2013

Tutorials

Oculoplastic Surgery

Benign Lesions of the External Periocular Tissues

A Tutorial

Lucas T. Lenci, MD; Christopher A. Kirkpatrick, MD; TJ Clark, MD; Amanda C. Maltry, MD; Nasreen A. Syed, MD; Richard C. Allen, MD, PhD; Erin M. Shriver, MD

June 14, 2017

Introduction

Part of the complete ophthalmic examination includes inspection of the eyelids and lashes. Anatomically, the eyelids are bordered superiorly by the eyebrow and inferiorly by the cheek. The majority of this area is covered superficially by a keratinizing stratified squamous epithelium. Because of this, the eyelid is prone to many of the same dermatologic lesions found elsewhere on the skin covered areas of the body.

The eyelids contain numerous specialized adnexal structures that differ depending on the location in the eyelids. The dermis lies deep to the epidermis and contains cilia, the sebaceous glands of Zeis, the apocrine sweat glands of Moll, eccrine sweat glands, and pilosebaceous units. Deep to the orbicularis near the eyelid margin lays a dense plaque of fibrous connective tissue known as the tarsal plate, which contains sebaceous meibomian glands. Finally the conjunctiva contains the accessory lacrimal glands of Wolfring and Krause as well as goblet cells. This tutorial details the common, benign lesions found on the eyelid. Malignant lesions of the eyelid (e.g., basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma, sebaceous adenocarcinoma, malignant melanoma, etc.) are covered in a separate tutorial at <https://eyerounds.org/tutorials/malignant-lesions-of-ext-periocular-tissues>. This article is by no means an extensive discussion of every benign eyelid lesion; rather it serves as an overview/tutorial to guide diagnosis and treatment.

Chalazion

A chalazion is a chronic lipogranulomatous inflammatory process that occurs in the eyelid. It results from obstruction of the meibomian glands (deep chalazion) or Zeis glands (superficial chalazion) with subsequent leakage of the lipid contents into the surrounding tissues, inciting a granulomatous inflammatory process.



Figure 1: Chalazion

Presentation

Patients will present with a hard, painless nodule in the eyelid that slowly enlarges over the course of weeks to months. It may be the result of a hordeolum (see note below) or develop *de novo*. This process is commonly associated with rosacea and blepharitis.

Pathology

Pathology specimens classically show zonal lipogranulomatous inflammation centered on clear spaces previously filled with lipid ("lipid dropout" – an artifact of processing). There is a mixed inflammatory infiltrate that consists of neutrophils, plasma cells, lymphocytes, epithelioid histiocytes and multinucleate giant cells.

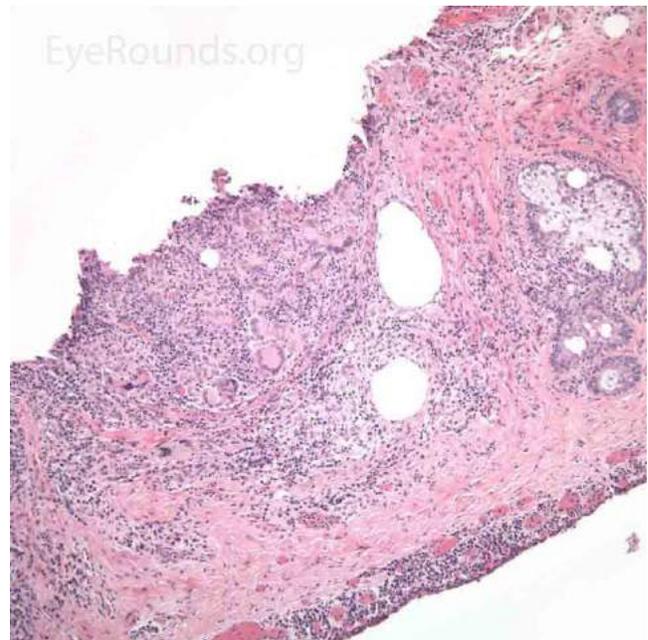


Figure 2: Chalazion pathology

Treatment options

- ◆ Hot compresses
- ◆ Lid hygiene
- ◆ Topical or oral antibiotics
- ◆ Surgical excision

Note

In contrast to a chalazion, a hordeolum (stye) is an acute, purulent inflammatory process of any gland (meibomian, Zeiss, Moll, or eccrine) in the eyelid that presents as a discrete, warm, erythematous, painful pustule over the course of a few days. The pathology is typified by a small, purulent abscess consisting of neutrophils and necrotic cellular debris centered on a hair follicle and its adjacent gland.

Xanthelasma

A Xanthelasma is a tumor consisting of intracellular accumulation of lipid. This lesion is typified by a collection of lipid-laden macrophages within the dermis.



Figure 3: Xanthelasma

Presentation

The patient will present with multiple soft, yellowish plaques commonly found near the medial canthi of the upper and lower lids. These lesions are more common with increasing age and may be associated with disorders of lipid metabolism.

Pathology

The dermis will show a collection of histiocytes with foamy, lipid-laden cytoplasm that tend to cluster around blood vessels.

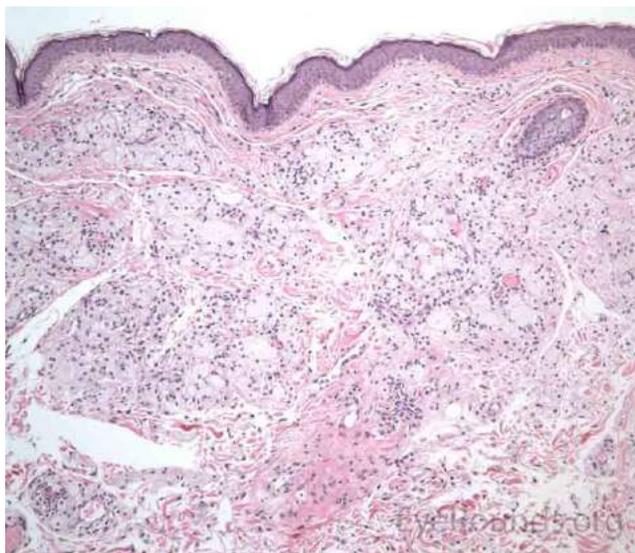


Figure 4: Xanthelasma pathology

Treatment options

- ◆ Surgical excision
- ◆ CO₂ laser
- ◆ Topical 100% trichloroacetic acid

Note

There is a high recurrence rate after treatment for xanthelasma.

Epidermal inclusion cyst (epidermoid cyst)

An epidermal inclusion cyst (EIC) is a dermal implantation cyst of epidermis. It can be congenital or acquired. The acquired form is usually in a site of prior trauma, which causes occlusion of the orifice of the hair follicle.



Figure 5: Epidermal inclusion cyst

Presentation

This often presents as a slow-growing, elevated, round, smooth, white lesion. These lesions do not trans-illuminate and can have a central pore that designates the remaining pilar duct. These lesions can become secondarily infected or rupture and incite an inflammatory reaction.

Pathology

A pathologic specimen of this process will show a cystic structure within the dermis that is lined by stratified squamous keratinizing epithelium with desquamated keratin in the cyst lumen. There are no dermal appendages in the cyst wall (this is the differentiating feature from a dermoid cyst).



Figure 6: Epidermal inclusion cyst pathology

Treatment options

- ◆ Excision
- ◆ Marsupialization

Note

Milia are multiple, small epidermal inclusion cysts that are histologically identical to EIC and vary only in size. Cutaneous (not orbital) dermoid cysts are similar to EIC, but contain skin adnexal structures (hair, sweat/sebaceous glands) in the cyst wall. The cyst lumen also contains hair shafts and glandular secretions in addition to keratin.

Apocrine hidrocystoma

An apocrine hidrocystoma is a cyst that results from ductal occlusion of an apocrine sweat gland of Moll. It is considered a variant of an adenoma of the secretory cells of Moll rather than a retention cyst.



Figure 7: Apocrine hidrocystoma

Presentation

The patient will present with a solitary, round, smooth, cystic lesion located along the lid margin and commonly found near the canthi. These lesions are translucent and will trans-illuminate, but can occasionally take on a bluish tint.

Pathology

Pathology (figure 8) shows an irregular cystic structure within the dermis. The cyst is lined by a double layer of cuboidal epithelium with the inner-most (luminal) layer demonstrating apocrine differentiation (apical decapitation secretion).

Treatment options

- ◆ Marsupialization
- ◆ Excision

Note

Eccrine hidrocystoma is a ductal retention cyst resulting from occlusion of a duct of an eccrine sweat gland. These lesions are clinically and sometimes histologically indistinguishable from an apocrine hidrocystoma. These lesions are different in that they enlarge in conditions that stimulate perspiration (heat or humidity) and vary histologically as the cyst lumen is lined with a double layer of cuboidal epithelium without apocrine differentiation.

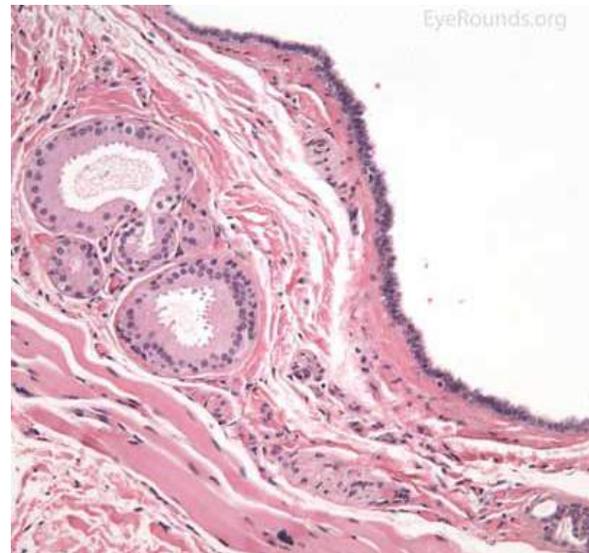


Figure 8: Apocrine hidrocystoma pathology.

Syringoma

A syringoma is a benign, adenomatous tumor of the eccrine sweat gland that likely arises from malformed eccrine ducts.

Presentation

The most common presentation is multiple, soft, small (1-2 mm), mildly hypopigmented papules arising on or near the lid margin or in the dermis. Syringoma are more common on the lower lid and occur more often in young female patients.



Figure 9: Syringoma

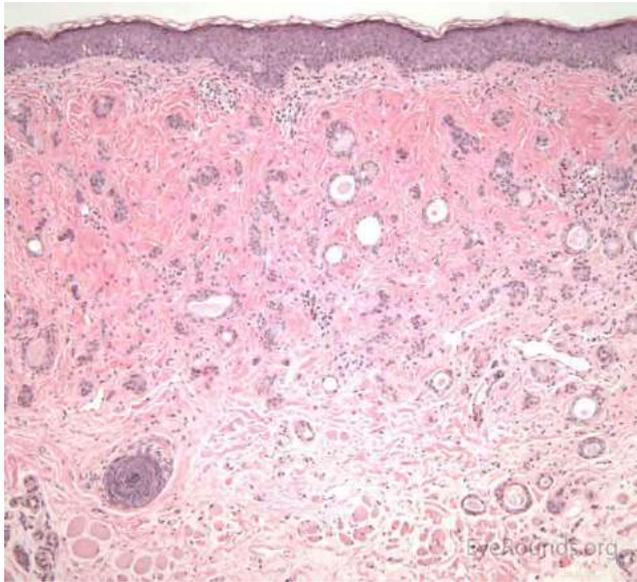


Figure 10: Syringoma pathology

Pathology

A pathologic sample of this process will show epithelial strands of small basophilic cells extending into the dermis that represents proliferation of eccrine sweat gland structures. These are classically described as "comma-shaped" or "tadpole" in appearance. Additionally, there will be multiple small, round, cystic ductules of proliferating eccrine glands that are lined by a double layer of flattened epithelial cells with a colloidal secretory material in the central lumen.

Treatment options

- ◆ Laser ablation
- ◆ Surgical excision

Nevus

A nevus is a congenital, hamartomatous (benign neoplasm in the tissue of origin) tumor of incompletely differentiated melanocytes (nevus cells).

Presentation

The presentation of a nevus is highly variable. Though not clinically apparent, nevi are present at birth and typically evolve and manifest variably throughout a person's life. Initial clinical presentation occurs during childhood as a flat, pigmented macule. At this time the nevus is typically a



Figure 11: Intradermal nevus

junctional nevus – the nevus cells are located in the basal epithelial layer at the epidermal, dermal junction. Pigmentation often increases during puberty and then beyond the second decade, it becomes an elevated, pigmented papule. Over time the nevus transforms into a compound nevus – the nevus cells have extended from the junctional zone down into the dermis that gives it elevation. As the patient ages, the nevus loses its epidermal pigmentation and remains as an elevated, minimally pigmented or amelanotic lesion. At this point, the nevus is known as an intradermal nevus – there is involution of the epidermal component and all of the nevus cells are within the dermis.

Nevi are frequently found on the periocular skin, eyelids and eyelid margins. Nevi found on the lid margin can mold to the underlying ocular surface if they contact the globe and can have lashes protruding from them.

Pathology

Just as clinical presentation varies, pathologic features vary depending on the evolutionary stage of the nevus. Typical nevus cells are bland, benign appearing, but atypical melanocytes are round, basaloid and tend to cluster together in nests or chords. These cells contain "pseudo-inclusion cysts" which are abnormal infoldings of the cell nucleus that appear as a clearing within the cell nucleus. Nevus

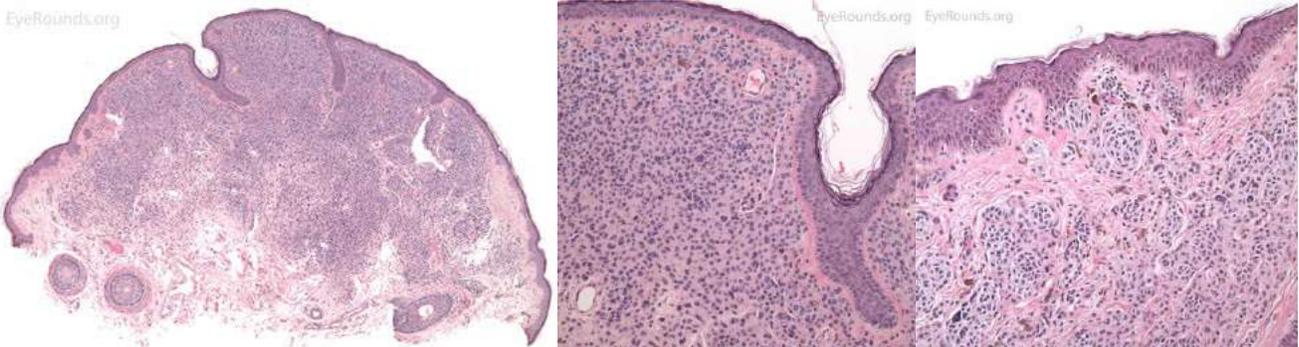


Figure 12: Nevus Pathology. a and b: Intradermal nevus pathology. c: Compound nevus pathology

cells tend to show polarity within a lesion, that is the nuclei tend to become more "mature" (smaller, thinner, and darker) as they progress deeper into the dermis. In the superficial aspect of the nevus, type A nevus cells have an epithelioid appearance. The nevus cells become smaller and darker as they move deeper (type B cells). In the deepest aspect of the nevus, type C nevus cells have a flatter, thinner nucleus and take on a spindle or Schwann cell-like appearance. Nevi contain highly variable amounts of pigmentation. As previously described, the location of the nevus cells within the lesion is what classifies the type of nevus

- ◆ Junctional nevus - nevus cells are all located at the epidermal, dermal junction in the basal epithelium
- ◆ Compound nevus – nevus cells are located at the epidermal, dermal junction in the basal epithelium AND in the dermis
- ◆ Intradermal nevus – nevus cells are all located within the dermis

Treatment options

- ◆ Shave biopsy
- ◆ Excisional biopsy
- ◆ Wedge resection on the eyelid

Seborrheic keratosis

A seborrheic keratosis is an acquired, benign papilloma that results from intraepidermal proliferation of benign basal cells.



Figure 13: Seborrheic keratosis



Figure 14: Seborrheic keratosis pathology

Presentation

The presentation is variable, but lesions are typically sharply defined, brownish and have a rough, warty surface. They are classically described as "greasy" and "stuck-on". The lesions have a variable degree of pigmentation and hyperkeratosis. The morphology may be sessile, pedunculated, lobulated, papillary or verrucoid. It is common for these lesions to increase in size and number with age.

Pathology

Pathologic specimens will show acanthosis, hyperkeratosis, and papillomatosis. Low magnification will accentuate the "stuck on" appearance of this papillomatous growth with upward acanthosis (Figure 14A). Higher magnification shows a proliferation of cells within the epidermis that closely resemble normal basal cells. The epidermis may proliferate down in to the dermis in a reticulated pattern with narrow interconnecting cords or tracts. There may be pseudohorn cysts, which are crevices or infoldings of epidermis cut in cross-section that appear to be cystic accumulations of keratinous material (Figure 14B). Pigmentation of these lesions is variable.

Treatment options

- ◆ Shave excision at the epidermal-dermal junction

Note

A sudden onset of multiple seborrheic keratoses is known as Leser-Trélat sign and is associated with systemic malignancy, classically gastrointestinal adenocarcinoma. There is a lesion very similar to seborrheic keratosis known as irritated seborrheic keratosis or inverted follicular keratosis. These lesions typically present as pink to flesh colored small papules that appear with rapid growth. Pathologically they are very similar as well, except that the normal basaloid cells of the lesion surround whorls of non-keratinizing squamous epithelium known as "squamous eddies" within the epidermis.

Verruca vulgaris

Verruca vulgaris, more commonly known as a wart, is a papillomatous growth that is caused by an epidermal infection with human papilloma virus (usually HPV 6 or 11).

Presentation

These lesions typically occur near the eyelid margin, but can occur anywhere on the periocular skin. They typically appear as a small, non-pigmented papule with a digitated surface or as an elongated, filiform lesion with papillomatous growth.

Pathology

Verruca lesions are typified by massive papillomatosis with acanthosis. There is usually a large degree of hyperkeratosis and these lesions will demonstrate parakeratosis. The parakeratosis in verruca lesions is classically apical (Figure 16A). On higher magnification, infected cells will demonstrate koilocytosis – cytoplasmic clearing with nuclear contraction (Figure 16B). These vacuolated keratocytes will have condensation and clumping of dark-staining keratohyaline granules in the periphery of the cell and occasionally show intranuclear eosinophilic viral inclusion bodies. Verruca lesions will typically have a mixed inflammatory infiltrate in the underlying superficial dermis.



Figure 15: Verruca vulgaris

Treatment options

- ◆ Excision
- ◆ Cryotherapy

Note

Verruca lesions are known for recurrences.

Molluscum contagiosum

Molluscum contagiosum is an epidermal viral infection caused by the DNA poxvirus Molluscum Contagiosum Virus (MCV).

Presentation

This process will typically present with multiple, small (1-3 mm), discrete, dome-shaped or nodular, waxy papules with characteristic umbilicated centers. It is more common in pediatric populations or those that are immune compro-



Figure 17: Molluscum contagiosum

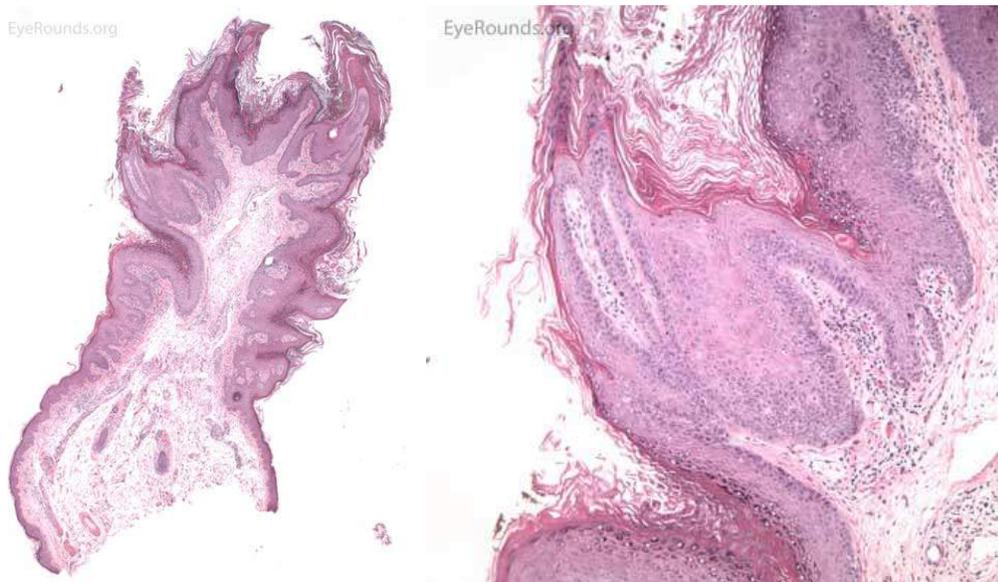


Figure 16: Verruca vulgaris pathology



Figure 18: Molluscum contagiosum pathology

mised (i.e., HIV, AIDS, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome). Patients may also present with a chronic follicular conjunctivitis that is caused by molluscum bodies being shed into the tear film from the eyelid lesions.

Pathology

This process has a very distinct pathologic appearance of a nodular proliferation of epithelium producing a central focus of necrotic cells extruding to the surface. Infected cells contain large, homogeneous, intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies called molluscum bodies that represent replicating pox virus in the cytoplasm and tend to displace the cell nucleus peripherally (Figure 18B). Infected cells tend to be smaller and more eosinophilic in the deeper layers of the lesion and become larger and more basophilic as they extend toward the surface.

Treatment options

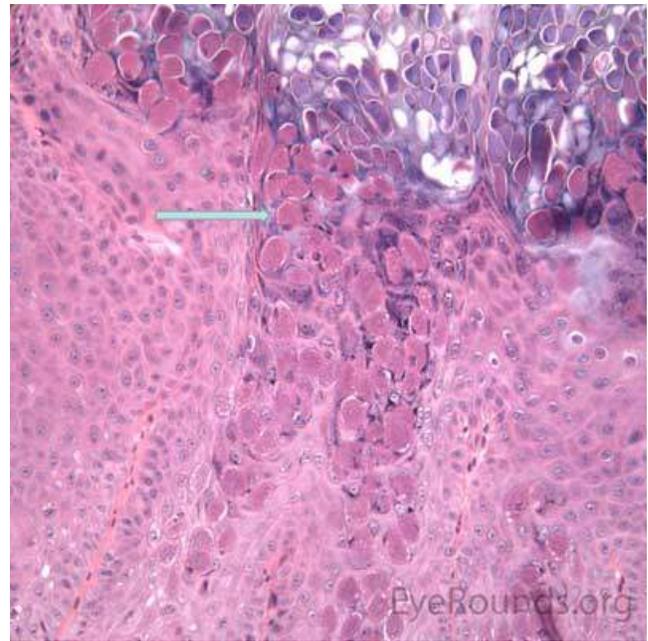
- ◆ Excision
- ◆ Cryotherapy
- ◆ Curettage

Note

Treatment of the skin lesions will resolve any associated irritative follicular conjunctivitis.

Acrochordon

An acrochordon is a benign, acquired papilloma. It is known by many other names including skin tag, fibroepithelial polyp or squamous papilloma.



Presentation

These lesions can present as single or multiple and can range in size typically from 1 mm to 1 cm. They are classically polypoid, soft and attached by a stalk. The lesions can be non- or slightly pigmented, but if twisted about its stalk, the lesion may infarct and change color from tan to black. They are more common in the middle-aged and elderly patient and have a higher occurrence in areas of skin friction.

Pathology

Pathologic specimens (figure 20) show a polypoid lesion with a fibrovascular stalk that contains loose, collagenous stroma surrounded by a mostly unremarkable epithelium. There are varying degrees of acanthosis and hyperkeratosis.

Treatment options

- ◆ Excisional
- ◆ Shave biopsy

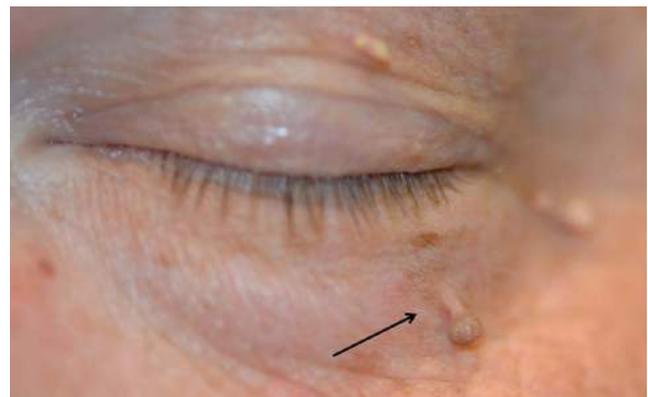


Figure 19: Acrochordon

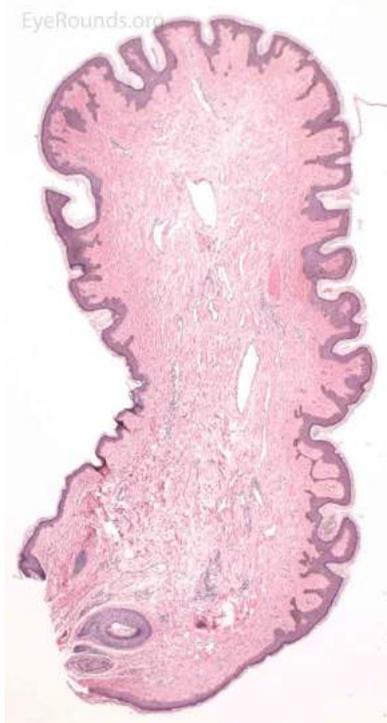


Figure 20: Acrochordon pathology

References

1. Barnhill, RL, Crowson, AN. Textbook of Dermatopathology, 2nd edition. Part 4: Proliferations – Hamartomas, Hyperplasias, Neoplasias. New York, NY: The McGraw-Hill Company; 2004; Chapters 26-36, p. 559-984.
2. Holds, JB, Chang, WJ, Durairaj, VD, et al. Orbits, Eyelids, and Lacrimal System. Section 7. Basic and Clinical Science Course. San Francisco: American Academy of Ophthalmology; 2013; Chapter 10: Classification and Management of Eyelid Disorders, p. 145-187.
3. Rosa, RH, Buggage, R, Harocopos, GJ, et al. Ophthalmic Pathology and Intraocular Tumors. Section 4. Basic and Clinical Science Course. San Francisco: American Academy of Ophthalmology; 2013; Chapter 13: Eyelids, p. 205-227.
4. Yanoff, M, Sassani JW. Ocular Pathology, 6th edition. Chapter 6: Skin and Lacrimal Drainage System. St. Louis, MO: Mosby Inc; 2009. p. 165-222.

Suggested Citation Format

Lenci LT, Kirkpatrick CA, Clark TJ, Maltry AC, Syed NA, Allen RC, Shriver EM. Benign Lesions of the External Periocular Tissues: A Tutorial. EyeRounds.org. posted May 10, 2017; Available from: <http://EyeRounds.org/tutorials/benign-lid-lesions/>

last updated: 06/14/2017

Malignant Lesions of the External Periocular Tissues

A Tutorial

Lucas T. Lenci, MD; Sebastian J. Sciegenka; Christopher A. Kirkpatrick, MD, T.J. Clark, MD; Nasreen A. Syed, MD; Erin M. Shriver, MD

June 14, 2017

Introduction

A thorough ophthalmic examination should always include careful inspection of the external periocular tissues. These tissues include specialized structures that are prone to unique pathology. For example, the eyelid has cilia, sebaceous glands of Zeis, apocrine sweat glands of Moll, eccrine sweat glands, and vellus hairs. Deep to the eyelid dermis lays the orbicularis muscle followed by the tarsal plate containing the sebaceous Meibomian glands and ducts. These structures can give rise to both benign and malignant proliferations. Here we discuss those that are malignant. Please refer to eyerounds.org/tutorials/benign-lid-lesions/ to see benign eyelid lesions. The following discussion includes the presentation and pathology of common eyelid malignancies. This is meant to be an overview and tutorial. Additionally, treatment options are briefly discussed but are not exhaustive. Treatment of these malignant tumors depends on the extent of invasion as well as lymph node and systemic involvement.

Keratoacanthoma

Keratoacanthoma is a rare tumor usually occurring in fair-skinned individuals over areas of chronic sun exposure or sites of prior trauma. Most commonly occurs during the 6th decade of life. They are regarded as part of the spectrum of squamous cell carcinomas. These are more common in immunocompromised individuals. Some classify keratoacanthoma as a low grade malignancy and refer to them as "squamous cell carcinoma with keratoacanthoma-like features".[1]



Figure 1: Keratoacanthoma

Keratoacanthoma which arose over a period of weeks. Note the classic dome-shaped nodule with elevated, rolled margins and a central keratin-filled crater. (The darkened coloration of the upper lid is a permanent eyeliner tattoo.) (Contributor – Jesse Vislisel, MD)

Presentation

Classically presents as a flesh colored to erythematous elevated nodule with a central keratin plug on the lower eyelid. These lesions grow quickly, up to 2.5 cm over 2-4 weeks, followed by a slower involutinal phase taking several months. During involution, a keratin-filled crater may form and if left alone, a permanent, depressed scar remains.

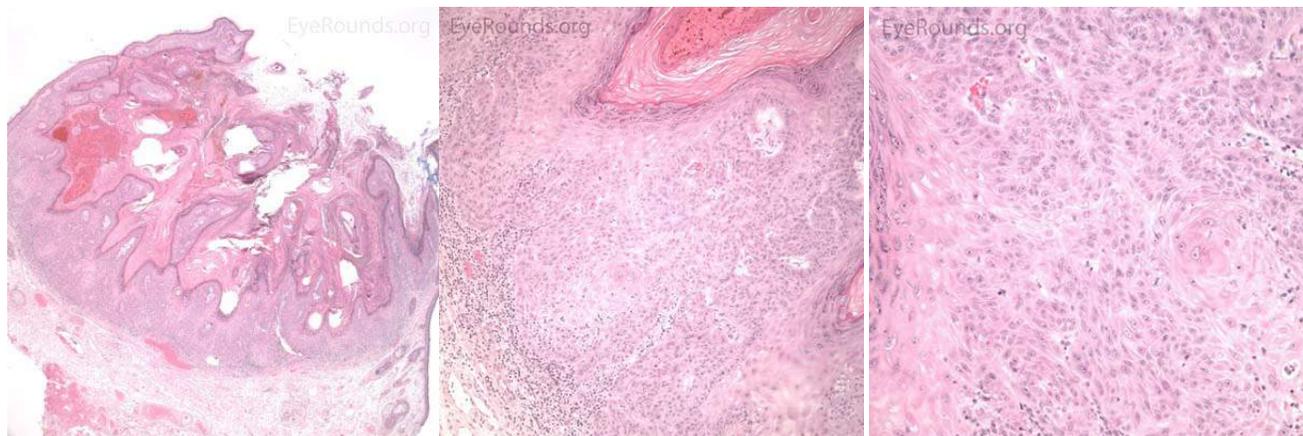


Figure 2: Keratoacanthoma Histology (same specimen at different magnifications): *Classic cup-shaped invagination of well-differentiated squamous cells forming irregularly configured nests and strands at the base of the lesion.*

Pathology

Typical pathologic specimens show a lymphocytic infiltrate at the base of the lesion and eosinophilic epithelium. The epidermis is acanthotic and often shows some nuclear atypia, dyskeratosis, squamous eddies and an increased mitotic rate. The proliferating epithelial cells will frequently undermine the adjacent normal epidermis, leading to a sharp transition between normal and thickened epithelium known as shoulder formation.

Treatment options

- ◆ Complete surgical excision
- ◆ Cryotherapy
- ◆ Topical or intralesional 5-fluorouracil

Notes

Cutaneous horns erupting from keratocarcinomas indicate a higher likelihood of underlying squamous cell carcinoma.

Basal Cell Carcinoma (BCC)

Basal cell carcinoma is the most common human malignancy and by far the most common eyelid malignancy, accounting for about 90% of malignant lesions on the eyelid. It most frequently affects fair-skinned, elderly patients with peak incidence at age 70. Risk factors include ultraviolet light exposure, age, chronic inflammation, immunosuppression, and exposure to arsenic and coal tar derivatives. [2]

Presentation

Basal cell carcinoma usually presents as a flesh colored to pearly, raised nodule with rolled edges. Some ulcerate or have telangiectatic vessels on the surface. From most to least common location, BCCs arise on the lower eyelid, medial canthus, upper eyelid, and lateral canthus. Many variants of BCC exist including nodular (>50% of cases), pigmented, superficial, cystic, and morpheaform. While they can invade locally and extensively, BCC grows slowly and has a very low rate of metastasis.



Figure 3: Basal Cell Carcinoma. BCC demonstrated on the left lower eyelid of a 76 year-old female. Note the nodular, pearly colored papule with rolled edges and telangiectatic vessels.

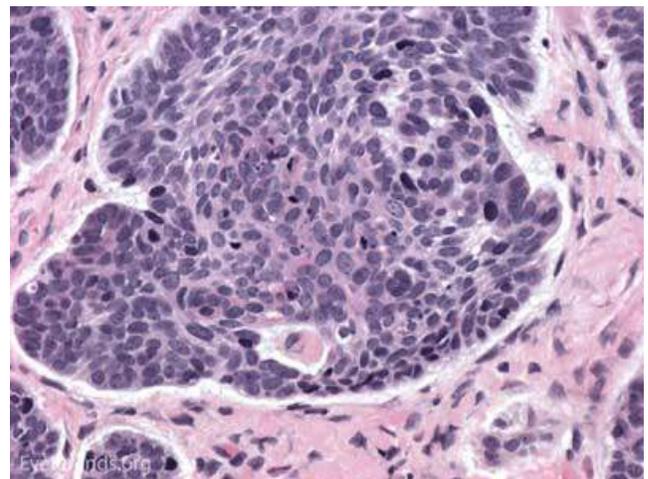
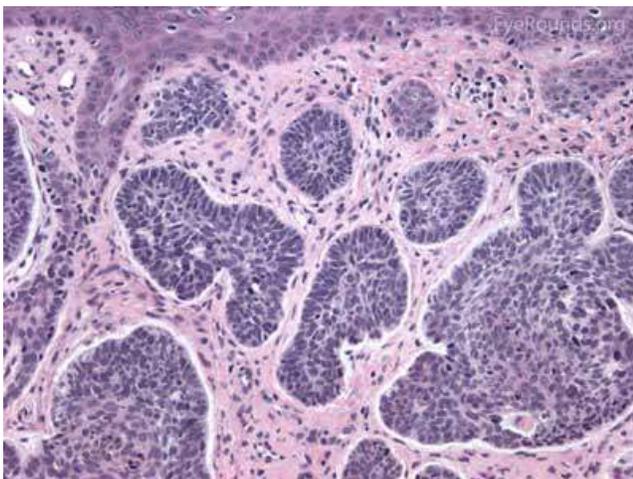


Figure 4: Basal Cell Carcinoma Histology. 4A: BCC tumor cells with relatively bland, monomorphic nuclei with high nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio in several cohesive nests lying within the dermis. 4B: Palisading of the cells around the outer edge of the tumor and retraction artifact

Pathology

BCC arises from the epidermis and invades into the dermis forming basophilic islands of tumor that typically have a palisading "picket fence" border that mimics the hair matrix. Tumor cells are characterized by relatively bland, monomorphous nuclei with high nuclear to cytoplasmic ratio. Single cell necrosis is common within the islands. The islands are often separated from the surrounding dermis by an artifactitious clear space (retraction artifact).

Treatment options

- ◆ MOHS micrographic excision
- ◆ Surgical excision with frozen section margin controls
- ◆ Topical imiquimod or 5-fluorouracil
- ◆ Adjunct systemic chemotherapy/targeted therapy (vismodegib or sonidegib)

Notes

BCCs of greatest concern are those arising near the medial canthus where they can more easily invade the orbit and sinuses. These are the most difficult to manage and carry a high risk of recurrence.



Actinic Keratosis (AK)

Actinic keratosis is a precancerous dysplastic squamous lesion that results from proliferation of atypical epidermal keratinocytes which have the ability to transform into squamous cell carcinoma. Major risk factors for AK include UV light exposure and fair skin. Although easily managed, the occurrence of AKs should increase clinical suspicion for other skin malignancies. [3]

Presentation

AKs typically present as erythematous, scaly macules or papules. Lesions usually are < 1cm in diameter and rough to the touch. The most frequently affected areas include the face, exposed scalp, and dorsum of forearms and hands. Several clinical variants exist including classic/common, hypertrophic, atrophic, AK with cutaneous horn, and pigmented.

Pathology

The pathology depends on the clinical variant, but classically demonstrates focal surface parakeratosis and loss of the stratum granulosum in the epidermis. There may be acanthosis with club-like extensions of the rete ridges into



Figure 5: Actinic Keratosis. 5A: Classic AK overlying the middle portion of the left eyelid. 5B: AK with cutaneous horn presenting on the right upper eyelid.

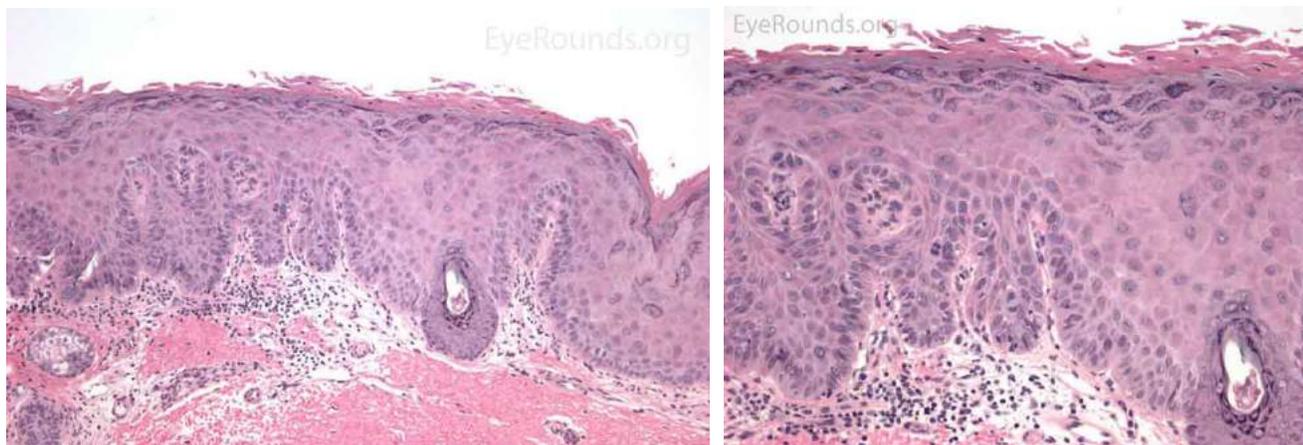


Figure 6: Actinic Keratosis Histology. Classic AK having features of epidermal acanthosis, disorganization of the epidermis (dysplasia), parakeratosis, and inflammation of the underlying dermis.

the dermis. Some degree of epidermal nuclear atypia is present, usually in the deeper layers of the epidermis. The superficial dermis may have a lymphocytic infiltrate at the base of the lesion. The underlying dermis usually has solar elastosis.

Treatment options

- ◆ Cryotherapy
- ◆ Topical imiquimod or 5-fluorouracil
- ◆ Surgical excision

Notes

The risk of developing frank malignancy from actinic keratosis is grossly estimated from multiple studies. Generally accepted statistics: individuals with AKs have a 10-25% chance of developing SCC; 25% of AKs resolve spontaneously; total risk of transformation for an individual lesion is estimated at 1%. Although the risk of death from AKs is low, they should be promptly treated; prevention of future SCC is more effective than treating after one develops.



Figure 7a: Squamous Cell Carcinoma.

SCC demonstrated on left upper eyebrow of a 63 year-old Caucasian male. Note the ulcerated center with a relatively smooth outer rim of hyperkeratotic tissue. This lesion has a similar appearance to basal cell carcinoma.

Squamous Cell Carcinoma (SCC)

SCC is the second most common cutaneous malignancy, second only to BCC worldwide. However in dark skinned individuals, SCC is the most common skin cancer. They account for 5-10% of eyelid malignancies and may spread perineurally to invade the orbit or paranasal sinuses. The overall risk of metastasis is less than 5%, but the risk increases to 20-30% when present on lips, ears, or eyelids. Risks include UV exposure, fair skin, childhood sunburns, age, family or personal history, immunosuppression, smoking, arsenic exposure, and genetic predisposition. [4]

Presentation

There is a wide variety of SCC clinical presentations ranging from papules, plaques, or nodules with smooth, hyperkeratotic, or ulcerative secondary characteristics. Most are erythematous to pink nodules with overlying scale or crust with or without ulceration. SCC is most commonly found on the head and neck (55%), but can develop on any cutaneous surface. Squamous cell carcinomas have a predilection for the lower eyelid and lid margin.



Figure 7b: Pedunculated squamous cell carcinoma



Figure 8: Squamous Cell Carcinoma Histology. Tumor cells can be seen invading the dermis, producing a fibrotic tissue reaction and keratin pearls. On highest magnification, intracellular bridges (arrows) are seen, strongly suggesting SCC.

Pathology

SCCs can vary from well differentiated to poorly differentiated on the eyelid. Atypical squamous cells form islands and strands extending deep to the epidermal basement membrane, infiltrating the dermis, and inciting a fibrotic dermal reaction. Prominent intercellular bridges (desmosomes) can be seen between cells. Dyskeratosis is often present in the form of horn cysts or keratin pearls. In contrast to BCC, cells are typically eosinophilic and may form whorls known as squamous eddies. SCC *in situ* is commonly referred to as Bowen disease.

Treatment options

- ◆ Mohs micrographic surgery
- ◆ Surgical excision with frozen section margin controls
 - Possible lymph node biopsy
- ◆ Topical imiquimod, 5-fluorouracil, EGFR inhibitors.

Notes

Unfortunately, SCC is at times downplayed as melanoma's less dangerous counterpart. However, among African Americans, SCC is the leading cause of mortality by skin malignancy. All suspected SCCs should be investigated further by biopsy.

Melanoma

The incidence of cutaneous melanoma is rising faster than any other cancer in the United States. Although rarely occurring on the eyelids, melanoma can be associated with a high mortality rate. Pigmentation remains a hallmark of this lesion, but half of eyelid melanomas are non-pigmented and may lead to misdiagnosis. Lentigo maligna is a subtype of melanoma *in situ* that usually occurs on the face or neck of older individuals. It is the most common melanoma subtype that affects the eyelids and has the ability to spread onto the conjunctiva. When atypical melanocytes



Figure 9: Melanoma. Melanoma demonstrated on 44 year-old male with a 15 year history of pigmented lesion on eyelid. Note the loss of eyelashes medially on the lower eyelid.

of lentigo maligna invade the dermis, the lesion is referred to as lentigo maligna melanoma (invasive melanoma). Risk factors include UV exposure, fair skin, childhood sunburns, presence of many dysplastic nevi, and a family or personal history of melanoma. [5]

Presentation

Histologic appearance of cutaneous melanoma depends on the subtype. Lentigo maligna typically presents as an irregularly pigmented, patchy, slowly expanding macule. Nodular thickening of the lesion is suggestive of an invasive component. Superficial spreading melanomas are variably pigmented macules or plaques with irregular borders and multiple color hues ranging from black to blue to brown. Nodular melanomas are usually darkly pigmented pedunculated or polypoid nodules; they can be amelanotic. In contrast to the long horizontal growth phase of lentigo maligna and superficial spreading melanoma, nodular melanomas are more worrisome because of their propensity for rapid vertical growth into dermis.

Pathology

Melanoma can have several different cell types histologically (epithelioid, spindle, and balloon cells) and may be subtle, especially if lacking pigment. They exhibit two forms of atypia: Architectural atypia is described as nests of atypical, pleomorphic melanocytes proliferating in the epidermis and dermis without pattern or symmetry (lentiginous pattern). Cytologic atypia is described as high nuclear to cytoplasmic ratio, prominent nucleoli, and increased mitotic rate. The single most important prognostic factor for cutaneous melanoma is depth of invasion measured in hundredths of a millimeter (Breslow depth).

Treatment options

- ◆ Mohs micrographic surgery, controversial
- ◆ Surgical excision with permanent margin controls, more common
 - (Lymph node biopsy/ dissection may be necessary based off of biopsy result)

Notes

The physical diagnostic guidelines of melanoma apply to the periocular tissues as they do to other skin surfaces. They follow the ABCDEs of melanoma – asymmetry, border irregularities, color heterogeneity with black and blue hues, diameter >6mm, and evolution or changing of lesion over time. Both patients and ophthalmologists should follow this mantra when screening for cutaneous melanomas to ensure prompt diagnosis and treatment.

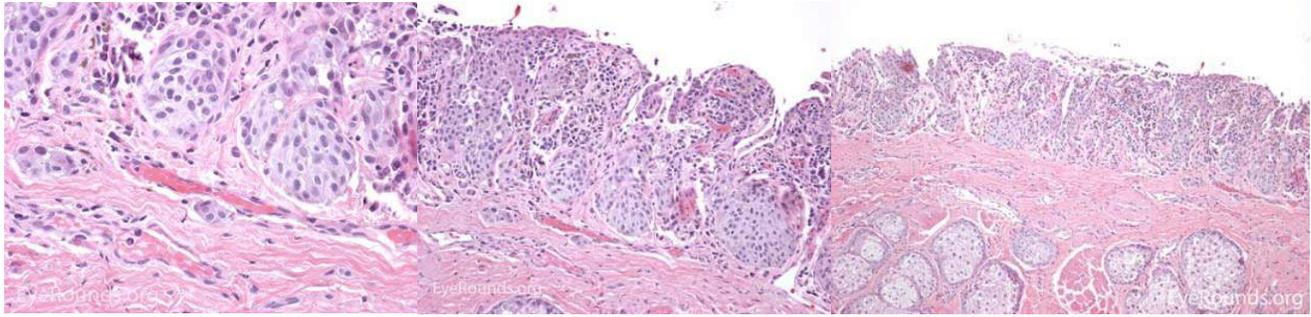


Figure 10: Melanoma Histology. Atypical, pleomorphic melanocytes are scattered throughout the epidermis and dermis without discernible pattern or symmetry. High N/C ratios and mitotic figures are appreciated here.

Sebaceous adenocarcinoma

Sebaceous adenocarcinoma is an uncommon, slow-growing but potentially aggressive malignancy often affecting the elderly with a predilection for female patients. It can arise from the meibomian glands, glands of Zeis, or caruncular sebaceous glands. Approximately 80% present on the head or neck with 40% involving the eyelid. Unlike BCC and SCC, sebaceous (adeno) carcinomas occur more commonly on the upper eyelid which has more numerous meibomian glands compared with the lower eyelid. [6,7]

Presentation

Sebaceous adenocarcinomas are notorious for masquerading as other conditions, such as chalazion or ulcerative blepharitis. It may present as a small, rubbery, firm nodule on the upper eyelid. It may be papillomatous or present as diffuse tarsal thickening with eyelid misdirection. Madarosis (loss of eyelashes) is not uncommon. Caruncular lesions may be multi-lobulated, grey-yellow subconjunctival masses. When arising from the glands of Zeis, the lesions form small yellow nodules in front of the grey line which can cause eyelid malposition. The yellowish appearance associated with the tumor is due to sebum and one must be suspicious of this.

Pathology

Sebaceous adenocarcinoma consists of pleomorphic, atypical epithelial cells ranging from moderately differentiated to poorly differentiated. They may demonstrate foamy cytoplasm or a vesicular nucleus due to the presence of lipid. Other tumors may demonstrate cells with hyperchromatic nuclei. In order to stain for intracellular lipid, tissue that has not been processed into paraffin is necessary. Frozen sections can then be prepared with Oil red O or Sudan black stains to identify lipid. Also typical of sebaceous adenocarcinoma is pagetoid spread (clusters of tumor cells within the epidermis that have no apparent connection to the main portion of the tumor). Tumors may also spread in an in situ fashion, replacing normal epidermis and without dermal invasion.

Treatment options

- ◆ Wide surgical excision with permanent margin controls, map biopsies
- ◆ Adjunctive topical mitomycin C for non-invasive conjunctival involvement
- ◆ Radiation for larger tumors as an adjunct to surgery

Notes

Muir Torre syndrome (a subset of Lynch syndrome) is a rare autosomal dominant condition that predisposes to keratoacanthoma, basal cell carcinoma, sebaceous gland carcinoma and internal malignancies such as colon and genitourinary malignancies [8]



Figure 11: Sebaceous Carcinoma. Sebaceous carcinoma demonstrated on right upper eyelid of a 67 year-old male with history of chronic blepharitis. Note the ulceration and thickening of lid margin with loss of lashes.

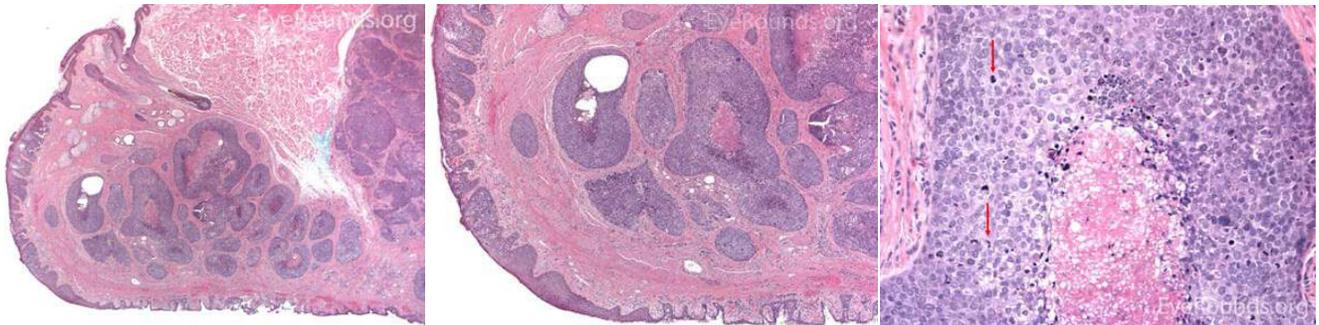


Figure 12: Sebaceous Gland Carcinoma Histology. Tumor cells with foamy cytoplasm and mitotic figures (red arrow) are shown.

Merkel Cell Carcinoma (MCC)

MCC is a rare but aggressive malignancy that typically affects older individuals with significant UV light exposure. Early histological studies suggest that MCC arises from Merkel cells, mechanoreceptor cells responsible for tactile sensation, located in the basal epidermis. Alternatively, it is also hypothesized that these tumors originate from immature totipotent stem cells of the skin. Risk factors for MCC include UV exposure, fair skin, age, immunosuppression, and infection with Merkel cell polyomavirus. [9]

Presentation

The typical presentation of MCC is a pink to blue-red, rapidly growing, painless, firm, shiny nodule with intact overlying skin. It is most frequently located on the upper eyelid, head, or neck and is often misdiagnosed as a cyst, lipoma, or other benign lesion. Because of their subtle yet aggressive nature, up to 30% of patients have regional lymph node involvement at presentation. [10,11]

Pathology

This neuroendocrine carcinoma is composed of deeply basophilic uniform cells with a high nucleus to cytoplasmic ratio, finely dispersed nuclear chromatin, and an inconspicuous nucleolus. Cells are crowded and often mold together. Single-cell necrosis, numerous mitotic figures, and lymphovascular, perineural, or epidermal invasion may also be seen. Merkel cells have features of both epithelial and neuroendocrine cells and express many markers that can be analyzed with immunohistochemistry such as synaptophysin, chromogranin and neurofilament.

Treatment options

- ◆ Wide surgical excision/Mohs micrographic surgery +/- lymph node biopsy
- ◆ Systemic chemotherapy may be necessary with lymph node involvement

Notes

The risk of MCC is higher in patients with other malignancies and those who are immunosuppressed. The diagnosis of MCC alone should raise suspicion for the presence of underlying multiple myeloma, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, or malignant melanoma. Local recurrence and lymph node metastases are common; the 5 year survival is poor at 38%. [12]



Figure 13: Merkel Cell Carcinoma. Merkel cell carcinoma demonstrated in 86 year-old female. This lesion was mostly painless but grew quickly after being incised by another physician. Note the dome shape and intense red color. Photo credit: Richard C. Allen, MD, PhD

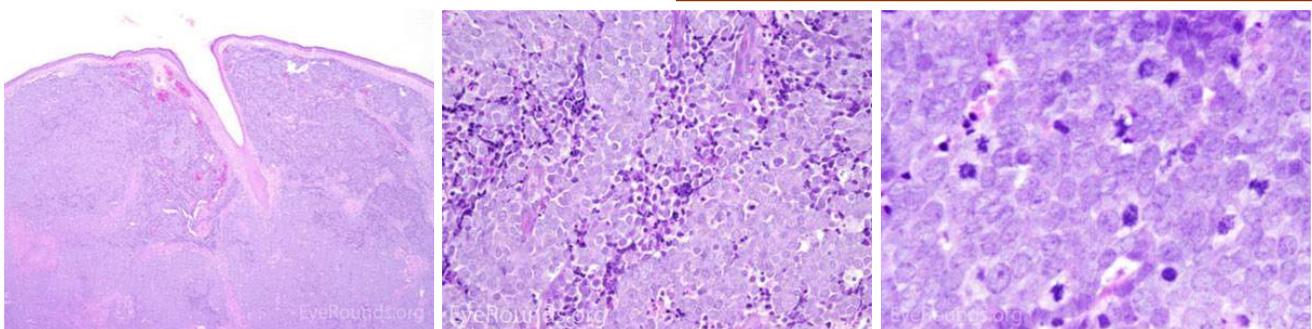


Figure 14: Merkel Cell Carcinoma Histology. Densely blue cells forming sheets, ribbons, and nests located in the dermis. Note the mitotic figures in the highest magnified image.

References

1. Kwiek B, Schwartz RA. Keratoacanthoma (KA): An update and review. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2016;74(6):1220-1233. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26853179
2. Wu PA. Pathogenesis, clinical features, and diagnosis of basal cell carcinoma [Topic 5335 Version 27.0]. In: Stern RS, Robinson JK, editors. UpToDate [online resource]: Wolters Kluwer; 2017.
3. Padilla RS. Epidemiology, natural history, and diagnosis of actinic keratosis [Topic 13712 Version 10.0]. In: Robinson JK, editor. UpToDate [online resource]: Wolters Kluwer; 2015.
4. Lin JL, Asgari M. Clinical features and diagnosis of cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) [Topic 16225 Version 14.0]. In: Stern RS, Robinson JK, editors. UpToDate [online resource]: Wolters Kluwer; 2017.
5. Fitzpatrick TB. Color atlas and synopsis of clinical dermatology : common and serious diseases. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1994.
6. Shields JA, Saktanasate J, Lally SE, Carrasco JR, Shields CL. Sebaceous Carcinoma of the Ocular Region: The 2014 Professor Winifred Mao Lecture. *Asia Pac J Ophthalmol (Phila)* 2015;4(4):221-227. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26147013
7. Prieto-Granada C, Rodriguez-Waitkus P. Sebaceous Carcinoma of the Eyelid. *Cancer Control* 2016;23(2):126-132. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27218789
8. Dores GM, Curtis RE, Toro JR, Devesa SS, Fraumeni JF, Jr. Incidence of cutaneous sebaceous carcinoma and risk of associated neoplasms: insight into Muir-Torre syndrome. *Cancer* 2008;113(12):3372-3381. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18932259
9. Albores-Saavedra J, Batich K, Chable-Montero F, Sagy N, Schwartz AM, Henson DE. Merkel cell carcinoma demographics, morphology, and survival based on 3870 cases: a population based study. *J Cutan Pathol* 2010;37(1):20-27. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19638070
10. Heath M, Jaimes N, Lemos B, Mostaghimi A, Wang LC, Penas PF, Nghiem P. Clinical characteristics of Merkel cell carcinoma at diagnosis in 195 patients: the AEIOU features. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2008;58(3):375-381. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18280333
11. Tai P. Pathogenesis, clinical features, and diagnosis of Merkel cell (neuroendocrine) carcinoma [Topic 7623 Version 23.0]. In: Stern RS, Robinson JK, editors. UpToDate [online resource]: Wolters Kluwer; 2016.
12. Zhan FQ, Packianathan VS, Zeitouni NC. Merkel cell carcinoma: a review of current advances. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2009;7(3):333-339. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19401065

Additional Reading

Kanski JJ, Nischal KK, Bowling B. *Clinical ophthalmology: a systematic approach*. 7th ed. St. Louis: Elsevier/Saunders, 2011.

Citing this article

Lenci LT, Sciegienka S, Kirkpatrick CA, Clark TJ, Syed NA, Shriver EM. Malignant Lesions of the External Periocular Tissues Tutorial. *EyeRounds.org*. posted May 10, 2017; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/malignant-lesions-of-ext-periocular-tissues

last updated: 06/14/2017

Thyroid Eye Disease

An Introductory Tutorial and Overview of Disease

Chase A Liaboe, BA; Thomas J Clark, MD; Keith Carter, MD; Erin M Shriver, MD

November 18, 2016

Introduction

Thyroid eye disease (TED) is an autoimmune inflammatory disease of the eye and surrounding tissues. It is also recognized in the literature as Graves' ophthalmopathy, Graves' orbitopathy, thyroid-associated ophthalmopathy, and thyroid orbitopathy. TED was originally associated strictly with the Graves' triad of hyperthyroidism, pretibial myxedema, and eye disease. More recently, TED has also been noted in Hashimoto's thyroiditis as well as in the absence of a thyroid dysfunction. While symptoms are typically bilateral, they are often asymmetric. The most common presenting signs are orbital and periorbital edema, eyelid retraction, eyelid lag in downgaze, restrictive strabismus, compressive optic neuropathy, and exposure keratopathy with common symptoms of ocular irritation and dryness (Figs. 1 and 2) [1]. The disease course of TED does not always coincide with thyroid activity or the treatment of underlying thyroid dysfunction.

Epidemiology

TED is the most common cause of orbital disease in North America and Europe and of both unilateral and bilateral exophthalmos. While TED is most commonly associated with Graves' disease, it can also occur in association with other thyroid states, pathologic or non-pathologic. TED has a higher prevalence in women than men (16 per 100,000 vs. 3 per 100,000, respectively). Both men and women demonstrate a bimodal pattern of age of diagnosis (40-44 and 60-64 years in women; 45-49 and 65-69 years in men). The median age of diagnosis is 43 years for all patients, with a range from 8-88 years. Patients diagnosed over the age of 50 years have a worse prognosis overall. Risk factors for TED include age, gender, ethnicity, and family history. A positive family history of TED is noted in 61% of TED patients[2].

TED exacerbation is thought to be associated with both genetic and environmental factors, such as cigarette smoking, low selenium levels, and stress [3]. Smoking has been shown to adversely affect the development, progression, and response to treatment of TED. Smokers are twice as likely to develop Graves' disease, and smokers who have Graves' disease are 7.7 times more likely to develop TED compared to nonsmokers with Graves' disease. (SEE BELOW "REGARDING SMOKING")

Pathophysiology

- ◆ Development of TED is centered on inflammation of orbital tissue via stimulation of orbital fibroblasts (Fig. 3).
 - Orbital fibroblasts are unlike other fibroblasts in the body, in that they express CD40 receptors (CD40-R), which are normally found on B-cells [4].
 - When T-cells interact with CD40-R on orbital fibroblasts, the orbital fibroblasts produce pro-inflammatory cytokines.
 - This leads to the synthesis of glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) and hyaluronic acid.
 - Up-regulation of GAG synthesis and deposition of GAGs results in congestion and edema of orbital tissue (Fig. 4).
 - Orbital fibroblasts originate from neural crest cells and can differentiate into adipocytes or myofibroblasts [4].
 - *Fibroblast-to-adipocyte* differentiation explains the fatty hypertrophy of orbital tissue found in TED characterized by extensive orbital adipose tissue proliferation and deposition, which more commonly leads to compressive optic neuropathy. [5]
 - *Fibroblast-to-myofibroblast* differentiation explains another variant of TED that manifests primarily with muscle enlargement and more commonly leads to restrictive myopathy [5].



Figures 1, 2: These patients have some of the classic signs and symptoms of TED. Note the periorbital edema, eyelid retraction, scleral show, and conjunctival injection.

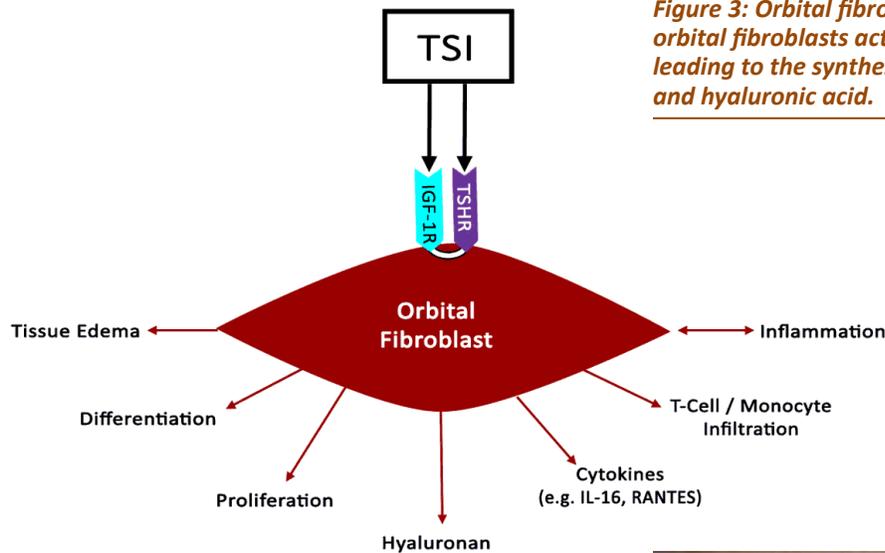


Figure 3: Orbital fibroblast activation. Stimulation of orbital fibroblasts activates pro-inflammatory genes, leading to the synthesis of glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) and hyaluronic acid.

- ◆ Two additional immunologic processes characterize the orbital fibroblast's role in TED
 - Antigen-dependent autoimmune response [1]
 - Expression of both insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor (IGF-1-R) and thyroid-stimulating hormone receptor (TSH-R) directly correlate with TED [6].
 - Both IGF-1-R and TSH-R are present on most types of human cells and are activated by their respective autoantibodies.
 - Activation of IGF-1-R stimulates synthesis of GAGs and secretions of chemoattractants by orbital fibroblasts, leading to orbital inflammation and congestion [6].
 - Activation of IGF-1-R and TSH-R cause orbital cytokine production, leading to GAG deposition in orbital tissues (Fig. 5).
 - TSH-R activation upregulates the synthesis of TSH-R mRNA [7].
 - TSH-R mRNA signals for additional fibroblast differentiation in the orbit.
 - Three types of TSH-R antibodies (TRA) are known, but only one type, thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI), is associated with hyperthyroidism and TED [8].
 - A recent study found TSI levels correlate directly with the activity and severity of TED, and all TED patients with diplopia were positive for TSI.
 - TSI is the closest "functional biomarker" of TED that we have at this time.
 - While the amount of TSI produced is directly correlated with TED severity, TED can present without Graves' disease or autoantibody formation [1].
 - Antigen-independent auto-inflammatory response[1]
 - Cytokines and chemokines directly activate a cell-mediated response, leading to an infiltration of inflammatory cells in orbital tissue.



Figure 4: Orbital congestion. Up-regulation of GAG production and deposition results in congestion of orbital tissue.

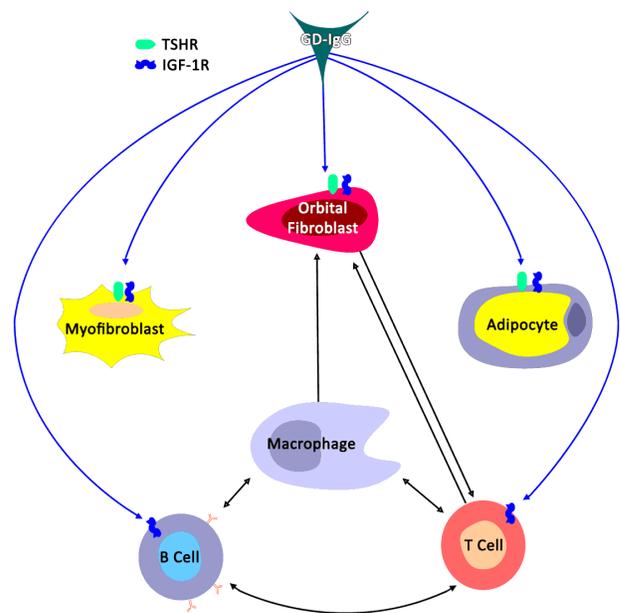


Figure 5: Antibody interaction. IGF-1-R and TSH-R are activated by TSI (GD-IgG). Activation of these receptors produces orbital cytokines, leading to GAG deposition and orbital inflammation and congestion.

- Monocytes, NK cells, and granulocytes are involved.
 - Many treatments of TED have targeted these immunologic processes. (SEE BELOW REGARDING TREATMENT)

Clinical Presentation

The thyroid state of a patient presenting with TED is quite variable: 90% hyperthyroid, 6% euthyroid, 3% with Hashimoto's thyroiditis, and 1% hypothyroid [2]. Patients are simultaneously diagnosed with TED and thyroid dysfunction 20% of the time, and 60% present within 1 year of onset of thyroid disease [9]. However, TED can present long before (up to 10 years) or long after (up to 20 years) the initial presentation of thyroid disease [2].

TED is a self-limiting disease and may present in one of two stages: active or quiescent (Fig. 6). In the active stage, there is active inflammation, which can lead to orbital muscle enlargement, conjunctival injection and chemosis, ocular pain, and swelling of the periocular tissues and eyelids. This stage typically involves waxing and waning TED symptoms and can last months to years. On average, the active phase lasts for 1 year in non-smokers and 2-3 years in smokers. The quiescent phase follows spontaneous resolution of the active phase (Fig. 7). Active TED has a recurrence rate of 5-10% but is less likely to recur after 18 months of quiescence [10].

- ◆ Upper eyelid retraction – the most common presenting sign of TED (Fig. 8)
 - Up to 90% of patients affected (bilateral or unilateral) [2]
 - Multifactorial cause [2]
 - Increased sympathetic tone acting on Müller's muscle
 - Contraction of the levator palpebrae superioris
 - Proptosis
 - Scarring between the lacrimal gland and the levator palpebrae superioris

- Physical exam
 - Dalrymple's sign (Fig. 8): widening of the palpebral fissure with inferior and superior scleral show
 - Lagophthalmos (Fig. 9)
 - Inability to close the eyes completely
 - Manifests as dry eye, tearing, foreign body sensation, blurred vision, and eventually exposure keratopathy, especially with a poor Bell's reflex
 - Temporal flare (Fig. 10): elevation of the temporal upper eyelid compared to its normal anatomical location
- Treatment options (SEE BELOW REGARDING TREATMENT)
- ◆ Exophthalmos – the second most common sign associated with TED (Fig. 11)
 - 60% of patients are affected[2]
 - Physical exam
 - Exposure keratopathy: characteristic punctate epithelial erosions
 - Globe subluxation: anterior displacement of the globe[11]
 - Globe equator protrudes anteriorly in relation to the lids
 - Ophthalmologic emergency
 - Decreased perfusion of the optic nerve and the retina
 - Anoxic destruction of the optic nerve can cause irreversible visual loss
 - Treatment options (SEE BELOW REGARDING TREATMENT)
- ◆ Other common signs and symptoms associated with TED: eyelid lag, extraocular myopathy, pain with eye movement, optic neuropathy, chemosis, and conjunctival injection
 - Eyelid lag
 - 50% of patients affected
 - Static dysfunction in which the upper eyelid is elevated in relation to the globe while in down-gaze

Active Phase



Stable Phase



Figure 6: Active vs. Stable TED. Active TED is characterized by signs of inflammation (orbital muscle enlargement, conjunctival injection, swelling of periocular tissue, and chemosis). TED activity waxes and wanes, and usually transitions to stable TED within 1-3 years.

- Von Graefe’s sign
 - Dynamic form of eyelid lag associated with TED
 - Delayed descent of the upper eyelid during downgaze
- Restrictive extraocular myopathy (Figs. 12 and 13)
 - 40% of patients affected
 - Inferior and medial rectus muscles most commonly affected, leading to hypotropia and esotropia, respectively
 - Corneal light reflex –
 - Clinical examination in which position of light reflex relative to pupil and limbus is used to evaluate degree of duction in the four cardinal directions
 - Shown to be the best method of evaluating restrictive extraocular myopathy [12]
- Pain with eye movement[2]
 - 30% of patients affected
- Characterized as dull, deep orbital pain
- Optic nerve dysfunction from compressive optic neuropathy (Fig. 14) [2]
 - 6% of patients affected
 - Compression of the optic nerve due to enlargement of the rectus muscles and increased volume of periorbital tissue within the confines of the bony orbit
 - Presents with dyschromatopsia, decreased vision, and/or visual field defects
 - Ophthalmic emergency requiring immediate attention (SEE BELOW REGARDING TREATMENT)
- Chemosis and conjunctival injection (Figs. 15 and 16)
 - Sign of active inflammation cause by congestion of the orbital tissue
 - More pronounced at the site of the rectus muscle insertion

Disease Time Course and Intervention Strategy

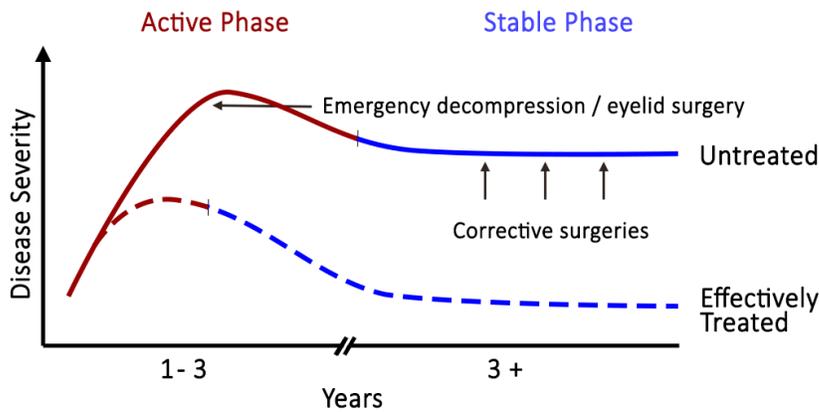


Figure 7: Rundle’s curve. As seen in the representation of TED activity over time in Rundle’s curve, early initiation of therapy is crucial in diminishing the final severity of disease manifestations.



Figure 8: Eyelid retraction and Dalrymple’s sign. EYELID RETRACTION is the most common presenting sign of TED, and is the result of many factors associated with TED. DALRYMPLE’S SIGN is characterized by the widening of the palpebral fissure. Note the superior and inferior scleral show.



Figure 9: Lagophthalmos typically presents as dry eye, tearing, foreign body sensation, and blurred vision.



Figure 10: Temporal flare. Note the elevation of the temporal portion of the upper eyelid.



Figure 11: Exophthalmos. The globe is displaced anteriorly out of the orbit. This is an ophthalmologic emergency – the cornea is at risk for exposure, and the optic nerve is at risk of irreversible damage.



Figure 12: Hypotropia. Note the vertical misalignment of the eyes in primary gaze and the restrictive movement in upward gaze. This is due to an enlarged and restricted inferior rectus muscle.



Figure 13: Esotropia. Note the horizontal misalignment of the eyes in primary gaze. This is due to an enlarged and restricted medial rectus muscle.

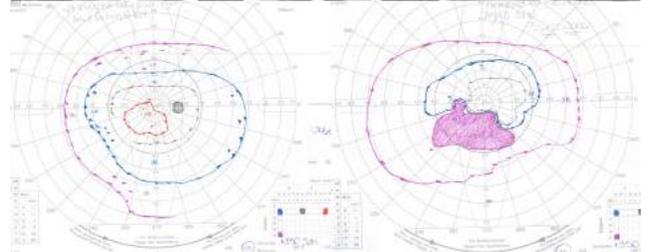
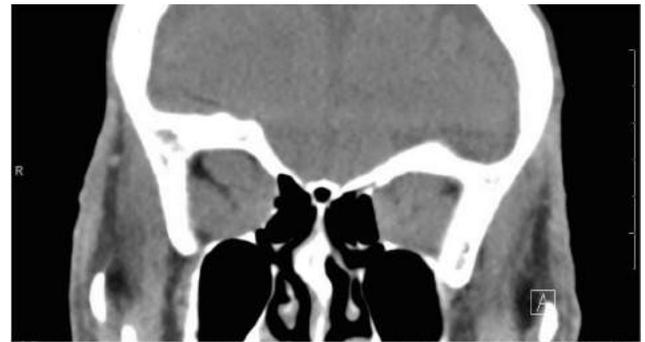
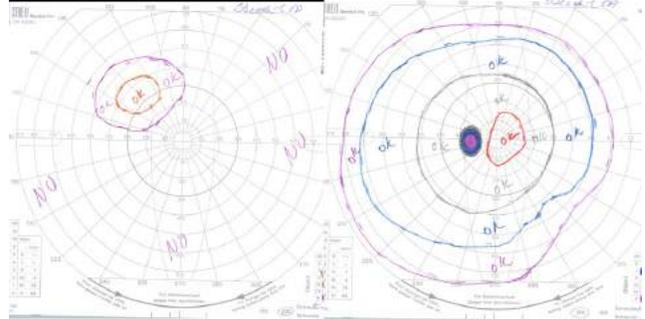


Figure 14: Compressive optic neuropathy. This sequence shows a series of CT scans from patients with compressive optic neuropathy, with their associated visual fields.



Figure 15: Chemosis. Note the swelling within the conjunctiva.



Figure 16: Note the dilation of the nasal and temporal conjunctival vessels.

- Exposure keratopathy (Fig. 17)
 - Secondary sign due to lagophthalmos from eyelid retraction and/or exophthalmos
 - Predisposes the cornea to bacterial infection (keratitis), which can lead to ulceration, endophthalmitis, and perforation
 - Multimodal management (SEE BELOW REGARDING TREATMENT)



Figure 17: Exposure keratopathy. Punctate epithelial erosions (PEE) secondary to exposure keratopathy.

Workup and Diagnosis

Differential Diagnosis

When examining a patient with suspected TED, it is important to have a working differential. The following diagnoses share some similarities to the clinical presentation of TED

- ◆ **Allergic conjunctivitis** – While both can cause excess tearing and conjunctivitis, allergic conjunctivitis tends to be acute in onset from a new exposure, causes itching, can have papillary conjunctival reaction, and is not associated with eyelid retraction or exophthalmos (Fig. 18).
- ◆ **Myasthenia gravis (MG)** – Like TED, MG patients can present with diplopia. However, MG tends to worsen throughout the day and improves after rest while diplopia in TED is not typically variable. Also, MG patients may present with ptosis, which is not associated with TED. Diplopia associated with TED is restrictive in nature, which can be determined by forced duction testing.
- ◆ **Orbital myositis (OM)** – OM causes enlargement and inflammation of the muscle body and tendon insertion, rather than just the muscle body, as is the case in TED patients. Orbital myositis is not generally associated with eyelid retraction. OM is usually unilateral. A bilateral presentation would be unusual for OM, whereas TED can present either way.
- ◆ **Orbital tumors** – Orbital tumors are typically unilateral in presentation and can cause proptosis and a wide variety of motility disturbances depending on location. Orbital tumors are unlikely to cause eyelid retraction or lid lag. (SEE EYE ROUNDS CASE ON CAVERNOUS HEMANGIOMA bit.ly/2Gtaba8)
- ◆ **Carotid-cavernous fistula (CCF)** – Patients may hear pulse-synchronous tinnitus. Presentation may include proptosis, pulsatile exophthalmos, dilated conjunctival and episcleral vessels, elevated intraocular pressure, or enlarged EOM depending on the amount of flow through the fistula and the degree of congestion. A CCF would not cause eyelid retraction or temporal flare. (SEE EYE ROUNDS CASE ON CCF bit.ly/2BITg3U)
- ◆ **Chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia (CPEO)** – CPEO slowly progresses over 5-15 years with most patients presenting with ptosis. All cardinal directions of gaze are affected, with downgaze most likely spared. TED, conversely, typically affects downward and nasal gaze.
- ◆ **Inflammatory orbitopathy**, such as granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA, formerly known as Wegener’s granulomatosis) – GPA typically presents with a mix of upper airway, lower airway, and renal pathologies. Patients may have conjunctivitis, episcleritis, scleritis, and/or uveitis. Other than conjunctivitis, these findings are uncommon in TED patients.
- ◆ **IgG4 disease** – Tumefactive lesions and fibrosis affecting one or more organs characterize this fibro-inflammatory disorder. It is most commonly present in the

biliary tree, retroperitoneum, salivary glands, orbit, and lymph nodes. It is thought to involve both humoral and cell-mediated immunity. Orbital IgG4 disease often involves painless swelling of the extraocular muscles, lacrimal glands, and infraorbital nerves in combination with paranasal sinus disease. IgG4 disease can also present as an inflammatory orbital mass lesion.

Clinical Requirements for Diagnosis

In diagnosing TED, two of the following three clinical requirements must be met [13,14]

- ◆ Laboratory evidence (current or recently-treated immune-related thyroid dysfunction)
 - Graves' disease
 - Hashimoto's thyroiditis
- ◆ Presence of thyroid antibodies without a dysthyroid state: TRA, thyroid-binding inhibitory antibodies, TSI, antimicrosomal antibody
- ◆ Exam findings (1 or more of the following)
 - Unilateral/bilateral eyelid retraction with temporal flare
 - Unilateral/bilateral proptosis
 - Restrictive strabismus
 - Compressive optic neuropathy
 - Fluctuating eyelid edema/erythema
 - Chemosis/caruncular edema
- ◆ Radiographic evidence: unilateral/bilateral fusiform enlargement of inferior rectus, medial rectus, superior rectus/levator complex, or lateral rectus

Disease Stratification

If TED is suspected, one must determine disease activity and severity in order to assess the urgency of treatment.

Disease Activity

In assessing the activity level of TED in a patient, the clinical activity score (CAS) can be used [15].



Figure 18: Allergic conjunctivitis. Note the presence of giant papillae.

- ◆ At the initial visit, patients are given a CAS score of 1-7, one point for each sign or symptom (Fig. 19):
 - Spontaneous orbital pain in the last 4 weeks
 - Gaze evoked orbital pain in the last 4 weeks
 - Eyelid swelling that is considered to be due to active TED
 - Eyelid erythema
 - Conjunctival injection considered to be due to active TED
 - Chemosis
 - Inflammation of caruncle or plica semilunaris
- ◆ At follow-up visits, add the 3 following criteria for a potential CAS score of 10 (one point for each sign or symptom)
 - Increase of ≥ 2 mm in proptosis
 - Decrease in uniocular motility in any one direction of ≥ 8 degrees
 - Decrease in visual acuity equivalent to 1 Snellen line
- ◆ TED is considered "active" if the CAS ≥ 3 at the initial visit or ≥ 4 at follow-up visits [16].

◆ Initial Visit (1 point each)

1. Spontaneous orbital pain in last 4 weeks
2. Gaze-evoked orbital pain in last 4 weeks
3. Eyelid swelling
4. Eyelid erythema
5. Conjunctival injection
6. Chemosis
7. Inflammation of caruncle or plica semilunaris

◆ CAS $\geq 3 \rightarrow$ "Active"

◆ Follow-Up Visit (1 point each)

Criteria 1-7

8. Increase ≥ 2 mm proptosis
9. Decrease in uniocular motility in any one direction of $\geq 8^\circ$
10. Decrease in visual acuity equivalent to 1 Snellen line

◆ CAS $\geq 4 \rightarrow$ "Active"

Figure 19: Clinical Activity Score (CAS).

Disease Severity

In classifying the severity of TED, 3 indices are typically used: NOSPECS, EUGOGO, and VISA.

- ◆ The Werner's NOSPECS measures clinical severity based on presenting features [17]
 - Class 0: No signs or symptoms
 - Class 1: Only signs (upper lid retraction and stare, +/- lid lag)
 - Class 2: Soft tissue involvement (edema of conjunctiva and lids, conjunctival injection)
 - Class 3: Proptosis
 - Class 4: Extraocular muscle involvement (usually with diplopia)
 - Class 5: Corneal involvement (primarily lagophthalmos)
 - Class 6: Sight loss (due to optic nerve involvement)
- ◆ The European Group Of Graves' Orbitopathy (EUGOGO) reports that TED severity can be classified by the following measurements [16]
 - Assess for an RAPD
 - Record lid retraction (Fig. 20)
 - MRD 1 (note superior scleral show)
 - MRD 2 (note inferior scleral show)
 - Note if temporal flare is present
 - Hertel exophthalmometer with intercanthal distance
 - Risk of cornea ulceration
 - Lagophthalmos
 - Bell's Phenomenon (if absent, eye will not rotate up and out with lid closure)
- ◆ EUGOGO has also proposed a classification scheme that grades TED as mild, moderate-to-severe, and sight-threatening based on the following criteria [16]
 - Mild
 - Mild impact on daily life
 - Insufficient to justify immunosuppressive/surgical treatment
 - One or more of the following
 - Minor lid retraction (< 2 mm)
 - Mild soft tissue involvement
 - Exophthalmos < 3 mm above normal for race and gender (~18 mm for Asians, 20 mm for Caucasians, and 22 mm for African Americans)
 - Transient or no diplopia
 - Corneal exposure responsive to lubricants
 - Moderate-to-severe
 - Non-sight-threatening but sufficient impact on life to justify immunosuppression or surgical intervention
 - One or more of the following
 - Lid retraction ≥ 2 mm
 - Moderate or severe soft tissue involvement
 - Exophthalmos ≥ 3 mm above normal for race and gender
 - Transient or constant diplopia

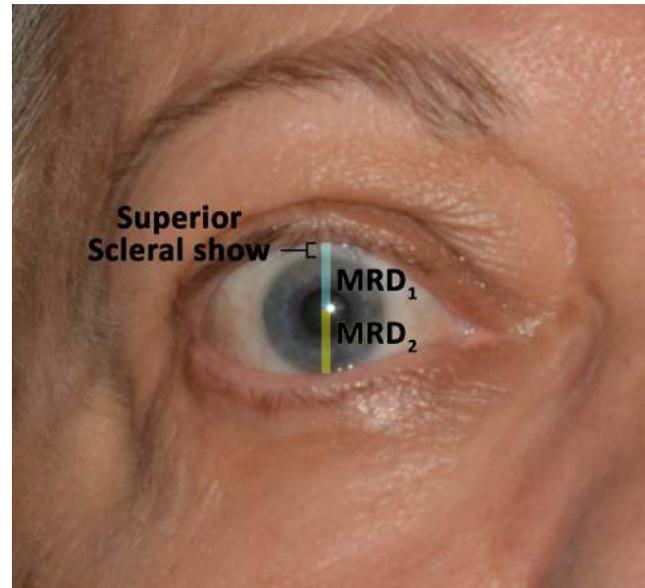


Figure 20: External eye measurements. This patient has lid retraction and superior scleral show. A demonstration of the MRD1 and MRD2 calculations is shown here.

- Sight-threatening
 - TED patients with resultant optic neuropathy and/or corneal breakdown
 - Warrants immediate intervention
- ◆ The VISA analysis (Vision, Inflammation, Strabismus, and Appearance) subjectively and objectively evaluates each category, which is based on the presence and severity of signs and symptoms (Fig. 21).

Treatment

Introduction to Treatment

Management goals include maintenance of general health and well-being, achieving a euthyroid state (without post-treatment hypothyroidism), and promotion of smoking cessation. Both smoking cessation and euthyroidism help prevent further exacerbation and decrease the duration of active disease. From an ophthalmologist's perspective, the primary goal is to preserve visual function, while also preventing exposure keratopathy, correcting diplopia, and improving blink dynamics and cosmesis.

- ◆ Smoking cessation is a key part of treatment.
 - Cigarette smoking
 - Increases severity of disease
 - Decreases the effectiveness of core treatment methods [3]
 - Cyanide, contained in cigarette smoke, is converted in the body to thiocyanate, an anti-thyroid agent
 - inhibits iodine uptake
 - increases iodine excretion
 - inhibits thyroid hormone synthesis

VISA FOLLOW-UP FORM

Date:

Visit #:

Patient Label:

ORBITOPATHY

Symptoms:

THYROID

Symptoms:

Date of birth:

Age:

Gender:

Progress:

Status:

GENERAL

Smoking:

Meds:

Therapy:

Therapy:

QOL: ☹️ ----- 😊

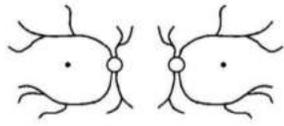
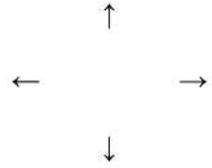
SUBJECTIVE	OBJECTIVE	OD	OS		
<p>VISION</p> <p>Vision: n / abn</p> <p>Color vis: n / abn</p> <p>Progress: s / b / w</p>	<p>Central vision: sc / cc / ph</p> <p>with manifest</p> <p>Color vision plates (HRR) / 14</p> <p>Pupils (afferent defect)</p> <p>Optic nerve: Edema Pallor</p> <p>Macular/ lens pathology</p>	<p>20/___</p> <p>20/___</p> <p>y / n</p> <p>y / n</p> <p>y / n</p> <p>y / n</p>	<p>20/___</p> <p>20/___</p> <p>y / n</p> <p>y / n</p> <p>y / n</p> <p>y / n</p>	<p>Refractions</p> <p>Wearing _____ + _____ X _____</p> <p>_____ + _____ X _____</p> <p>Manifest _____ + _____ X _____</p> <p>_____ + _____ X _____</p> 	
<p>INFLAMMⁿ/ CONGESTION</p> <p>Retrobulbar ache</p> <p>At rest (0-1)</p> <p>With gaze (0-1)</p> <p>Lid swelling: y / n</p> <p>Diurnal variation: (0-1)</p> <p>Progress: s / b / w</p>	<p>Caruncular edema (0-1)</p> <p>Chemosis (0-2)</p> <p>Conjunctival redness (0-1)</p> <p>Lid redness (0-1)</p> <p>Lid edema Upper (0-2)</p> <p>Lower (0-2)</p>			<p>Inflammatory Index (worst eye/eyelid)</p> <p>Caruncular edema (0-1):</p> <p>Chemosis (0-2):</p> <p>Conj redness (0-1):</p> <p>Lid redness (0-1):</p> <p>Lid edema (0-2):</p> <p>Retrobulbar ache (0-2):</p> <p>Diurnal Variation (0-1):</p> <p>Total: (10):</p>	
<p>STRABISMUS/ MOTILITY</p> <p>Diplopia:</p> <p>None (0)</p> <p>With gaze (1)</p> <p>Intermittent (2)</p> <p>Constant (3)</p> <p>Head turn/ tilt: y / n</p> <p>Progress: s / b / w</p>	<p>Ductions (degrees):</p> <p>Restriction > 45°</p> <p>30-45°</p> <p>15-30°</p> <p>< 15°</p>	<p>+</p> <p>0</p> <p>1</p> <p>2</p> <p>3</p>	<p>+</p> <p>0</p> <p>1</p> <p>2</p> <p>3</p>	<p>Prism Measure:</p> 	
<p>APPEARANCE/EXPOSURE</p> <p>Lid stare y / n</p> <p>Light sensitivity y / n</p> <p>Bulging eyes y / n</p> <p>Tearing y / n</p> <p>Ocular irritation y / n</p> <p>Progress: s / b / w</p>	<p>Upper lid position: MRD</p> <p>Scleral show (upper)</p> <p>(lower)</p> <p>Levator function</p> <p>Lagophthalmos</p> <p>Exophthalmometry (Base: mm)</p> <p>Corneal erosions</p> <p>Corneal ulcers</p> <p>IOP -straight</p> <p>-up</p>	<p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mmHg</p> <p>mmHg</p>	<p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mm</p> <p>mmHg</p> <p>mmHg</p>	<p>Fat prolapse and eyelid position:</p> 	
<p>DISEASE GRADE</p> <p>V (optic neuropathy) y / n</p> <p>I (inflammation/congestion) 0-10</p> <p>S (diplopia) 0-3</p> <p>(restriction) 0-3</p> <p>A (appearance/exposure): normal - severe</p>	<p>Grade</p> <p>/ 1</p> <p>/ 10</p> <p>/ 3</p> <p>/ 3</p> <p>/ 3</p>			<p>Progress / Response</p> <p>s / b / w</p>	<p>DISEASE ACTIVITY</p> <p>Active</p> <p>Quiescent</p>
MANAGEMENT		FOLLOW-UP INTERVAL:			

Figure 21: VISA chart

- Smokers are twice as likely to develop Graves' disease when compared to nonsmokers.
- Patients with Graves' disease who smoke are 7.7 times more likely to develop TED when compared to nonsmokers.
- Smoking reduces the effectiveness of TED treatments such as corticosteroids and RAI.

TED is a self-limiting disease, with patients moving from the active to quiescent phase within 1-3 years with a 5-10% risk of recurrence [10]. Treatment for TED should start at the time of the diagnosis, as treatment becomes less effective as the disease progresses from the early, acute, active phase to the chronic quiescent phase.

◆ Rundle's Curve (Fig. 22)

- Early initiation of therapy is crucial in diminishing the final severity of disease manifestations.
- Treatment initiation
 - Treatment initiated during the early months of the active inflammatory phase has been shown to be most effective.
 - Initiation of therapy during the final months of active inflammatory phase has little effect on the final outcome of disease.
- Once the chronic fibrotic stage has set in, treatment options become more limited, i.e. primarily surgical.
- ◆ The majority of patients with TED (~75%) have mild to moderate disease and require primarily supportive care as a means of symptom management.
 - Ocular lubrication, by way of daytime eyedrops and nighttime ophthalmic ointment, is the mainstay of treatment for mild to moderate disease.
 - Topical cyclosporine has been shown to be beneficial in reducing symptoms of ocular surface irritation [10].
 - The following lifestyle modifications are also helpful adjuncts to ocular lubrication
 - Smoking cessation
 - Sodium restriction to reduce water retention and tissue edema
 - Sleeping with the head of the bed elevated to decrease orbital edema
 - Sunglasses to decrease photophobia and feelings of dryness
 - Oral NSAIDs can be used if periocular pain is a prominent complaint [10].
 - In the presence of diplopia, temporary press-on prism lenses (e.g. Fresnel) can be utilized.
 - Once stability in diplopia is achieved, the prism can be ground into glasses.
 - Alternatively, for stable diplopia, the patient may undergo strabismus surgery, assuming the patient has been in the stable phase of TED for several months.
 - Mineral supplementation with selenium, when taken regularly, has been shown to exert a significant

Disease Time Course and Intervention Strategy

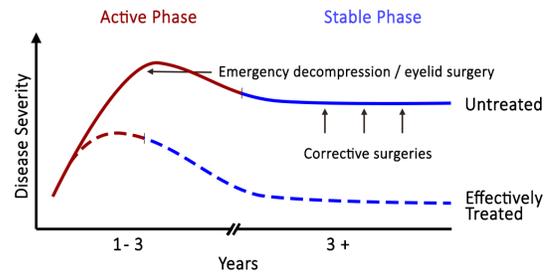


Figure 22: Rundle's curve. As seen in the representation of TED activity over time in the Rundle's curve, early initiation of therapy is crucial in diminishing the final severity of disease manifestations.

benefit in European patients with mild, non-inflammatory orbitopathy, but the benefit of this supplementation in other regions is debated [18].

- ◆ Approximately 20% of patients with TED undergo some type of surgical intervention [19].
 - In one study, 13% of patients with TED had eyelid surgery, 9% strabismus surgery, and 7% orbital decompression [19].
 - As a general guideline, surgery is not advised until a euthyroid state is maintained and the TED has been in the stable phase for at least 6-9 months.
 - Exceptions include visual loss from compressive optic neuropathy or corneal exposure, in which cases urgent surgical intervention is warranted.
 - In order to prevent repeat surgery following recovery from subsequent procedures, surgery for TED occurs in the following order, whenever possible
 - Orbital decompression
 - Strabismus surgery
 - Eyelid surgery

Aside from threatening vision and causing ocular and orbital pain, TED can be disfiguring and emotionally and psychologically taxing for many patients. Waxing and waning symptoms can be frustrating for both patient and provider. Education and reassurance are integral components of patient care. Peer support groups are invaluable for many patients.

Management of Systemic Hyperthyroidism

The following section starts with an overview of managing hyperthyroidism, followed by the different treatment options used in TED. It concludes with a discussion about therapeutic modalities specific to each sign or symptom associated with TED.

- ◆ While the course of TED does not parallel the status of systemic thyroid disease, achieving a euthyroid state is an important part of management.
 - Hyper- or hypothyroidism has been associated with a greater severity score than euthyroid patients.

- Restoration of a euthyroid state by antithyroid drugs has been associated with improvement of TED over several months [20].
- ◆ Oral beta-blockers can be used for symptom control (Fig. 23).
 - They decrease conversion of free T4 to T3.
 - They decrease heart rate, palpitations, anxiety, and heat intolerance.
- ◆ Propylthiouracil and methimazole, thiourea derivatives, are used for thyroid hormone suppression.
 - Remission rates are 30-50% at 12-24 months [21].
 - Relapse and/or hypothyroidism can occur.
 - Thyroidectomy can successfully treat the hyperthyroid state.
 - Nearly half of patients will become hypothyroid following surgery so close monitoring is needed [21].
 - Many studies have shown that post-thyroidectomy hypothyroidism results in worsening progression of TED [22].
 - Consider thyroidectomy in patients who are high risk for severe exacerbations of hyperthyroidism and are refractory to other treatment modalities [10].
- Smokers
- Severe, active TED
- Elevated T3 concentrations
- ◆ Radioactive Iodine (RAI)
 - 80% of patients achieve a hypothyroid state at 6-12 months [21].
 - RAI therapy is known to exacerbate TED in nearly 1/3 of patients undergoing treatment [23].
 - This may be caused by an increased release of TSH-R antigens from the thyroid cells, which enhances the immune response [8].
 - Smokers are more likely to demonstrate worsening following RAI [24].
 - Closely monitor thyroid labs following RAI therapy .
 - “Block and replace” therapy (RAI + methimazole + thyroxine) has been shown to limit post-RAI hypothyroidism [10].
 - RAI with moderate-dose oral prednisone is indicated when the risks of worsening TED outweigh the potential risks of systemic side effects from glucocorticoid therapy [22].

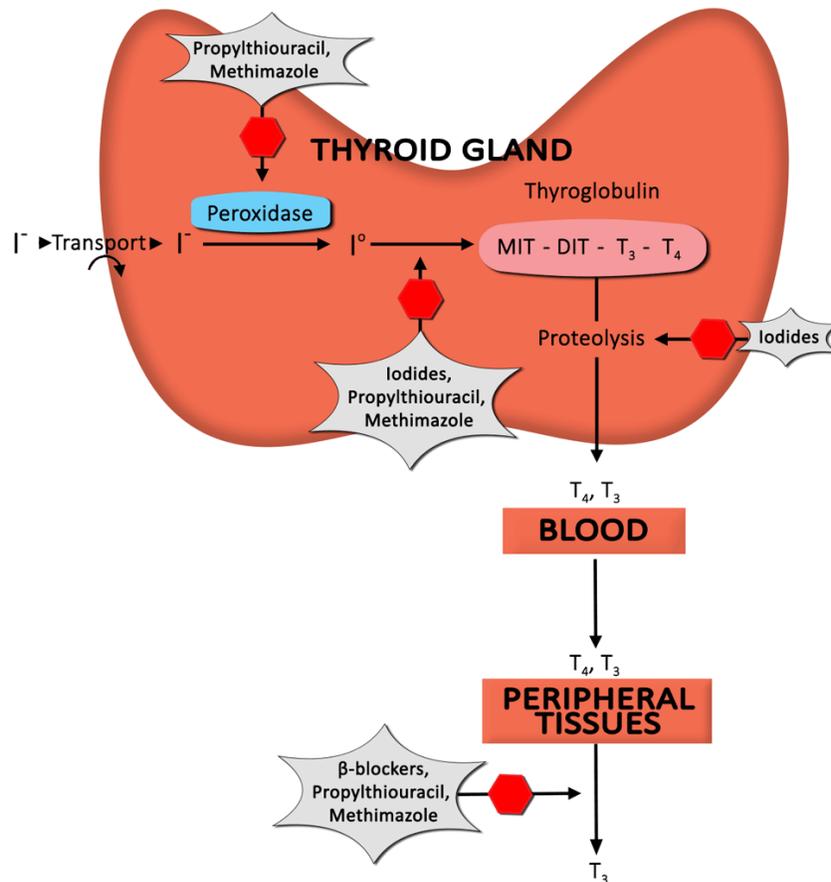


Figure 23: Anti-thyroid drug mechanisms. This diagram depicts the formation of thyroid hormone, as well as the mechanism of action of anti-thyroid drugs to decrease levels of circulating thyroid hormone.

- ◆ Thyroid Storm [22]
 - This hypermetabolic state is triggered by release of excessive thyroid hormone, which can lead to severe hypotension, heart failure, and shock.
 - It is inevitably fatal if untreated.
 - Triggers include stress (i.e. surgery, anesthesia), thyroid surgery, or RAI.
 - To prevent thyrotoxicosis, avoid operating on patients who are currently hyperthyroid.
- Multiple potential side effects, including but not limited to:
 - Cushing’s syndrome
 - Weight gain
 - Increased risk of infection
 - Exacerbation of diabetes mellitus, hypertension, and/or osteoporosis

Overview of Treatment Options

Corticosteroid Therapy

Corticosteroids are a mainstay of treatment in TED. The benefit derived from corticosteroid administration is due to anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive effects. Unfortunately, a significant percentage of patients respond only partially (or not at all), and recurrences upon dose reduction or cessation are not infrequent [19].

- ◆ Oral prednisone[19]
 - This is typically started in high doses (60-100 mg daily).
 - Most effective in treating soft tissue changes and optic neuropathy
 - Usually tapered slowly over a course of several months
 - Multiple studies show a mean effectiveness rate of ~ 60%.
 - Drawbacks include:
 - High rate of ineffectiveness (~ 40%)
 - Need for high doses for an extended period of time
 - Frequent relapses upon dose reduction/therapy cessation

- ◆ Intravenous (IV) corticosteroids [15 ,25]
 - Compared to oral administration, IV is usually better tolerated and more effective (mean effectiveness ~ 70%).
 - Compared to months of treatment with oral prednisone, IV treatment usually lasts 12 weeks (6 weeks – 500 mg once weekly; 6 weeks – 250 mg once weekly), which allows for easy and early detection of “non-responders.”
 - IV decreases the need for additional medical therapy.
 - Additional considerations:
 - If prolonged high-dose treatment is anticipated, treat with calcium, vitamin D, and a proton pump inhibitor (for patients at high risk for gastric ulceration).
 - Incorporate frequent monitoring of serum electrolytes, blood glucose, liver function tests (LFTs), and blood pressure.
 - Patients receiving cumulative doses exceeding 8 g are at risk for hepatic toxicity, electrolyte disturbances, and cardiac arrhythmias [25].

Orbital Radiotherapy

Orbital radiotherapy (ORT) has been used in the management of TED for nearly a century and can be used alone or in conjunction with corticosteroids [26 ,27].

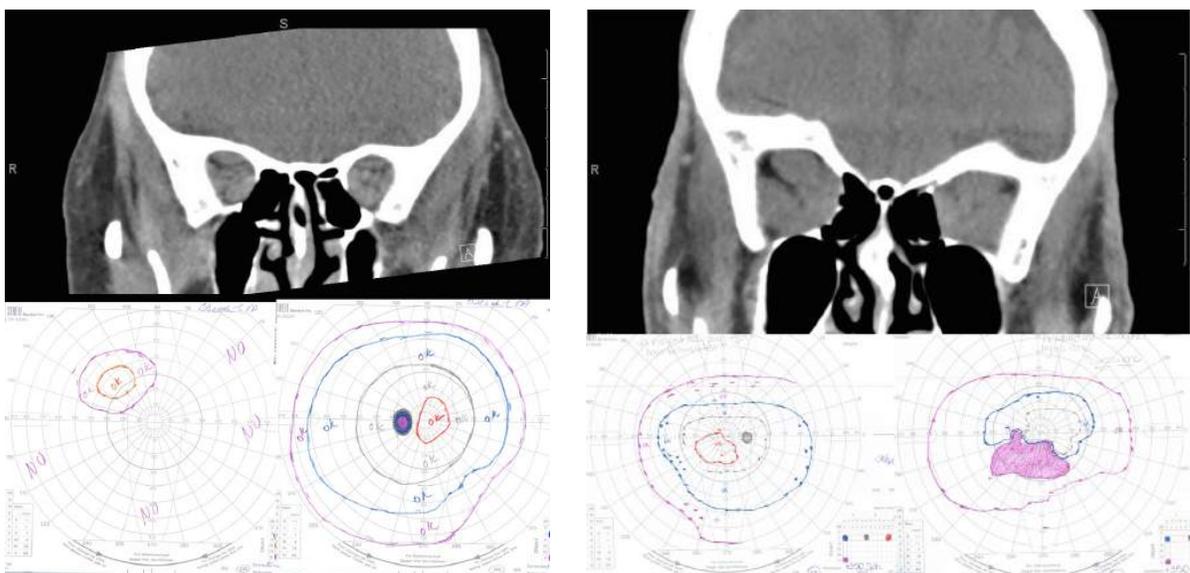


Figure 24: Compressive optic neuropathy. This sequence shows a series of CT scans from patients with compressive optic neuropathy, with their associated visual fields.

- ◆ Mechanisms of action [28]
 - Lymphocytes are temporarily sterilized.
 - Terminal differentiation in orbital fibroblasts is induced.
 - Adipocyte differentiation and fatty hypertrophy are limited.
 - This is more effective in patients < 40 years old who have more orbital fat hypertrophy.
 - Radiation induces death of tissue-bound monocytes.
 - Radiation blunts the immune response at the orbit, reducing inflammation of both the ocular surface and eyelids in ~ 60% of patients [10].
 - ORT has not been shown to have notable effects on proptosis or eyelid retraction.
- ◆ ORT can be used to treat the following sequelae of TED:
 - Compressive optic neuropathy
 - Ocular surface and periorbital tissue inflammation
 - Orbital congestion
 - Strabismus and ocular motility deficits
- ◆ Treatment regimen and effects
 - Use 2000 cGy, administered over 10 treatment sessions, during a 2-week time course [26].
 - A maximum effect occurs around 6 months post-treatment [29].
 - Treatment is associated with a transient exacerbation of periorbital edema, conjunctival injection, and chemosis [29].
- ◆ The role of ORT monotherapy has been controversial due to highly irregular results [26].
 - Effectiveness rates range from 20% - 90% in previously published studies.
 - The most convincing evidence for benefit is found in the treatment of restrictive vertical strabismus.
- ◆ A recent Cochrane review concluded that the combination of corticosteroids + ORT has a more sustained anti-inflammatory effect, leading to a decreased risk of compressive optic neuropathy in active TED patients, when compared to treatment with either corticosteroids or ORT monotherapy [27].
- ◆ Contraindications [29]
 - Patients with underlying microvascular retinopathy (e.g. diabetic or hypertensive retinopathy) have an increased incidence of radiation retinopathy (1-2%).
 - Patients may have increased risk of cataracts.
 - There is a theoretical concern for tumorigenesis, and thus, ORT is typically avoided in patients younger than 35 years.

Selenium [18]

- ◆ When taken regularly for one year, selenium has been shown to exert significant benefits in patients with mild, non-inflammatory orbitopathy.
- ◆ One study showed a benefit from selenium supplementation (100 µg twice daily) in Europe where the soil was selenium deficient.

- ◆ The benefit of selenium supplementation from non-selenium-deficient populations is not known.

Emerging Therapies

- ◆ Azathioprine [30]
 - This is a chemotherapeutic agent that inhibits DNA synthesis.
 - It is currently being studied in a Combined Immunosuppression and Radiotherapy in TED (CIRTED) trial [31].
 - Sporadic case reports have shown a benefit with use of the anti-TNF alpha biologics infliximab and etanercept.
- ◆ Rituximab [32]
 - This targets CD-20 on B-cells, which leads to B-cell depletion in the thyroid gland and decreased TSI production.
 - A recent study showed TED patients with CAS ≥ 4 that received rituximab (1000 mg, IV, twice over a two week interval) showed an average decrease in CAS that ranged from 2.3 to 4.7, with a median decrease ranging from 2.5 to 4.5.
 - The overall efficacy of rituximab therapy is complicated by the variable presentations and course of TED.
- ◆ Teprotumumab
 - Human monoclonal antibody (Graves' Disease IgG – GD-IgG) against the IGF-1-R recently investigated (phase II clinical trial) in patients with active, moderate to severe TED.
 - IGF-1-R has mitogenic and anti-apoptotic functions.
 - GD-IgG interacts directly with IGF-1-R.
 - IGF-1-R is upregulated in TED.
 - Anti-IGF-1-R therapy may interfere with this abnormal signaling pathway present in TED.

Treatment of Emergent Conditions

Optic Neuropathy

Overview (Fig. 24)

- ◆ Optic neuropathy occurs in about 6% of TED patients.
 - Mechanism
 - Inflammation and congestion at the orbital apex are severe enough that the optic nerve and its blood supply become compressed in the confines of the bony orbit.
 - Progressive expansion and congestion of the orbital tissues can lead to further stretching of the optic nerve.
 - Presentation
 - In most cases, vision loss is insidious, progressive, and typically bilateral (usually asymmetric).
 - Dyschromatopsia is an early sign of optic nerve dysfunction.
 - Common visual field deficits are loss of vision or central or diffuse visual field depression.

- The appearance of the optic disc is often unremarkable but can be edematous or atrophic.
- If disease is asymmetric, an RAPD may be present.

Treatment Modalities

◆ Corticosteroid therapy (Oral or IV)

- This is considered first-line therapy for compressive optic neuropathy [33]
 - This may be primary treatment, or a temporizing measure, until surgical decompression can be performed.
 - In non-emergent cases, steroid treatment (100 mg oral, tapering by 10 mg/week, for a total of 12 weeks) has been shown to be as effective as orbital decompression [15].
 - IV methylprednisolone can be used in management of both emergent and non-emergent cases of optic neuropathy.
 - High-dose IV methylprednisolone (830 mg weekly for 6 weeks, followed by 415 mg weekly for 6 weeks) in pulsatile administration is more efficacious than oral corticosteroids [25].
 - When cumulative doses exceed 8 g, measure liver enzymes and test liver function, as fatal hepatotoxicity has been reported [25].

◆ Orbital radiotherapy (ORT)

- This may be an alternative treatment to avoid extensive side effects associated with corticosteroid use [28].
- Numerous studies have demonstrated the effectiveness of ORT [27].
 - Over a 2 week time course, 2000 cGy are administered over 10 treatments.
 - This reduces extraocular muscle width near the orbital apex and may avoid need for urgent surgical decompression.
- There is concern for an initial inflammatory response with ORT, which can worsen compressive optic neuropathy [34].
- Fat may become more fibrotic after radiation, making decompression less effective post-radiation.

◆ Orbital Decompression

- See the following EyeRounds videos
 - Left lateral orbital decompression (04:35) bit.ly/2ESYDj7
 - Left medial orbital decompression (03:43) bit.ly/2okvSkZ
 - Right lateral orbital decompression (03:37) bit.ly/2oem0Km
 - Right medial orbital decompression (01:03) bit.ly/2okOn9d
 - Right orbital floor decompression (01:47) bit.ly/2ETeY2r
- If vision loss is rapid and progressive, surgical orbital decompression may be required to relieve pressure on the optic nerve and its blood supply –

typically after a failed trial of corticosteroids.

- This invasive procedure involves removal of bone and sometimes adipose tissue to provide access to space outside the orbit, which allows excess tissue to decompress from the confined orbit.
- Lateral wall decompression
 - ◆ Partial- or full-thickness inner aspects of the zygomatic bone and greater wing of the sphenoid bone are removed, which is typically performed through a canthotomy with inferior cantholysis.
 - ◆ Potential complications include cerebrospinal fluid leak secondary to dural tear, pulsatile exophthalmos, and oscillopsia [35].
 - Medial wall decompression
 - Segments of the ethmoid bone are removed allowing intraorbital contents to expand into the ethmoid air cells.
 - The lateral wall of the sphenoid bone may be removed as well.
 - The approach may be external or endoscopic.
 - When an external incision is made, it is typically transcaruncular and/or an extension of the orbital floor decompression incision, when applicable.
 - Potential complications
 - Diplopia secondary to alteration of globe position may occur.
 - Medial rectus prolapse into the ethmoid sinus can cause an abduction deficit.
 - Compression of the lesser wing of the sphenoid can cause internal carotid artery laceration or optic nerve damage.
 - Orbital floor decompression
 - This allows for expansion of orbital contents into the maxillary sinus.
 - Decompression may be performed just medial to the infraorbital nerve (largest area with the most benefit in decompressing the optic nerve) or may be both medial and lateral to the infraorbital nerve.
 - The optic strut is often left intact to minimize globe displacement.
 - Caution must be taken to avoid the infraorbital neurovascular bundle, which traverses the infraorbital canal.
 - Decompression is typically performed through a transconjunctival incision with a lateral canthotomy and inferior cantholysis, but a subciliary approach is used as well.
 - Potential complications include diplopia secondary to globe ptosis, supraduction deficit from inferior rectus prolapse, and CN V2 - distribution hypoesthesia.
 - Orbital fat decompression
 - The orbital fat may be removed alone or in conjunction with bony decomposition.
 - Orbital fat decompression has been shown to be especially beneficial in patients who tend to

- have more orbital fat hypertrophy than EOM involvement, which is more common in patients < 40 years old.
- Pre-operative planning with computed tomography (CT) [36]
 - This may help confirm the diagnosis of TED.
 - CT allows for evaluation of the anatomy of the sinuses, cribriform plate, and lateral wall of the orbit.
 - CT also helps assess the potential benefit of fat and bone removal.
- Considerations with orbital decompression surgery
 - Decompression may be of any wall alone or in combination with other walls.
 - The medial wall and orbital floor decompressions are of the most benefit in compressive optic neuropathy but have a slightly higher rate of diplopia post-operatively.
 - The decompression is called “balanced” when the medial wall and lateral wall are included.
 - Studies have shown that the balanced decompression has lower rates of diplopia as compared to decompressions involving the floor.

Globe Subluxation

- ◆ Initial management with digital repositioning [37]
 - If digital repositioning fails, a Desmarres retractor (or if not available, a large-sized paperclip, bent to form a right angle (similar to a laryngoscope)) can be used to navigate between the upper lid margin and superior rectus to allow for proper repositioning.
 - Lateral tarsorrhaphy or orbital decompression surgery may be necessary, if initial managements fail.

Corneal Exposure

- ◆ Patients at high risk for corneal exposure include those with a combination of proptosis, eyelid retraction, lagophthalmos, neurotrophic cornea, and poor Bell’s reflex.
- ◆ Pathogenesis is centered on prolonged exposure of corneal surface, leading to corneal drying, which decreases vision and threatens barrier to infection.
- ◆ Treatment of non-emergent cases includes
 - Environmental modifications
 - Ocular surface lubrication
 - Increasing tear production via immunosuppression (cyclosporine, loteprednol, fluometholone)
 - Decreasing tear evaporation
 - Increasing oil content of tears
 - Omega-3 fatty acids
 - Warm compresses
 - Decreasing surface area for exposure and evaporation with eyelid surgery
 - Lid retraction repair
 - Orbital decompression
 - Lid tarsorrhaphy
 - Decreasing tear outflow (punctal plugs or cautery)

- ◆ Treat emergent cases when corneal integrity is threatened.
 - The cause of the exposure must be corrected, and more aggressive therapy is pursued to provide protection and moisture in the meantime.
 - A bandage contact lens (BCL) or scleral contact lens with concomitant topical antibiotic will protect the cornea from further drying, while also preventing infection.
 - A temporary tarsorrhaphy may be indicated while pursuing other treatment modalities to decrease factors that exacerbate exposure, including
 - Chemosis
 - Proptosis
 - Eyelid retraction
 - Ocular Surface Inflammation

Treatment of Non-Emergent Conditions

Proptosis (see Figure 11)

- ◆ Orbital decompression increases the volume of the bony orbit through removal of orbital bone and adipose tissue and allows a proptotic globe to recess back into its normal confines.
 - It is considered first-line therapy for cases of severe optic nerve compression.
 - Other indications include
 - Globe subluxation
 - Exposure keratopathy
 - Restoration of pre-morbid appearance in patients with residual proptosis following the active stage of TED
 - Because decompression surgery can alter globe positioning, decrease eyelid retraction, and affect extraocular motility, it should precede any extraocular muscle or eyelid surgery.
 - Orbital decompression can reduce proptosis and eyelid retraction [38].
 - See the “**EMERGENT TREATMENT**” section above for more information on orbital decompression.
- ◆ TED affects extraocular muscles in a predictable manner [39].
 - The inferior rectus and medial rectus are most commonly involved.
 - This presents as hypotropia and/or esotropia.
- ◆ Most TED patients with diplopia due to strabismus will not require surgical intervention, as most can be effectively managed with prism spectacles [39].
- ◆ Indications for strabismus surgery [39]
 - Patients may have intractable diplopia in primary gaze or with reading.
 - Abnormal head positioning may be present.
 - The position of the globe may be cosmetically unacceptable.

- ◆ Surgical approach [39]
 - Delay strabismus surgery until disease stability has been demonstrated.
 - Recession of the affected muscles is the most commonly used surgical method.
 - Adjustable sutures are helpful in especially difficult cases.
 - Although diplopia is frequently improved post-operatively, normal ocular motility is infrequently achieved for the following reasons
 - Restrictive nature of myopathy
 - Large muscle recessions
 - Ongoing chronic disease
 - With recession of the inferior rectus muscle, infraduction deficits may result, making the use of bifocals challenging.
- ◆ Extraocular muscle recession can worsen proptosis [40].
 - If orbital decompression is foreseeable, it should be performed prior to strabismus surgery, as orbital decompression can also alter strabismus.
- ◆ Extraocular muscle recession can effect eyelid position [40].
 - Large inferior rectus muscle recession can result in lower eyelid retraction, which is largely due to adherence between the inferior rectus muscle and the capsulopalpebral fascia of the lower eyelid.
 - With superior rectus recession, connection points between the superior rectus and upper eyelid elevators may worsen upper eyelid retraction.
 - Strabismus surgery should be undertaken prior to any corrective eyelid procedures.
- ◆ Botulinum toxin [41]
 - Poor surgical candidates that cannot be treated with prisms may benefit.
 - Restricted extraocular muscles are injected, which temporarily relieves restrictive strabismus and may have some lasting effects.
 - Consider alternative treatment if there is need for recurrent injections, difficulty in precisely delivering the agent within the orbit, or variability of effect on fibrotic extraocular muscles.

Eyelid Retraction (see Fig. 8)

- ◆ The etiology is multifactorial and may include
 - Increased sympathetic tone stimulating Müller's muscle
 - Contraction and/or fibrosis of the levator palpebrae superioris in the upper lid and lower lid retractors in the lower lid
 - Proptosis
 - Scarring between the lacrimal gland and the levator palpebrae superioris

- ◆ Treatment
 - Non-surgical
 - Injection of hyaluronic acid gel fillers
 - Botulinum toxin to levator palpebrae superioris and/or Müller's muscle [41]
 - A temporary measure injected into the levator palpebrae superioris to lower the upper eyelid position
 - Good for poor surgical candidates, patients in the active phase, or patients awaiting stability
 - Surgical
 - Implantation of an eyelid weight into the upper lid (e.g. gold or titanium)
 - Incision and/or recession of one or more of the eyelid retractors
 - Levator palpebrae superioris
 - Müller's muscle
 - Capsulopalpebral fascia
 - Inferior tarsal muscle
 - Full-thickness blepharotomy
 - Insertion of "spacer" material to lengthen the eyelid
 - Ear cartilage
 - Hard palate
 - Sclera
 - Synthetic material
 - Porcine
 - Eyelid contouring [40]
 - Aimed at restoring the natural appearance of the eyelid while minimizing temporal flare
 - Upper eyelid peak: medial edge of the pupil
 - Lower eyelid trough: lateral limbus

References

1. Douglas RS, Gupta S. The pathophysiology of thyroid eye disease: implications for immunotherapy. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2011;22(5):385-390. [PMID 21730841]
2. Bartley GB, Fatourechi V, Kadrmas EF, Jacobsen SJ, Ilstrup DM, Garrity JA, Gorman CA. Clinical features of Graves' ophthalmopathy in an incidence cohort. *Am J Ophthalmol* 1996;121(3):284-290. [PMID 8597271]
3. Krassas GE, Wiersinga W. Smoking and autoimmune thyroid disease: the plot thickens. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2006;154(6):777-780. [PMID 16728534]
4. Kazim M, Goldberg RA, Smith TJ. Insights into the pathogenesis of thyroid-associated orbitopathy: evolving rationale for therapy. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2002;120(3):380-386. [PMID 11879144]
5. Smith TJ, Koumas L, Gagnon A, Bell A, Sempowski GD, Phipps RP, Sorisky A. Orbital fibroblast heterogeneity may determine the clinical presentation of thyroid-associated ophthalmopathy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2002;87(1):385-392. [PMID 11788681]

6. Tsui S, Naik V, Hoa N, Hwang CJ, Afifiyan NF, Sinha Hikim A, Gianoukakis AG, Douglas RS, Smith TJ. Evidence for an association between thyroid-stimulating hormone and insulin-like growth factor 1 receptors: a tale of two antigens implicated in Graves' disease. *J Immunol* 2008;181(6):4397-4405. [PMID 18768899]
7. Naik V, Khadavi N, Naik MN, Hwang C, Goldberg RA, Tsirbas A, Smith TJ, Douglas RS. Biologic therapeutics in thyroid-associated ophthalmopathy: translating disease mechanism into therapy. *Thyroid* 2008;18(9):967-971. [PMID 18713027]
8. Ponto KA, Zang S, Kahaly GJ. The tale of radioiodine and Graves' orbitopathy. *Thyroid* 2010;20(7):785-793. [PMID 20578895]
9. Holds JB, Buchanan AG. Graves orbitopathy. Focal Points: Clinical Modules for Ophthalmologists. Module 11. San Francisco: American Academy of Ophthalmology; 2010.
10. Bartalena L, Marcocci C, Bogazzi F, Manetti L, Tanda ML, Dell'Unto E, Bruno-Bossio G, Nardi M, Bartolomei MP, Lepri A, Rossi G, Martino E, Pinchera A. Relation between therapy for hyperthyroidism and the course of Graves' ophthalmopathy. *N Engl J Med* 1998;338(2):73-78. [PMID 9420337]
11. Talke LM, Murchison AP. Globe Subluxation: Review and Management. *Review of Ophthalmology* 2007;14 (www.reviewofophthalmology.com/article/globe-subluxation-review-and-management)
12. Dolman PJ, Cahill K, Czyz CN, Douglas RS, Elner VM, Feldon S, Kazim M, Lucarelli M, Sivak-Collcott J, Stacey AW, Strianese D, Uddin J. Reliability of estimating ductions in thyroid eye disease: an International Thyroid Eye Disease Society multicenter study. *Ophthalmology* 2012;119(2):382-389. [PMID 21959369]
13. Mourits MP, Prummel MF, Wiersinga WM, Koornneef L. Clinical activity score as a guide in the management of patients with Graves' ophthalmopathy. *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 1997;47(1):9-14. [PMID 9302365]
14. Gerding MN, van der Meer JW, Broenink M, Bakker O, Wiersinga WM, Prummel MF. Association of thyrotrophin receptor antibodies with the clinical features of Graves' ophthalmopathy. *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 2000;52(3):267-271. [PMID 10718823]
15. Bartalena L, Baldeschi L, Dickinson A, Eckstein A, Kendall-Taylor P, Marcocci C, Mourits M, Perros P, Boboridis K, Boschi A, Curro N, Daumerie C, Kahaly GJ, Krassas GE, Lane CM, Lazarus JH, Marino M, Nardi M, Neoh C, Orgiazzi J, Pearce S, Pinchera A, Pitz S, Salvi M, Sivelli P, Stahl M, von Arx G, Wiersinga WM, European Group on Graves O. Consensus statement of the European Group on Graves' orbitopathy (EUGOGO) on management of GO. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2008;158(3):273-285. [PMID 18299459]
16. Stan MN, Garrity JA, Bahn RS. The evaluation and treatment of graves ophthalmopathy. *Med Clin North Am* 2012;96(2):311-328. [PMID 22443978]
17. Cawood T, Moriarty P, O'Shea D. Recent developments in thyroid eye disease. *BMJ* 2004;329(7462):385-390. [PMID 15310608]
18. Marcocci C, Kahaly GJ, Krassas GE, Bartalena L, Prummel M, Stahl M, Altea MA, Nardi M, Pitz S, Boboridis K, Sivelli P, von Arx G, Mourits MP, Baldeschi L, Bencivelli W, Wiersinga W, European Group on Graves O. Selenium and the course of mild Graves' orbitopathy. *N Engl J Med* 2011;364(20):1920-1931. [PMID 21591944]
19. Bartalena L, Pinchera A, Marcocci C. Management of Graves' ophthalmopathy: reality and perspectives. *Endocr Rev* 2000;21(2):168-199. [PMID 10782363]
20. Prummel MF, et al. Amelioration of eye changes of Graves' ophthalmopathy by achieving euthyroidism. *Acta Endocrinology (Copenhagen)* 1989;121 (suppl 2):185-189
21. Kronenberg HM, Melmed S, Polonsky KS, Larsen PR, editors. *Williams Textbook of Endocrinology*. 11th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier/Saunders, 2008.
22. Bahn RS, Burch HB, Cooper DS, Garber JR, Greenlee MC, Klein I, Laurberg P, McDougall IR, Montori VM, Rivkees SA, Ross DS, Sosa JA, Stan MN, American Thyroid Association, American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists. Hyperthyroidism and other causes of thyrotoxicosis: management guidelines of the American Thyroid Association and American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists. *Thyroid* 2011;21(6):593-646. [PMID 21510801]
23. Stan MN, Durski JM, Brito JP, Bhagra S, Thapa P, Bahn RS. Cohort study on radioactive iodine-induced hypothyroidism: implications for Graves' ophthalmopathy and optimal timing for thyroid hormone assessment. *Thyroid* 2013;23(5):620-625. [PMID 23205939]
24. Eckstein A, Quadbeck B, Mueller G, Rettenmeier AW, Hoermann R, Mann K, Steuhl P, Esser J. Impact of smoking on the response to treatment of thyroid associated ophthalmopathy. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2003;87(6):773-776. [PMID 12770979]
25. Vannucchi G, Covelli D, Campi I, Origo D, Curro N, Cirello V, Dazzi D, Beck-Peccoz P, Salvi M. The therapeutic outcome to intravenous steroid therapy for active Graves' orbitopathy is influenced by the time of response but not polymorphisms of the glucocorticoid receptor. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2014;170(1):55-61. [PMID 24128430]
26. Rajendram R, Bunce C, Lee RW, Morley AM. Orbital radiotherapy for adult thyroid eye disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012;10.1002/14651858.CD007114. pub2(7):CD007114. [PMID 22786503]
27. Shams PN, Ma R, Pickles T, Rootman J, Dolman PJ. Reduced risk of compressive optic neuropathy using orbital radiotherapy in patients with active thyroid eye disease. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2014;157(6):1299-1305. [PMID 24582992]
28. Kazim M. Perspective--Part II: radiotherapy for Graves Orbitopathy: the Columbia University experience.

- Ophthal Plast Reconstr Surg 2002;18(3):173-174. [PMID 12021645]
29. Wakelkamp IM, Tan H, Saeed P, Schlingemann RO, Verbraak FD, Blank LE, Prummel MF, Wiersinga WM. Orbital irradiation for Graves' ophthalmopathy: Is it safe? A long-term follow-up study. *Ophthalmology* 2004;111(8):1557-1562. [PMID 15288988]
 30. Stan MN, Garrity JA, Carranza Leon BG, Prabin T, Bradley EA, Bahn RS. Randomized controlled trial of rituximab in patients with Graves' orbitopathy. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2015;100(2):432-441. [PMID 25343233]
 31. Rajendram R, Lee RW, Potts MJ, Rose GE, Jain R, Olver JM, Bremner F, Hurel S, Cook A, Gattamaneni R, Tomlinson M, Plowman N, Bunce C, Hollinghurst SP, Kingston L, Jackson S, Dick AD, Rumsey N, Morris OC, Dayan CM, Uddin JM. Protocol for the combined immunosuppression & radiotherapy in thyroid eye disease (CIRTED) trial: a multi-centre, double-masked, factorial randomised controlled trial. *Trials* 2008;9:6. [PMID 18237441]
 32. Silkiss RZ, Reier A, Coleman M, Lauer SA. Rituximab for thyroid eye disease. *Ophthal Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010;26(5):310-314. [PMID 20562667]
 33. Wakelkamp IM, Baldeschi L, Saeed P, Mourits MP, Prummel MF, Wiersinga WM. Surgical or medical decompression as a first-line treatment of optic neuropathy in Graves' ophthalmopathy? A randomized controlled trial. *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 2005;63(3):323-328. [PMID 16117821]
 34. Prummel MF, Mourits MP, Blank L, Berghout A, Koornneef L, Wiersinga WM. Randomized double-blind trial of prednisone versus radiotherapy in Graves' ophthalmopathy. *Lancet* 1993;342(8877):949-954. [PMID 8105213]
 35. Fayers T, Barker LE, Verity DH, Rose GE. Oscillopsia after lateral wall orbital decompression. *Ophthalmology* 2013;120(9):1920-1923. [PMID 23618229]
 36. Trokel S, Kazim M, Moore S. Orbital fat removal. Decompression for Graves orbitopathy. *Ophthalmology* 1993;100(5):674-682. [PMID 8493010]
 37. Tse DT. A simple maneuver to reposit a subluxed globe. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2000;118(3):410-411. [PMID 10721966]
 38. Chang EL, Bernardino CR, Rubin PA. Normalization of upper eyelid height and contour after bony decompression in thyroid-related ophthalmopathy: a digital image analysis. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2004;122(12):1882-1885. [PMID 15596598]
 39. Thomas SM, Cruz OA. Comparison of two different surgical techniques for the treatment of strabismus in dysthyroid ophthalmopathy. *J AAPOS* 2007;11(3):258-261. [PMID 17572340]
 40. Nerad JA. *Oculoplastic Surgery: The Requisites in Ophthalmology*. St. Louis, MO: Mosby, 2001.
 41. Morgenstern KE, Evanchan J, Foster JA, Cahill KV, Burns JA, Holck DE, Perry JD, Wulc AE. Botulinum toxin type a for dysthyroid upper eyelid retraction. *Ophthal Plast Reconstr Surg* 2004;20(3):181-185. [PMID 15167723]

Citing this article

Liaboe CA, Clark TJ, Shriver EM, Carter KD. Thyroid Eye Disease: An Introductory Tutorial and Overview of Disease. EyeRounds.org. posted November 18, 2016; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/thyroid-eye-disease/

Nov 18, 2016

Nasolacrimal Stents: An Introductory Guide

Aaron M. Ricca, MD; Allison K. Kim, BS; Harinderpal S. Chahal, MD; Erin M. Shriver, MD, FACS

posted January 29, 2018

See related videos at EyeRounds.org/video/plastics/index.htm#lacrimal

Introduction

Nasolacrimal stents are small diameter tubes placed within the nasolacrimal system to maintain patency. The first described stent was made of silver wire and used by Graue in 1932.[1] Since that time, various materials have been used, including silk, nylon, polyethylene, and polypropylene.[2] Today, the tubes are typically composed of silicone, or another similar semi-rigid yet flexible material with an open central lumen. Intubation of the nasolacrimal system is generally done temporarily, with stents remaining in place for several months. In rare instances, however, intubation may be long term.[3] Nasolacrimal tubes are used primarily in cases of obstruction or laceration of one or more parts of the tear drainage system.[4]

The differential diagnosis of nasolacrimal obstruction is broad and includes trauma, infection, malignancy, thermal injury, chemotherapy, radiation, and iatrogenic causes.[3] Regardless of the specific etiology, patients with nasolacrimal obstruction typically present with epiphora, an

overflow of tears onto the cheek due to improper drainage through the nasolacrimal system.

Anatomy of the Nasolacrimal System

Normal tear drainage occurs with an intact nasolacrimal drainage system and a functioning lacrimal pump (Figure 1). Tears exit the ocular surface via the upper and lower puncta. They then enter the superior and inferior canaliculi, which coalesce to form a common canaliculus in 90% of people.[3] At the junction of the common canaliculus and the lacrimal sac is the valve of Rosenmueller, a small fold of mucous membrane. The sac narrows inferiorly, becoming the nasolacrimal duct, which opens beneath the inferior turbinate and into the inferior meatus of the nose. The valve of Hasner, located at the distal end of the nasolacrimal duct, prevents retrograde reflux of air, mucous, and food particles from the nose into the eye.

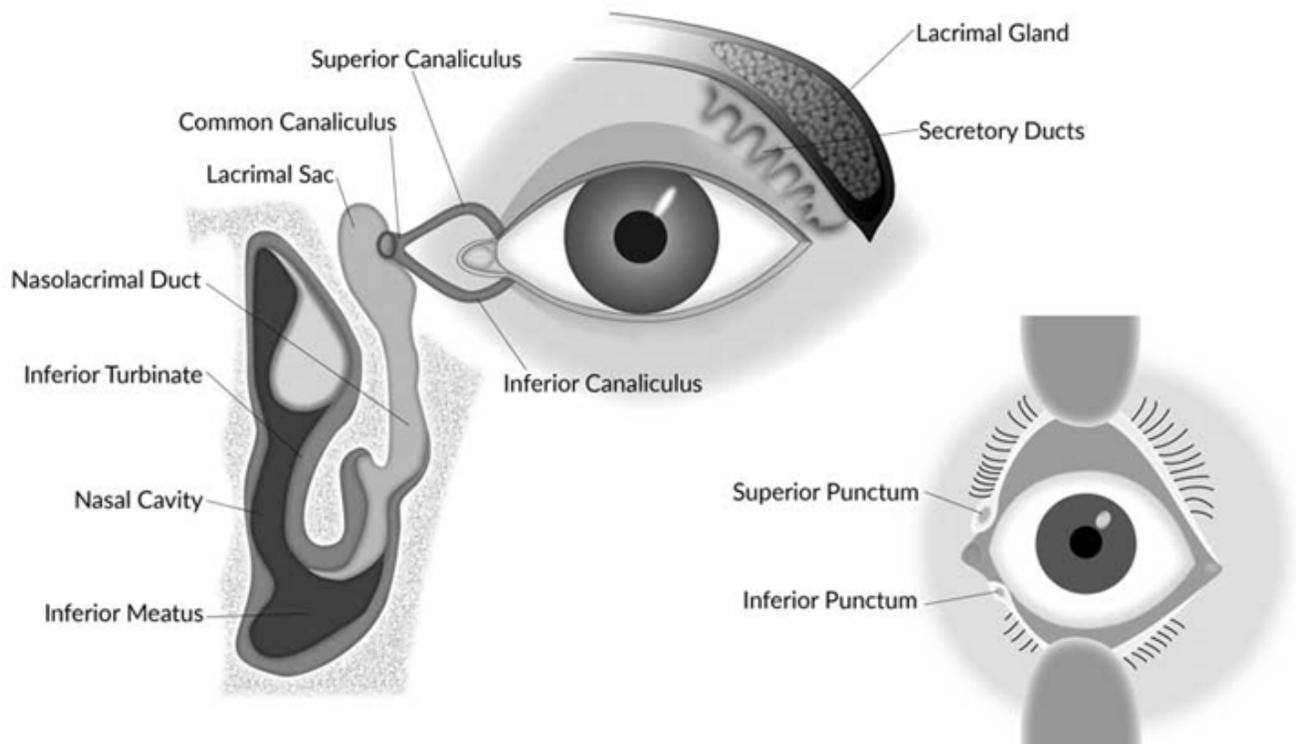


Figure 1. The nasolacrimal drainage system. Vaughan & Asbury's General Ophthalmology, 18ed. Chapter 1. "Anatomy & Embryology of the Eye" - Modified figure used with permission

Obstruction along any of the following sections of the nasolacrimal drainage system may be an indication for intubation:

1. Punctum (superior or inferior)
2. Proximal canaliculus (partial obstruction of the superior canaliculus, inferior canaliculus, or both)
3. Common canaliculus
4. Lacrimal sac
5. Nasolacrimal duct

Blockage of flow anywhere in the system can be idiopathic or secondary to numerous causes including infectious, malignant, traumatic, autoimmune or other inflammatory disorders. One of the most common indications for intubation is post-surgical, such as in a dacryocystorhinostomy to maintain a patent osteotomy.[5,6] This procedure was first described by Lester Jones in 1962 and has since had numerous advancements in techniques and materials.[7,8]

Types of Stents

Canalicular stents can be organized based on the different parts of the nasolacrimal drainage system they intubate. The two main divisions of stents are bicanalicular versus monocalicular. Bicanalicular stents pass through both the upper and lower canaliculus and typically create a closed circuit.[9] They can intubate the upper and lower canaliculi connecting via the common canaliculus or the lacrimal sac (Figure 2a). They can also intubate the entire nasolacrimal drainage system, including the lacrimal sac and nasolacrimal duct with the circuit being open or

closed in the nose (Figure 2b). Monocalicular stents do not provide a closed loop system, only intubating either the upper or lower canaliculus[4] (Figure 2c). A surgical procedure can create a new passageway for stents to be placed into the nose (Figure 2d) or completely bypass the entire canalicular system (Figure 2e). Several examples of both bicanalicular and monocalicular stents are presented below. This list is by no means meant to be exhaustive, as there are numerous types of both bicanalicular and monocalicular stents currently available on the market. Instead, this is merely representative of the major categories of stents currently utilized at the time of publication.

1. Bicanalicular Stents

Stenting of upper and lower canaliculi

Crawford stent. Involves the entire nasolacrimal drainage system (Figure 2a)

The Crawford stent is a bicanalicular stent attached to metal probes with bulbs on the distal ends of the probes. The probes and attached stents are passed through the superior and inferior canaliculi and retrieved in the nose via a retrieval hook or groove director that engage the bulbous tip of the probe (Figure 3b). The stents can be a full silicone rod or silicone tubing with an inner silk suture. The probes are subsequently cut and the stents are tied in the nose. When the stent contains a silk suture, the stent is stripped from the suture at the ends, and the silk is tied creating a loop of stent. This suture is barely visible once the stent is in place as the suture is white. To reduce risk of stent prolapse, some surgeons decrease the length of

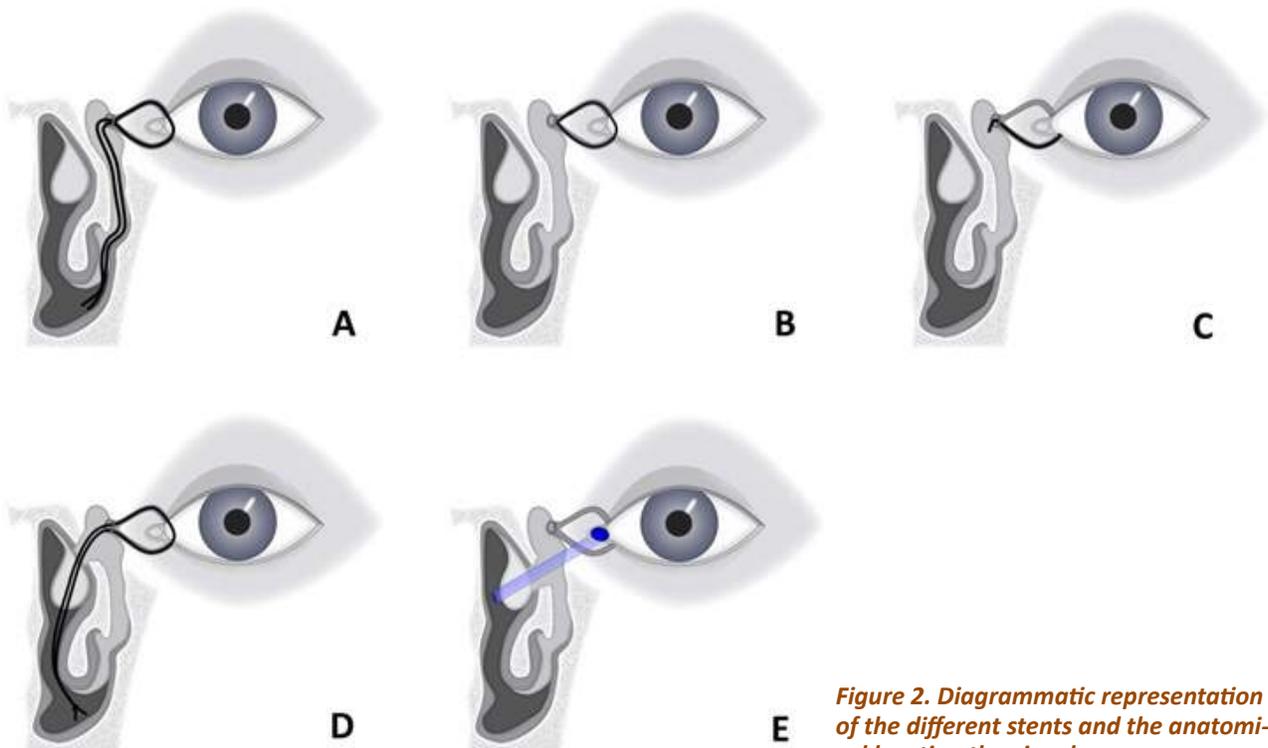


Figure 2. Diagrammatic representation of the different stents and the anatomical location they involve

the stent loop with a ligating suture around the loop within the nose. The stent is either left free-floating in the nasal cavity or fixated with a suture to the mucosa of the lateral nasal wall. The small silicone stent passing between the upper and lower puncta is visualized in Figure 3a below. This was placed after a dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR) from an external approach, as is evident by the incision. In this procedure, a surgical opening is created between the lacrimal sac and the nasopharynx allowing for passage of the stent (Figure 2d).

Ritleng Stent. Involves the entire canalicular system (Figure 2a)

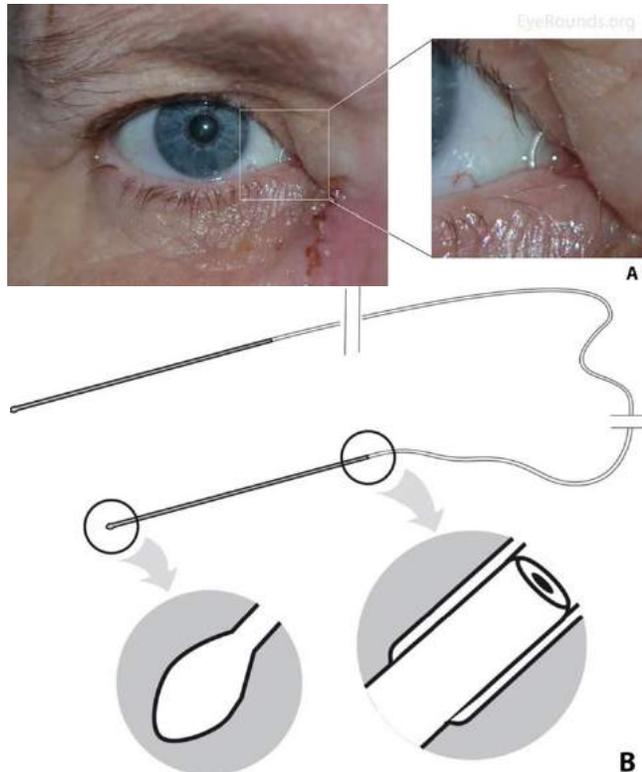


Figure 3. (A) Silicone tubing of the Crawford stent connecting the upper and lower puncta and a healing incision from DCR. (B) Diagram of Crawford stent attached to metal probe, compliments of FCI Ophthalmics

Designed by Dr. P. Ritleng, this system utilizes an introducer with a hollow lumen and stylette. The introducer, loaded with the stylette for rigidity, is used to enter the nasolacrimal system. Once inside, the stylette is removed and one end of a bicanalicular stent is advanced through the hollow lumen of the tube.[1] The procedure is repeated via the opposite punctum, and the stents are tied in the nose. The Ritleng stent is the bicanalicular stent of choice for some surgeons because the design minimizes manipulation inside the nose.

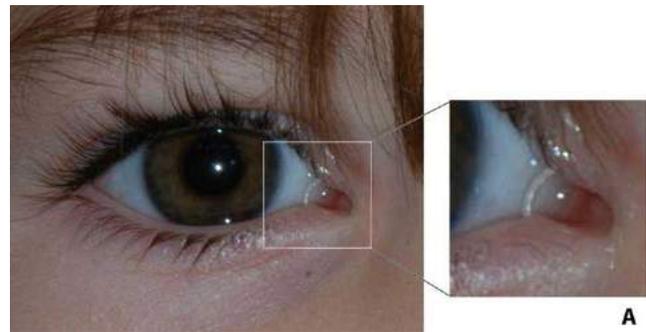


Figure 4. (A) Silicone tubing of the Ritleng stent connecting the upper and lower puncta. (B) Diagram of stent with stylette, compliments of FCI Ophthalmics

Pigtail/Donut stent. Involves the upper, lower, and common canaliculi (Figure 2b)

This stent is used for bicanalicular intubation. It is commonly used in traumatic canalicular laceration repairs where the patency of the nasolacrimal duct remains intact. One end of the pigtail-shaped probe is designed for insertion through the upper canalicular system, while the opposite end is designed for insertion through the lower canalicular system. The probe is passed through one puncta and rotated, following the natural curvature of can-



Figure 5. Pigtail probe used to pass the guide-wire suture through the canalicular system. Image compliments of Indiamart (www.indiamart.com/proddetail/lacrimal-pigtail-probe-14549996330.html)

alicular system, then retrieved via the opposite punctum. A small islet at the tip of the probe facilitates passage of a guide-wire suture (we prefer a 6-0 nylon suture) through the canalicular system. A piece of hollow silicone tubing, cut to approximately 25 mm in adults, is then passed over the guide wire to successfully intubate the canalicular system. The suture is then cut and tied and the stent rotated to bury the knot. When viewing only the stent between

the puncta, one can distinguish between a Crawford and a pigtail stent by the presence or absence of a black nylon or blue prolene suture within the stent lumen vs no suture or a white silk suture in the Crawford stent (Figure 6).

Kaneka Lacriflow stent. Involves the entire nasolacrimal system (Figure 2a)

The Kaneka Lacriflow stent is a new system that was approved for bicanalicular intubation by the FDA in 2012. [10] The stent is made of a central thin intra-canalicular portion with larger diameter tubing at either end that intubates the lacrimal sac and duct. The ends are attached to stainless steel bougies allowing for insertion (Figure 7). Once placed, the ends of the stent reside under the inferior turbinate without suture fixation. The benefit is that the stent is self-retaining with minimal intranasal manipulation allowing for placement under local anesthetic.

2. Monocanalicular Stents

Stenting of upper or lower canaliculi

Monoka Stent. Involves a single canaliculus (Figure 2c)

The Monoka silicone stent is anchored at the punctum by a plug/cap on one end. No suturing is necessary to keep it in place, although some surgeons prefer to secure the stent to the eyelid with a suture through the lip of the stent. This type of stent is used to treat nasolacrimal duct obstructions, canalicular stenosis, and it can be used for canalicular lacerations.[1]

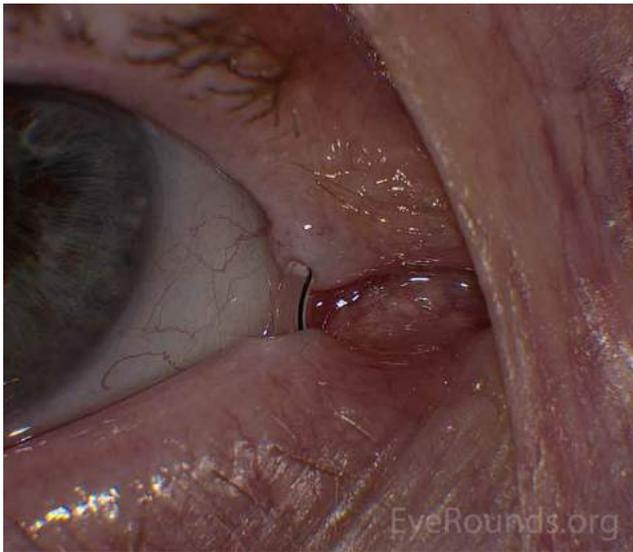


Figure 6. Pigtail stent with a black nylon suture visible within the stent lumen

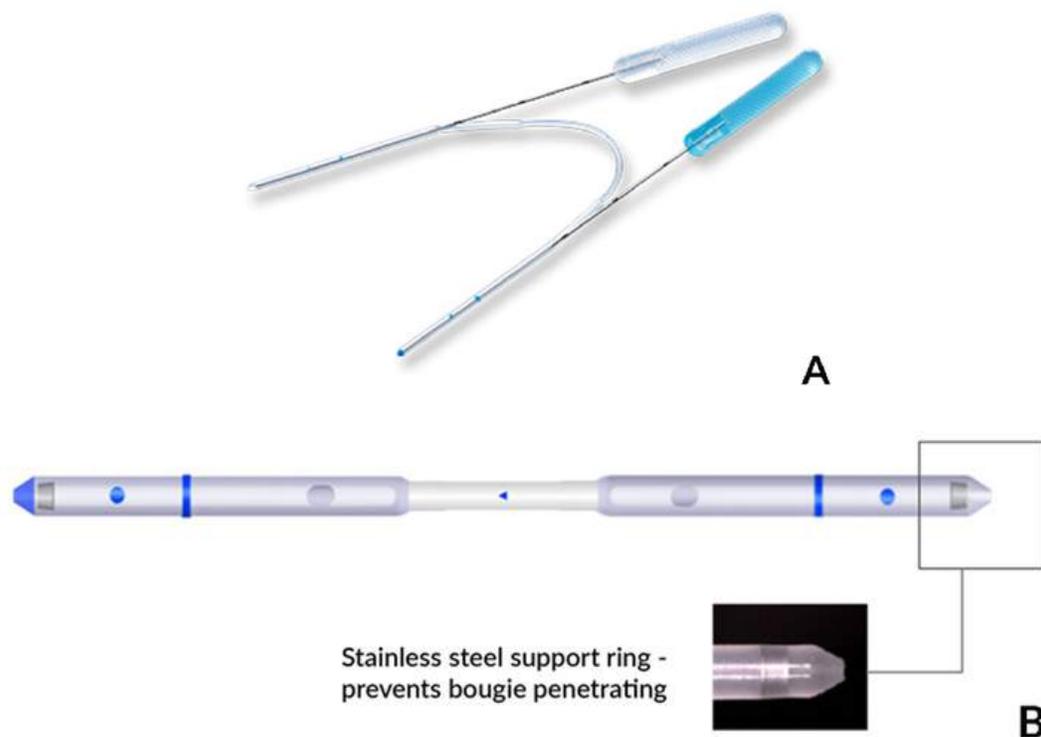


Figure 7. (A) Kaneka Lacriflow stent with attached bougies, (B) Schematic of the stent demonstrating variable diameter and openings in the system [10], images compliments of Kaneka Pharma America, Kaneka-eye.com



Figure 9. (A) Several different sizes of StopLoss Jones tubes. Image compliments of Lester Jones Tubes, www.lesterjonestube.com (B) Jones tube in place

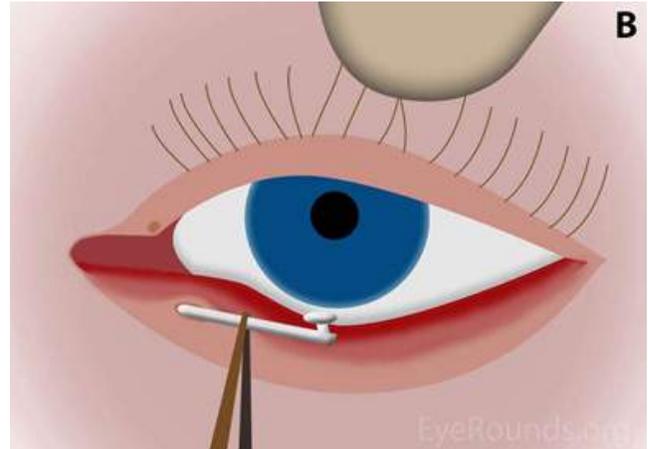


Figure 8. (A) Mini Monoka stent over a patient's eyelids prior to insertion[1]. (B) Diagram demonstrating insertion of the stent into the inferior punctum.

The mini Monoka stent is a smaller version and is used to treat lacerations or obstructions that occur in the canaliculus. Like the full-size version, it is anchored at the punctum of the eye by a plug on the end of the stent.[1]

Jones Tube. Does not involve the canaliculi

The Jones tube is a Pyrex glass tube that is used to bypass an obstruction of the canalicular system in order to drain tears from the eye. It is placed from the conjunctival cul-de-sac through a surgically created bony ostium, and exits into the nose (Figure 2e).[6] It can be secured into place with sutures on the conjunctival end of the tube (Figure 9b). Some Jones tubes have a flexible silicone internal flange to resist extrusion.[11]

Stent removal

The techniques for stent removal are individualized depending on the type of stent utilized. Crawford stents can be removed from either an endonasal approach or from the punctum. The endonasal approach is preferred to minimize risk of the stent breaking on removal. For the endonasal approach, the patient is asked to blow his or her nose with the head down. Once the nasal passages are cleared, the location of the stent is found within the nose,

and the knot is held in place while the stent is then cut at the exposed portion between the puncta. The knot is then pulled out the nose and the cut ends of the stent freely follow, exiting the canalicular system. The approach for removing the stent from the punctum is typically used when the stent is not visualized in the nose and the stent loop is free and able to be rotated. A drop of proparacaine is placed in the ipsilateral eye. A muscle hook, finger, or needle driver is used to grasp and prolapse the stent. The stent is then rotated until the knot is visualized with fingers, forceps, or needle drivers. Once the knot is visualized, the stent is removed taking care to hold onto the knot portion of the stent so that the part of the stent without the knot is pulled through the canaliculi.

Ritleng stents are removed in a similar fashion to Crawford stents. Pigtail stents are rotated so that the knot is externalized out a punctum, the suture is cut at the knot, and the stent and suture are pulled free. The Kaneka Lacriflow stent is removed by simply pulling on the exposed stent between the puncta. Monoka stents are removed by cutting any sutures that hold the stent in place and then pulling the stent out of the punctum with forceps. Jones tubes are removed by cutting the suture that is wrapped around the tube (if one is present) and then pulling out the tube with forceps.

Complications

While rare, placement of nasolacrimal stents can result in the following complications:

1. **Prolapse of the stent:** In some cases, the stent may prolapse from its position in the medial canthus resulting in a bothersome loop of stent material protruding from the puncta. In some cases the stent can be repositioned, though stent removal may be required. A temporary fix for this complication is to tape the prolapsed loop of stent to the side of the nose.
2. **Damage to the puncta:** Excess tension from stents may result in distortion or damage to the puncta.
3. **Granuloma formation**
4. **Trauma to the canalicular system with creation of a false passage:** This may be caused by probing of the canalicular system prior to stent placement or by the metal portion of the stent on insertion.
5. **Infection of the nasolacrimal drainage system:** Infection has been recently linked to biofilm production from organisms such as nontuberculous mycobacteria. [12]



Figure 10. Various amounts of Crawford stent prolapse, (A) mild, (B) moderate, and (C) severe.

References

1. Singh M. Lacrimal Stents and Intubation Systems: An Insight. *Delhi Journal of Ophthalmology* 2015;26(1):14-19.
2. Henderson JW. Management of strictures of the lacrimal canaliculi with polyethylene tubes. *Arch Ophthalmol* 1950;44(2):198-203. PubMed.gov/15433670
3. Nerad JA. *Oculoplastic surgery (the requisites in ophthalmology)*. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.
4. Zadeng Z, Singh M, Singh U. Role of Lacrimal Canalicular Trephination and Mini-Monoka Stent in the Management of Idiopathic Distal Canalicular Obstructions: Our Experience of 23 Cases. *Asia Pac J Ophthalmol (Phila)* 2014;3(1):27-31. PubMed.gov/26107304
5. Doucet TW, Hurwitz JJ. Canaliculodacryocystorhinostomy in the treatment of canalicular obstruction. *Arch Ophthalmol* 1982;100(2):306-309. PubMed.gov/7065950
6. Devoto MH, Bernardini FP, de Conciliis C. Minimally invasive conjunctivodacryocystorhinostomy with Jones tube. *Ophthalm Plast Reconstr Surg* 2006;22(4):253-255. PubMed.gov/16855494
7. Athanasiov PA, Madge S, Kakizaki H, Selva D. A review of bypass tubes for proximal lacrimal drainage obstruction. *Surv Ophthalmol* 2011;56(3):252-266. PubMed.gov/21501738
8. Jones LT. The cure of epiphora due to canalicular disorders, trauma and surgical failures on the lacrimal passages. *Trans Am Acad Ophthalmol Otolaryngol* 1962;66:506-524. PubMed.gov/14452301
9. Liarakos VS, Boboridis KG, Mavrikakis E, Mavrikakis I. Management of canalicular obstructions. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2009;20(5):395-400. PubMed.gov/19587600
10. Silbert DI. Success rate of placement of a bicanalicular stent for partial nasolacrimal obstruction in adults under local, monitored anesthesia care and general anesthesia. *Saudi J Ophthalmol* 2017;31(3):140-144. pubmed.gov/28860910
11. Jones tubes - what are they, how do they work and what's the right tube for you? . [Online publication]: Lester Jones Tubes, 2013. [Last rev. on 10/28/2017; accessed, www.lesterjonestube.com/].
12. Samimi DB, Ediriwickrema LS, Bielory BP, Miller D, Lee W, Johnson TE. Microbiology and Biofilm Trends of Silicone Lacrimal Implants: Comparing Infected Versus Routinely Removed Stents. *Ophthalm Plast Reconstr Surg* 2016;32(6):452-457. PubMed.gov/26588208

Citing this article

Ricca AM, Kim AK, Chahal HS, Shriver EM. Nasolacrimal Stents: An Introductory Guide. *EyeRounds.org*. posted January 29, 2018; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/Stents/

last updated: 1/29/2018

Retrobulbar Block, Peribulbar Block, and Common Nerve Blocks Used by Ophthalmologists

Sudeep Pramanik, MD MBA, MD and Andrew Doan, MD, PhD

Illustrations by Sudeep Pramanik, MD

Edited and updated by Thomas A Oetting, MD, and Thomas A Weingeist, MD, PhD

February 27, 2005

ADMINISTERING LOCAL NERVE BLOCKS

The most common local anesthetic mixture is 2% lidocaine with 1:100,000 epinephrine to provide some hemoestasis. Addition of 0.5% bupivacaine will provide longer anesthesia (~6-8 hours) for lengthy procedures. The following diagrams illustrate common local nerve blocks used in ophthalmology.

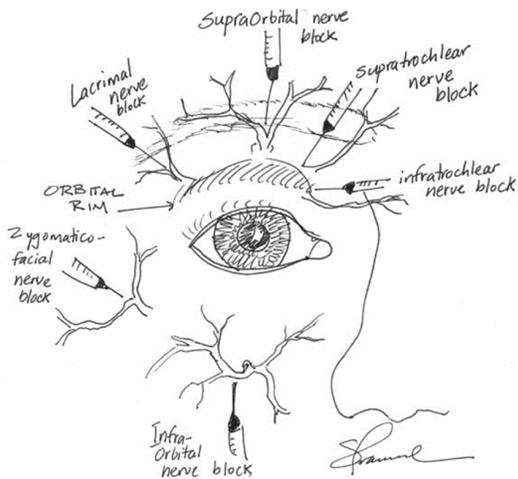


Diagram 1: Common Periorbital Nerve Blocks

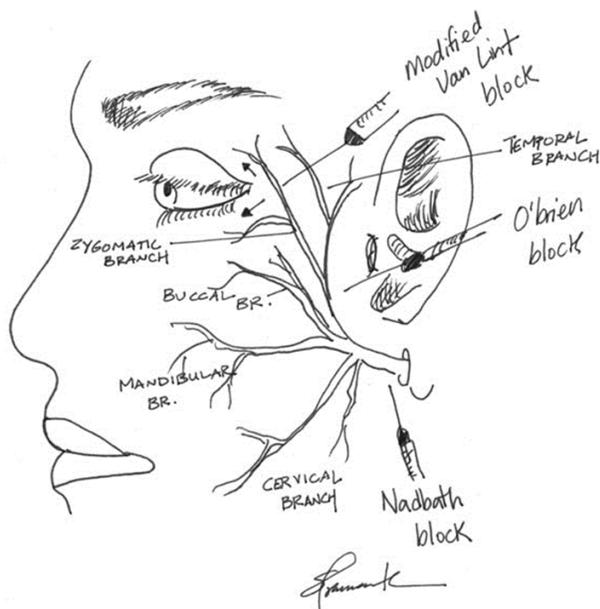


Diagram 2: Common Facial Nerve Blocks

ADMINISTERING THE RETROBULBAR BLOCK

Retrobulbar blocks are useful methods of achieving anesthesia for intraocular and orbital surgeries. Blocks are good alternatives to general anesthesia when general anesthesia is undesirable or contraindicated.

There are many techniques to administer a retrobulbar block. The method described here is what I prefer. Depending on the type of anesthetic, a block may last over four hours with a mixture of lidocaine 1% and bupivacaine 0.375%. Addition of hyaluronidase to the anesthetic mix improves penetration of anesthesia [1]. Clean the lower lid with an alcohol wipe.

- ◆ Have the patient look straight ahead.
- ◆ Use a 5 cc syringe and a 23 gauge, 1.5 inch flat grind needle.
- ◆ Start 2/3 lateral along the inferior orbital rim (inferior to the temporal limbus) with the needle tip pointing perpendicular to the plane of the patient's face. Place the index finger between the globe and the infraorbital rim, elevating the globe.
- ◆ Stabilize with the little finger and hypothenar eminence firmly on the bones of the patient's cheek.
- ◆ Enter just inferior to the globe and perpendicular to the plane of the face.



Figure 1: Retrobulbar Block - Step 1

- ◆ Once you feel the first pop through the orbital septum, angle 45 degrees medially and 45 degrees superiorly towards the apex of the orbit until the second pop through the muscle cone is felt.
- ◆ *Culver Boldt, MD (vitreoretinal surgeon) moves the needle gently side to side while advancing beneath the globe. If the needle begins to engage the globe, then the eye will start to move side to side. Hopefully, one can stop advancing before globe perforation occurs. This move is controversial, because some feel it leads to a higher rate of orbital hemorrhage.*
- ◆ *John Sutphin, MD (corneal specialist) suggests watching for globe movement. The globe should rotate downward when you engage the septum. As you go through, it should rotate back up. Failure to do so could suggest the needle is in the sclera.*

VIDEO: Retrobulbar Block vimeo.com/139277507 **Narration by Thomas Oetting, MD**

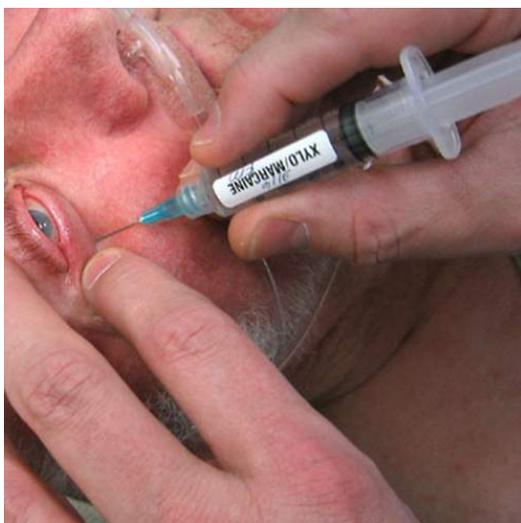


Figure 2: Retrobulbar Block - Step 2

- ◆ Pull back on the syringe to ensure the needle is not in a vessel, then inject 3-5 cc of anesthetic, palpating the globe to assess for posterior pressure.



Figure 3: Retrobulbar Block - Injection

- ◆ After withdrawing the needle, apply firm pressure to the globe with a 4x4 gauze (enough to occlude the central retinal artery) to tamponade any possible retrobulbar hemorrhage. Provide firm pressure for 90-120 seconds. Some suggest alternating 10-15 seconds of firm pressure with release of the pressure to allow perfusion of the central retinal artery. Studies by Sohan Singh Hayreh, MD, PhD (vascular) demonstrate that the retina is able to tolerate up to 90 minutes of non-perfusion before permanent damage.

ADMINISTERING THE SUB-TENONS PERIBULBAR BLOCK

Video vimeo.com/139277507 : **Surgery & Narration by Thomas Oetting, MD**

- ◆ A peribulbar block is an alternative to the retrobulbar block and offers an effective way to provide anesthesia before ocular surgery [2].
- ◆ A small button hole is made in the conjunctivae and tenons using Westcott scissors and 0.12 forceps (Figure 4).



Figure 4: Button hole formed ~10 mm from the corneal limbus.

- ◆ The quadrant is freed using blunt dissection with Westcott scissors (Figure 5).



Figure 5: Freeing the Quadrant

- ◆ 1% lidocaine/0.375% bupivacaine is drawn up in a syringe attached to a blunt lacrimal cannula (Figure 6) and then inserted posteriorly under the sub-tenons space (Figure 7).



Figure 6: Lacrimal cannula

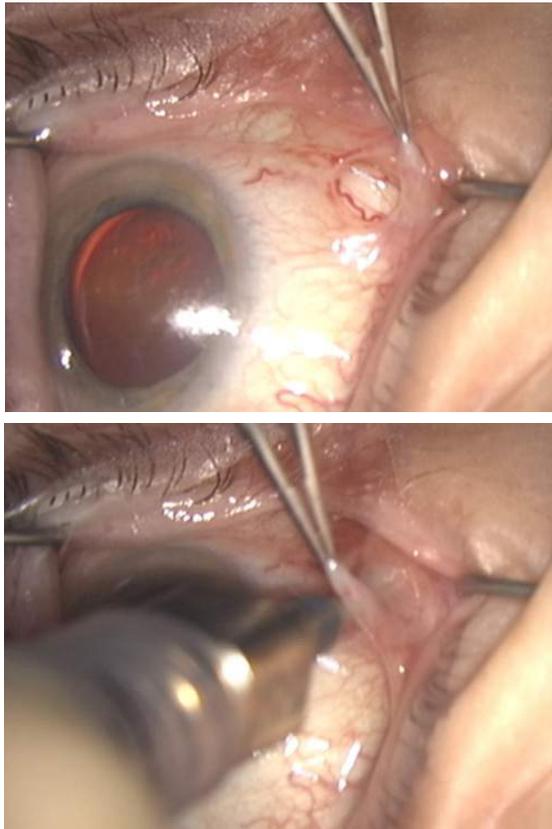


Figure 7: Insertion of cannula(top) and injection of anesthetic(bottom).

References

1. Kallio H, Paloheimo M, Maunuksela EL. Hyaluronidase as an adjuvant in bupivacaine-lidocaine mixture for retrobulbar/peribulbar block. *Anesth Analg* 2000;91(4):934-937. [PubMed.gov/11004052](http://pubmed.gov/11004052)
2. Roman SJ, Chong Sit DA, Boureau CM, Auclin FX, Ullern MM. Sub-Tenon's anaesthesia: an efficient and safe technique. *Br J Ophthalmol* 1997;81(8):673-676. [PubMed.gov/9349156](http://pubmed.gov/9349156)

Suggested citation format

Pramanik S, Doan A. Retrobulbar Block, Peribulbar Block, and Common Nerve Blocks Used by Ophthalmologists. February 27, 2005; Available from eyerounds.org/tutorials/retrobulbar-nerve-blocks.htm

last updated: 02-27-2005

Tutorials

Pediatric Ophthalmology & Strabismus

Pediatric Spectacle Prescription and Retinoscopy Made Simple: A Tutorial

Jacob Evans BS, Tyler Risma, MD, Alina Dumitrescu, MD

July 13, 2017

Introduction

This review covers simple optical principles of retinoscopy, describes an easily learned technique for retinoscopy with reliable results, and guides decisions based on those results through basic prescribing guidelines as they apply to children.

The estimated prevalence of refractive amblyopia varies widely by ethnic and socioeconomic groups but is estimated to be somewhere between 0.75% and 2.5% of children worldwide.[1-4] The economic impact of pediatric vision loss is difficult to estimate and is most evident only after a child reaches adulthood. However, a study from 2007 estimated 158.1 million global cases of visual impairment resulted from uncorrected or under-corrected refractive error; of these, 8.7 million were blind. This created an estimated economic productivity loss of \$268.8 billion.[5]

The pediatric population with refractive error needs regular assessment and prescription adjustment due to eye growth. The cornea reaches adult size by the age of 2 years, but the eye continues to grow in anteroposterior length until age 7-8 years old. The infant eye averages 16.6 mm in anteroposterior diameter (length), and grows to an adult size averaging 22.0-24.8 mm.[6,7] Since these two variables do not have parallel growth, refractive error changes as children age.

Determining and then correcting a child's refractive error can prevent or treat amblyopia which ultimately helps to avoid irreversible vision loss. Giving children the best possible vision, including correcting refractive error when needed, allows them to succeed scholastically. Visual deficits can also affect a child's daily function and normal play which may decrease his or her confidence. Children may be unaware of less severe vision problems, particularly if anisometropia is present.

In these situations where traditional subjective refraction methods are impossible, including in young children or patients of any age with limited ability to communicate or cooperate, a method for objective refraction is required. This is also useful in cases of atypical refractive error or implausible subjective refraction results. Since retinoscopy is the gold standard for objective refraction, mastering this skill is essential.

Retinoscopy allows the observer to accurately measure a patient's refractive error by determining the spherical power, cylindrical power, and cylindrical axis which focus the patient's eye at optical infinity. This is done by shining diverging light into the patient's eye from the retinoscope and finding the refraction which focuses that light on the patient's retina.

Retinoscopy results also provide information about risk factors for additional ocular morbidities. Patients with myopia have higher rates of other significant ocular disease, such as retinal detachment and glaucoma.[8,9] Patients with severe hyperopia are more likely to develop accommodative esotropia (see "Special Considerations for Spectacles in Children" section) and amblyopia.[10] A subgroup of children with crowded anterior segment and high hyperopia have an increased risk of angle closure glaucoma.

There are a few valuable trends to keep in mind when determining refractive error and prescribing spectacles for children. First, refractive error typically moves from hyperopia toward myopia as children age. Roughly 80% of children between 2 and 6 years old are hyperopic and about 10% of children need refractive correction before 8 years old.[11] Myopia then develops between 6 – 9 years old and frequently increases throughout adolescence.[11] Second, astigmatism is relatively common in babies but decreases in prevalence during the first few years of life.[11] The newborn eye averages a K value (diopters) of 51.2, while the adult eye averages a K value of 43.5 diopters.[12] Thus, although the focusing power of the eye decreases with age, there is a simultaneous trend away from hyperopia -- meaning the eye needs less additional corrective power -- because of simultaneous axial eye length increase as the patient ages.

Multiple methods of retinoscopy exist and have been extensively described. Here we aim to simply describe the basic concept and specifically one common method: *plus cylinder neutralization retinoscopy*. Please refer to other resources for a more exhaustive description of additional techniques and their applications.

Plus cylinder neutralization retinoscopy

1. Tools

- ◆ Lenses
 - Loose lenses: better tolerated by infants/toddlers
 - Retinoscopy paddles: quickest to use (Figure 1)
 - Phoropter: only for cooperative patients

Retinoscope types

- ◆ Figures 2 and 3, next page



Figure 1: Black convex lens ("plus power") and red concave lens ("minus power") retinoscopy paddles.



Figure 2: Welch Allyn retinoscope. Leaving the sleeve down on this retinoscope (and other non-Copeland retinoscopes) provides the plane mirror effect.



Figure 3: Copeland retinoscope. Putting the sleeve up provides the plane mirror effect.

2. Setup

- ◆ Cycloplegic retinoscopy ("wet") vs non-cycloplegic ("dry")
- ◆ Advantages of cycloplegia
 - Paralyzed accommodation, which prevents under-estimation (i.e. overly myopic/less hyperopic) of the patient's refractive error
 - Dilated pupil, making it easier to see the retinoscopic reflex
- ◆ Un-dilated retinoscopy can be performed in cooperative, presbyopic patients and is not recommended in children other than for dynamic purposes (e.g. to assess accommodative ability)
- ◆ Dark room
- ◆ Working distance
- ◆ Dependent on the examiner's arm length and preference
 - A common working distance is 67 cm which gives a working distance lens of +1.50 D.

3. The Basic Technique

The examiner should place himself aligned with the pupil while the patient is looking at a distant object. The examiner then obtains a red reflex with a "streak" of light and passes that streak of light perpendicular to the axis of the streak. By observing the pattern of "with" or "against" motion, the examiner can interchange a lens with more plus power or less plus power to the point where the retinoscopic reflex is "neutralized." At this point, instead

of moving against or with the movement of the streak, the reflex will appear as a diffuse, even light that changes very little as the examiner moves the retinoscope. For plus-cylinder refractions, the examiner starts by neutralizing the meridian with the lower hyperopic power, thereby leaving the meridian 90 degrees away with "with motion." The examiner then neutralizes this second meridian, noting the axis, and calculates the power difference between the two lenses needed for neutralization (plus cylinder power). The examiner then "takes out the working distance" from the lowest hyperopic power which gives the final spherical refraction.

4. Against motion vs. With motion

- ◆ "Against Motion": There is too much plus power in the combined optical system of the eye and the corrective lens, thus the light from the retinoscope is focused in front of the retina as seen by the intersection of the rays in Figure 4 on the left. Therefore, the retinoscopic light reflex seen by the examiner moves in the opposite direction of the retinoscope streak, as illustrated in Figure 4 on the right.
- ◆ "With Motion": There is not enough plus power (or, alternately, too much minus power), causing the retinoscopic light reflex to focus behind the retina as seen by the intersection of the rays in Figure 5 on the left. Therefore, the light reflex seen by the examiner will move in the same direction that the retinoscope streak is moved. This is called "with" motion and is demonstrated in Figure 5 on the right.

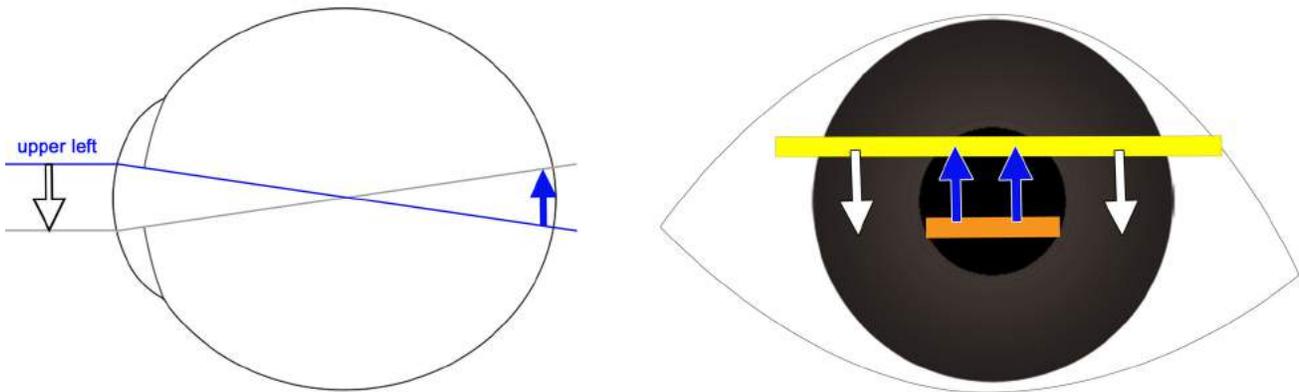


Figure 4: Left: Diagrammatic cross-section of a myopic eye, with rays of light entering the eye from the left and focusing anterior to the retina. The light that strikes the superior cornea is directed toward the inferior retina and the light that strikes the inferior cornea is directed toward the superior retina. Right: The light reflex visible in the pupil (illustrated by the orange bar) will move “against” the direction of the streak of light (illustrated by the yellow bar) from the retinoscope. Thus, as the streak moves downward, the pupillary reflex moves upward.

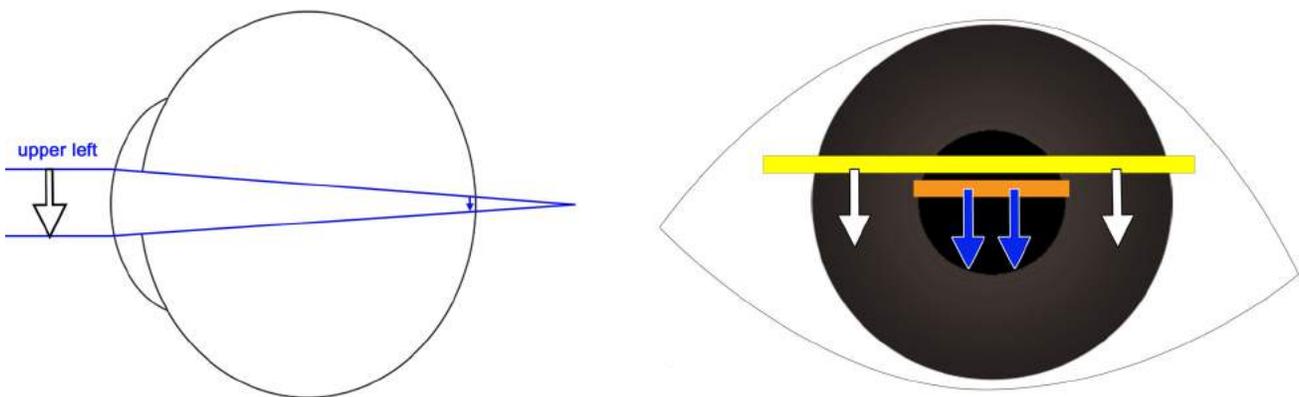


Figure 5: Left: Diagrammatic cross-section of a hyperopic eye, with rays of light entering the eye from the left and focusing posterior to the retina. The light that strikes the superior cornea is directed toward the superior retina and the light that strikes the inferior cornea is directed toward the inferior retina. Right: The light reflex visible in the pupil (illustrated by the orange bar) will move “with” the direction of the streak of light from the retinoscope (illustrated by the yellow bar). Thus, as the streak moves downward, the pupillary reflex also moves downward.

5. Examples: (all of the following examples assume a working distance of 67 cm, which correlates with a working distance lens of +1.50 D; in practice, this must be individualized for each examiner's arm length)

- ◆ **Emmetropia:** The simplest patient for conceptualizing retinoscopy is an emmetrope
 - With no lens in front of an emmetropic eye, an examiner would see “with” motion in all meridians
 - With a +1.50 D lens the light streak would be neutralized in all meridians.
 - With a +2.00 D lens the examiner sees against motion and by putting “less plus” and switching back to a +1.50 D lens the streak is again neutralized
 - After taking out the working distance (by subtracting +1.50), the examiner is left with a refraction of +0.00 D, or plano.

- ◆ **Hyperopia (+2.00)**

- With no lens in front of a hyperopic eye, the examiner would similarly see “with motion” in all meridians
- The examiner adds more plus power until the streak is neutralized with a +3.50 D lens in all meridians
- After taking out the working distance the final Rx is +2.00 D sphere (no astigmatism correction)

- ◆ **Mild Myopia (-1.00)**

- With no lens in front of a patient with mild myopia, the typical examiner would also see “with motion” in all meridians
- The examiner adds plus power until the streak is neutralized in all meridians with a +0.50 D lens
- After taking out the working distance the examiner determines a final Rx of -1.00 D sphere

- ◆ **Moderate Myopia (-4.00)**

- With no lens in front of a patient with moderate myopia, the examiner sees “against” motion in all meridians

- The examiner adds minus-powered lenses until the streak is neutralized in all meridians with a -2.50 D spherical lens
- After taking out the working distance the examiner determines a final Rx of -4.00 D sphere
- ◆ **"With the rule" astigmatism** (+1.00 +1.50 x 090)
 - In most cases of with the rule (WTR) astigmatism, the cornea is steeper in the vertical meridian and flatter in the horizontal meridian, which means more plus lens power will be required to neutralize the horizontal meridian than to neutralize the vertical
 - With no lens in front of this patient with WTR astigmatism, the examiner should first streak the vertical then the horizontal meridian
 1. The examiner "streaks the vertical meridian" by passing a *horizontal* streak of light up and down along the vertical meridian and would see "with motion," which would neutralize with a +2.50 D lens
 2. The examiner then moves on to "streak the horizontal meridian" by passing a *vertical* streak of light side to side along the horizontal meridian, which in this patient would neutralize with a +4.00 D lens
 3. This indicates that an additional +1.50 D is required to neutralize the horizontal meridian as compared to the vertical, which represents the cylindrical power
 4. In this case the streak was placed at exactly 90 degrees which indicates the axis; a cylindrical lens gives power in the axis 90 degrees away, ergo, a cylindrical lens of power +1.50 and axis 90, gives +1.50 D of power in the horizontal (180 degree) meridian
 5. Taking out the working distance (from +2.50) gives +1.00 D and the final Rx is +1.00 +1.50 x 090
- ◆ **Against the rule astigmatism** (+2.00 +1.00 x 180)
 - In most cases of against the rule (ATR) astigmatism, the cornea is steeper in the horizontal meridian and flatter in the vertical meridian, which means more plus lens power will be required to neutralize the vertical meridian than to neutralize the horizontal.
 - With no lens in front of this patient with ATR astigmatism, the examiner should first streak the horizontal and then the vertical meridian
 1. The examiner "streaks the horizontal meridian" by passing a *vertical* streak of light side to side along the horizontal meridian and would see "against motion," which would neutralize with a +3.50 D lens
 2. The examiner then moves on to "streak the vertical meridian" by passing a *horizontal* streak of light up and down along the vertical meridian, which in this patient would neutralize with a +4.50 D lens
 3. This indicates that an additional +1.00 D is required to neutralize the vertical meridian as compared to the horizontal, which represents the cylindrical power
 4. In this case the horizontal streak (for the vertical meridian) was placed at exactly 180 degrees which indicates the axis; a cylindrical lens gives power in the axis 90 degrees away, ergo, a cylindrical lens of power +1.00 and axis 180 gives +1.00 D of power in the vertical (90 degree) meridian
 5. Taking out the working distance (from +3.50) gives +2.00 D and the final Rx is +2.00 +1.00 x 180

6. Tips and Hints

- ◆ Because most patients with astigmatism have the WTR type, most examiners begin by "streaking the vertical meridian" (with a horizontal streak of light). After noting the lens power required to neutralize the vertical meridian, the examiner then moves on to "streak the horizontal meridian" (with a vertical streak of light). If the examiner notes that the patient has ATR astigmatism, it is typically easier to neutralize the horizontal meridian first, and then the vertical meridian second. This keeps the refraction in plus-cylinder format and allows the examiner to simply note the orientation of the streak on the second neutralization and use that as the axis on the prescription.
- ◆ If against or with motion is not obvious, a high refractive error should be suspected and a high plus (+10) or minus (-10) lens can be used to attempt to clarify the reflex's movement, followed by neutralization retinoscopy as described in this guide.

Deciding when to prescribe corrective lenses

Once a child's refractive error has been determined, the next decision is whether or not to prescribe corrective lenses. When a child is less than 9 years old, considerations include whether the refractive error is normal for a child's age, and whether the uncorrected error will cause amblyopia or interfere with the child's visual function and alignment. Whether wearing corrective lenses will interfere with emmetropization is controversial. Some providers will prescribe a little less power than needed to encourage emmetropization of the eye, perhaps because the rate of emmetropization is related to the total initial refractive error in infants.[13] A recent study found that prescribing the smallest amount of hyperopic correction needed to allow near-focusing does not impede emmetropization.[14] In daily practice, for hyperopic patients, lower than full plus prescription seems to be better tolerated and accepted by children except in cases of accommodative esotropia, where the full cycloplegic correction is necessary to minimize or eliminate strabismus.

Suggested indications for prescribing spectacles in pediatric populations^[15,16]

The following guidelines come from the American Academy of Ophthalmology's preferred practice patterns. These guidelines represent the minimum values at which spectacle prescription is recommended for isolated refractive error, specifically in the absence of amblyopia or strabismus which should lower the threshold for spectacle prescription.

Isoametropia (Figure 6)

Myopia

- <1 year: > -5 D
- 1-2 years: > -4 D
- 2-3 years: > -3 D
- >4 years: > -1.5 D or if symptomatic [17]

Hyperopia

- <1 year: > +6 D
- 1-2 years: > +5 D
- 2-3 years: > +4.5 D
- >4 years: > +4 D or if symptomatic [17]

Hyperopia with esotropia

- <1 year: > +2.5 D
- 1-2 years: > +2 D
- 2-3 years: > +1.5 D

Astigmatism

- <1 year: >3 D
- 1-2 years: >2.5 D
- 2-3 years: >2 D
- >4 years: >1.5 D or if symptomatic[17]

Anisometropia

Myopia

- <1 year: > -4 D
- 1-2 years: > -3 D
- 2-3 years: > -3 D

Hyperopia

- <1 year: >2.5 D
- 1-2 years: >2 D
- 2-3 years: >1.5 D

Astigmatism

- <1 year: >2.5 D
- 1-2 years: >2 D
- 2-3 years: >2 D

Prescribe anisometric difference at any age if amblyopia is present

Special considerations for spectacles in children^[18-20]

Intermittent exotropia

Lens power may be reduced ("minus lens therapy") from the cycloplegic refraction, even for minor prescriptions, to induce accommodative convergence and reduce exotropia.[18]

Accommodative esotropia

1. Determine the accommodative convergence/accommodation ratio, or AC/A ratio.
 - The AC/A ratio describes the relationship between the amount of convergence (in-turning of the eyes) that is generated by a given amount of accommodation (focusing effort)
 - Either the gradient method or heterophoria method can be used to determine AC/A ratio; see link for instructions. bit.ly/2h1mhPi
2. In children with a normal AC/A ratio (<5:1), the full cycloplegic refraction is prescribed [19]
3. In children with a high (>5:1) AC/A ratio, prescribing the full cycloplegic distance correction can correct the distance deviation completely, but the near deviation may persist. These children may be prescribed bifocals to help correct the near deviation as well. It is important to ensure that the bifocals split the pupil in children. [19]

Aphakia or pseudophakia

Prescribe the full amount of correction with +2 to +3 D (retinoscopy will show -2 to -3D) to allow near activities, since infants are primarily interested in objects near them. At around 1.5-2 years of age, bifocals can be considered.

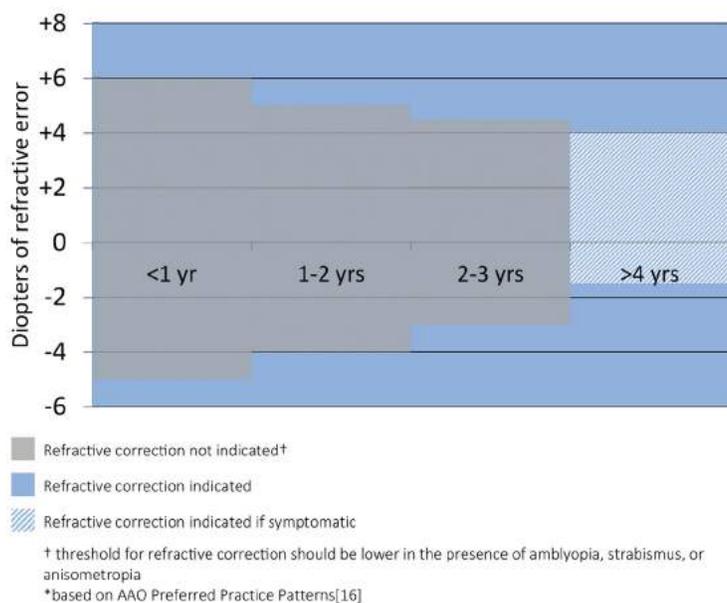


Figure 6. Guidelines For Spectacle Correction of Isolated Isoametropia in Young Children

Anisometropic or astigmatic amblyopia

Correct the full anisometropia, astigmatism, and myopia to cycloplegic refraction. Correct hyperopia that is >3 D to either full cycloplegic refraction, or to a level that is under corrected by as much as 1.5 D. Using this prescribing guideline (without the need for occlusion therapy or other therapies) has been shown to resolve anisometropic amblyopia in roughly one third of cases.[10-21]

References

1. Xiao O, Morgan IG, Ellwein LB, He M. Prevalence of amblyopia in school-aged children and variations by age, gender, and ethnicity in a multi-country refractive error study. *Ophthalmology* 2015;122:1924-31.
2. Wang Y, Liang YB, Sun LP, et al. Prevalence and causes of amblyopia in a rural adult population of chinese the handan eye study. *Ophthalmology* 2011;118:279-83.
3. Attebo K, Mitchell P, Cumming R, et al. Prevalence and causes of amblyopia in an adult population. *Ophthalmology* 1998;105:154-9.
4. Friedman DS, Repka MX, Katz J, et al. Prevalence of amblyopia and strabismus in white and african american children aged 6 through 71 months the baltimore pediatric eye disease study. *Ophthalmology* 2009;116:2128-34.e1-2.
5. Smith T, Frick K, Holden B, et al. Potential lost productivity resulting from the global burden of uncorrected refractive error. *Bull World Health Organ* 2009;87:431-37.
6. Riordan-Eva P. Chapter 1. Anatomy & embryology of the eye. In: Riordan-Eva P, Cunningham ET (eds). *Vaughan & asbury's general ophthalmology, 18e*. New York, NY: The McGraw-Hill Companies, 2011.
7. Bekerman I, Gottlieb P, Vaiman M. Variations in eyeball diameters of the healthy adults. *Journal of Ophthalmology* 2014;2014:5.
8. Lai TY. Retinal complications of high myopia. *Med Bull* 2007;12:18-20.
9. Mitchell P, Hourihan F, Sandbach J, Wang JJ. The relationship between glaucoma and myopia: The blue mountains eye study. *Ophthalmology* 1999;106:2010-5.
10. Blouza AJ, Loukil I, Mhenni A, et al. Prise en charge de l'hypermétropie de l'enfant. *J Fr Ophtalmol* 2007;30:255-59.
11. Fredrick DR. Chapter 17. Special subjects of pediatric interest. In: Riordan-Eva P, Cunningham ET (eds). *Vaughan & asbury's general ophthalmology, 18e*. New York, NY: The McGraw-Hill Companies, 2011.
12. Gordon RA, Donzis PB. Refractive development of the human eye. *Arch Ophthalmol* 1985;103:785-89.
13. Saunders KJ, Woodhouse JM, Westall CA. Emmetropization in human infancy: Rate of change is related to initial refractive error. *Vision Res* 1995;35:1325-8.
14. Somer D, Karabulut E, Cinar FG, et al. Emmetropization, visual acuity, and strabismus outcomes among hyperopic infants followed with partial hyperopic corrections given in accordance with dynamic retinoscopy. *Eye* 2014;28:1165-73.
15. Summers CG, et al. Preferred practice pattern guidelines. *Amblyopia*. San Francisco, CA: American Academy of Ophthalmology, 2012.
16. Summers CG, et al. Preferred practice pattern guidelines. *Pediatric Eye Evaluations*. San Francisco, CA: American Academy of Ophthalmology, 2012.
17. Miller JM, Harvey EM. Spectacle prescribing recommendations of aapos members. *Journal of pediatric ophthalmology and strabismus* 1998;35:51-2.
18. Caltrider N, Jampolsky A. Overcorrecting minus lens therapy for treatment of intermittent exotropia. *Ophthalmology* 1983;90:1160-5.
19. Rogers GM, Longmuir SQ. Refractive Accommodative Esotropia. EyeRounds.org. January 26, 2011; Available from: <http://EyeRounds.org/cases/129-accommodative-esotropia.htm>
20. Cotter SA, Edwards AR, Wallace DK, et al. Treatment of anisometropic amblyopia in children with refractive correction. *Ophthalmology* 2006;113:895-903.
21. Steele AL, Bradfield YS, Kushner BJ, et al. Successful treatment of anisometropic amblyopia with spectacles alone. *J AAPOS* 2006;10:37-43.

Suggested Citation Style

Evans J, Risma T, Dumitrescu A. Pediatric Spectacle Prescription and Retinoscopy Made Simple. EyeRounds. July 13, 2017. Available at EyeRounds.org/tutorials/pediatric-spectacle-prescription-and-retinoscopy

last updated: 07/13/2017

Binocular Vision

Rahul Bhola, MD

January 23, 2006; reviewed for accuracy January 6, 2013

Introduction

Binocular vision is one of the hallmarks of the human race that has bestowed on it the supremacy in the hierarchy of the animal kingdom. It is an asset with normal alignment of the two eyes, but becomes a liability when the alignment is lost.

Binocular Single Vision may be defined as the state of simultaneous vision, which is achieved by the coordinated use of both eyes, so that separate and slightly dissimilar images arising in each eye are appreciated as a single image by the process of fusion. Thus binocular vision implies fusion, the blending of sight from the two eyes to form a single percept.

Binocular Single Vision can be

1. Normal – Binocular Single vision can be classified as normal when it is bifoveal and there is no manifest deviation.
2. Anomalous - Binocular Single vision is anomalous when the images of the fixated object are projected from the fovea of one eye and an extrafoveal area of the other eye i.e. when the visual direction of the retinal elements has changed. A small manifest strabismus is therefore always present in anomalous Binocular Single vision.

Normal Binocular Single vision requires

1. **Clear Visual Axis** leading to a reasonably clear vision in both eyes
2. The ability of the retino-cortical elements to function in association with each other to promote the fusion of two slightly dissimilar images i.e. **Sensory fusion**.
3. The precise co-ordination of the two eyes for all direction of gazes, so that corresponding retino-cortical element are placed in a position to deal with two images i.e. **Motor fusion**.

The advantages of a Binocular vision are

1. The first and the foremost advantage of a binocular vision is single vision.
2. In addition to single vision it results in stereopsis – the most precise kind of depth perception
3. Enlargement of the field of vision
4. Compensation for blind spot and other differences

Sensory Aspects of Binocular vision

The objects in space are localized by us in two ways –one is relative to one another and is called relative localization and the other is in relation to ourselves and is called ego-centric localization.

Objective (Physical) & Subjective (Visual) space

Location of an object point in physical space was separated from its localization in visual space. The objective lines of direction determine which retinal area will be stimulated, their subjective counterpart, the visual direction determines the direction in which the object will be seen in visual space.

Retinal Element

It is defined as a retinocerebral apparatus engaged in elaborating a sensation in response to excitation of a unit area of retinal surface.

- ◆ The retinal area when stimulated by light entering the eye from an object is perceived not only as being of certain brightness, color and certain form, but also has a certain direction in visual space. This direction in which the visual object is localized is determined by the directional or spatial values of the stimulated retinal element called the Local signs of Lotze which is an intrinsic property inherent in the retinal element.
- ◆ Thus each retinal element when stimulated localizes the stimulus as a visual percept in a specific direction – a visual direction. This direction is relative to the visual direction of the fovea. Fovea, which is the area of the highest visual acuity, is the carrier of Principle Visual direction and is the center to which the secondary visual direction of the other retinal element relates.
- ◆ Fovea besides being the carrier of principle visual direction, is also the retinomotor center or retinomotor zero point i.e. once an image of the object of regard is on fovea there is no incentive for ocular movement.

Visual Axis (Line of direction or direction ray of Helmholtz)

It is the line which connects an object point with its image on the retina. If the visual axis of the two foveas also known as the principle visual axis intersects at the fixation point, it is said that there is binocular fixation.

If only one principle line of direction goes through the fixation point, then fixation is monocular.

All object points that simultaneously stimulates the two fovea appears in one and the same subjective visual direction coinciding with the median plane of the head. This is known as the common subjective visual direction of the fovea. It lies in an imaginary plane passing through the root of the nose known as third central imaginary eye or the binoculus or cyclopean eye.

Retinal Correspondence

Retinal elements of the two eyes that share a common subjective visual direction are called corresponding retinal points. All other retinal elements are non-corresponding or disparate with respect to a given retinal element in the fellow eye for a particular visual direction.

Law of Sensory Correspondence

The Law of Sensory Correspondence states that existence of corresponding retinal elements with their common relative subjective visual direction is the essence of binocular vision.

Retinal Correspondence can be of two types

1. Normal Retinal Correspondence

Retinal correspondence is called normal when both the fovea have a common visual direction and the retinal elements nasal to the fovea in one eye corresponds to the retinal elements temporal to the fovea in the other eye.

2. Abnormal Retinal Correspondence

Retinal correspondence is abnormal when the fovea of one eye has a common visual direction with an extrafoveal area in the other eye. This is generally seen if the angle of squint is small and the extrafoveal point is close to the fovea. It is an attempt to regain the binocular advantage, although anomalous (because it is foveo-extrafoveal and not foveo-foveal). This results in the eyes seeing binocularly single in spite of a manifest squint. In ARC under binocular conditions the fovea and the extrafoveal point share the common subjective visual direction. But when the normal eye is closed the extrafoveal element loses any advantage over the fovea of that eye, which retains its primary visual direction. Thus under monocular conditions the central fixation is retained by the fovea, this is the basis of the cover test.

The quality of binocular single vision obtained in ARC varies from patient to patient, in some there is useful gross stereopsis while in the others binocular vision is rudimentary. The quality of binocular vision is usually inversely proportional to the angle of deviation.

Concept of a Horopter

The term Horopter (the horizon of vision) was introduced in 1613 by Aguilonius. It is defined as the locus of all object points that are imaged on corresponding retinal elements

at a given fixation distance. Thus a line can be drawn through the object of regard such that all the points on the line are imaged on the corresponding retinal elements and are seen singly.

Geometric Vieth Muller horopter

According to this model of horopter if corresponding points have a regular horizontal distance from the retina the horopter would be a circle passing through the center of rotation of the two eyes and the fixation point. Thus the circle becomes smaller as the point of fixation gets nearer.

Empirical Horopter Curve

The empirical horopter curve or the longitudinal horopter is slightly flatter than Vieth Muller geometric horopter i.e. it has a greater radius of curvature. The deviation of the perceptual from the geometric horopter is known as the Hering-Hillebrand deviation. This deviation is felt to be due to both neural and optical factors. The nasal hemi-retina at any given eccentricity contains more photoreceptors per unit area than the temporal hemi retina producing a deviation in the horopter mapping in the visual cortex.

Thus all the points not lying on the horopter are imaged by disparate retinal elements and are seen as double. This diplopia elicited by object points off the horopter is called Physiological diplopia. However we normally do not always experience this diplopia. This can be explained on the basis of **Panum's Fusion Area**. It is defined as a narrow band around the horopter within which the objects stimulation disparate retinal elements transmit the impression of single vision.

Thus the range of horizontal disparities around the horopter within which the stimulus will continue to be perceived as single is known as Panum's fusional area.

Panum's area is narrowest at the fixation point and becomes broader in the periphery at a rate of 1-2 arc min per degree of visual field eccentricity. Thus the horizontal extent of this area is small at the center (6-10 arc min near the fovea) and increases towards the periphery (30-40 arc min at 12° from the fovea). The increase in the Panum's area towards the periphery may be related to anatomic and physiologic differences known to exist between the monosynaptic foveal cone system and the rod and cone system of the periphery.

The increase in the spatial extent of Panum's area in the peripheral visual field serves three useful purposes

- ◆ Increasing size of Panum's area matches increasing coarseness of peripheral vision. Receptive field size increases and the visual acuity decreases as a function of eccentricity.
- ◆ Increasing the thickness of Panum's area prevents bothersome peripheral diplopia when fixating flat targets held at close range.
- ◆ Increasing the extent of Panum's area peripherally makes cyclofusion possible despite cyclovergence errors of as much as 2 degrees between the two eyes.

Panum's area expands and contracts depending on the size, sharpness and speed of the stimuli. Panum's area for the stimuli that are fuzzy and slow moving is 20 times wider than it is for stimuli that are sharply focused and rapidly moving.

Fusion

Fusion is defined as the unification of visual excitations from the corresponding retinal images into a single visual percept.

Sensory Fusion

It is the ability to appreciate two similar images, one with each eye and interpret them as one. Single visual image is the hallmark of retinal correspondence. For sensory fusion to occur, the images not only must be located on corresponding retinal areas but also must be sufficiently similar in size, brightness and sharpness to permit sensory. Unequal images are a severe obstacle to fusion.

Motor Fusion

It is the ability to align the eyes in such a manner that sensory fusion can be maintained. The stimulus for these fusional eye movements is retinal disparity outside Panum's area and the eyes moving in opposite direction (vergence). Unlike sensory fusion, motor fusion is the exclusive function of the extrafoveal retinal periphery.

Fusion, whether sensory or motor, is always a central process i.e. it takes place in the visual cortex.

Diplopia

The simultaneous stimulation of non-corresponding or disparate retinal elements by an object point causes this point to be localized in two different subjective visual directions. An object point seen simultaneously in two directions appears double. Double vision is the hallmark of retinal disparity.

Retinal Rivalry / Binocular Rivalry

When dissimilar contours are presented to corresponding retinal areas fusion becomes impossible and retinal rivalry may be observed. Simultaneous excitation of corresponding retinal areas by dissimilar objects does not permit fusion and leads to confusion. In order to remove this confusion, image from one of the eyes is suppressed. This constant foveal suppression of one eye with cessation of rivalry leads to complete sensory dominance of the other eye, which is a major obstacle to binocular vision. Return of retinal rivalry is a requisite for re-establishment of binocular vision.

Suppression

It is a neuro-physiological active inhibitory mechanism in which when corresponding retinal areas are stimulated by dissimilar stimuli or when non-corresponding retinal areas are stimulated by similar stimuli, one or the other is temporarily inhibited or suppressed to prevent confusion or diplopia respectively. Suppression is foveal in order to tackle confusion and extrafoveal in order to avoid diplopia.

Suppression can be further of two types

- ◆ **Facultative-** Facultative suppression is only under binocular conditions with no persisting "hang over" under monocular conditions. Thus the visual acuity is not reduced under monocular conditions and there are no unocular scotomas in the visual field.
- ◆ **Obligatory-** Obligatory suppression is the effect which carries on even under monocular conditions resulting in diminution of visual acuity. Amblyopia is the fallout of this obligatory suppression.

Stereopsis (Disparity Sensitivity)

It is the ability to fuse images that stimulate horizontally disparate retinal elements within Panum's fusional area resulting in binocular appreciation of visual object in depth i.e. in the third dimension. The eyes are separated in the horizontal plane of the head and thus each eye has a slightly horizontally disparate view of the world. The sensory fusion of these horizontally disparate unequal retinal images results in a three dimensional percept. An object confined to the horopter is seen as flat because it projects to corresponding retinal regions, causing zero horizontal disparity.

Non-zero disparities giving rise to stereoscopic depth are divided into crossed and uncrossed.

- ◆ **Crossed disparities** are created by objects in front of the horopter (near objects). The disparity is termed "crossed" because the monocular image of the object when viewed by the right eye is displaced to the left, whereas that viewed by the left eye is displaced to the right.
- ◆ **Uncrossed disparities** are created by objects located behind the horopter (far objects). In this case the monocular image of the objects viewed by the right eye is displaced to the right and that viewed by the left eye is displaced to the left.

Stereoscopic acuity

It is the smallest binocular disparity that can be readily detected i.e. it is the minimum disparity beyond which no stereoscopic effect is produced. There are no standardized clinical stereoscopic acuity tests, but generally speaking, a threshold of 15–30 arc sec. can be regarded as excellent. Since there is a stereoscopic threshold, it follows that stereopsis cannot work beyond a certain critical distance. This distance has been computed to be between 125-200 meters. The stereoscopic acuity also varies depending on whether the target is stationary or moving, and whether

the eyes are stationary or moving. The stereoacuity threshold for static targets is in the range of 2-10 arc sec. For targets in motion towards and away from the observer the threshold increases to about 40 arc sec. Stereoacuity is maximal about 0.25 degrees off dead center in the foveola, and diminishes exponentially with increasing eccentricity along the x-axis. Stereopsis is nil beyond 15 degrees eccentricity. Stereoacuity diminishes in similar exponential fashion when the target is moved in front or behind the horopter along the y-axis.

Though stereopsis is essential for depth perception it is not the only mean for spatial orientation. The various monocular clues to spatial orientation can be

- ◆ Apparent size – Small retinal objects are interpreted as distant objects and large retinal objects as near objects. Objects progressively increase in size as they move towards us (looming).
- ◆ Interposition – relatively nearer objects tend to conceal or overlay more distant objects.
- ◆ Aerial perspective – water vapor, dust and smoke in the atmosphere scatter light and make distant objects indistinct and relatively color desaturated.
- ◆ Shading – light falling on solid objects causes shadows to be cast, and on curved surfaces causes a gradation in the intensity of shadow.
- ◆ Geometric perspective – physically parallel lines converge toward a vanishing point at the horizon, e.g. railroad tracks.
- ◆ Relative velocity – the image velocity of a moving target in the distance is lower than the image velocity of the same moving target when it is nearby.
- ◆ Motion parallax – translocation of the head cause the images of near objects to move opposite the head and the images of far objects to move with the head, assuming the fixation point is at an intermediate distance.

Development of Binocular Vision

During the first few years of life certain normal anatomical and physiological conditions are required for the development of binocular vision. The factors concerned in the development of Binocular vision and which enable the eyes to function in a coordinated manner are

Anatomical factors: The two eyes are so situated in the orbit that the visual axis is directed in the same direction. This is due to

- ◆ Shape of the orbit
- ◆ Presence of adjacent ligaments, muscles and connective tissues.

The extra-ocular muscles have an important role to play as they provide motor correspondence because of the reciprocal innervation of the extra-ocular muscles.

The aim of the motor correspondence is to-

- ◆ Enlarge the field of view by transforming the field of vision into the field of fixation.

- ◆ Bring back the object of attention on to the fovea and to maintain it.
- ◆ Position the two eyes in such a way that at all the times they are properly aligned.

Physiological factors: The development of binocular vision (BV) depends upon certain normal physiological binocular reflexes. The reflexes can either be inborn or acquired as a result of appropriate stimulation. The various binocular reflexes are

1. Fixation reflexes

- Compensatory fixation reflex (Gravitational reflex) - The function of this reflex is to keep the eyes in a fixed position i.e. looking in the required direction compensating for the movement of the body, head, limbs etc. In male it is due to the frontal direction of the eyes and the utricles and saccules presiding over the tone of the vertical recti and obliques, respectively.
- Orientation fixation reflex -It can be demonstrated by the eye following a moving object or panorama, thus exhibiting a comparatively slow movement of continued fixation and not a rapid jerk fixation. This reflex relates to horizontal axis.
- Accommodation convergence reflex- It is aimed at correctly aligning the eyes and keeping them focused on the object. It includes vergence fixation reflex, accommodation reflex and fusional vergence reflex.

2. The refixation reflex –It relates the eye back to the original orientation point or to the new orientation point.

3. The pupillary reflex

Fusion Reflex and its Development: Fusional reflexes are conditioned reflexes, acquired and maintained by cerebral activity. They are developed by the individual on the basis of experience. Once formed, with continued reinforcement it becomes an unconditioned reflex. Also known as psychoptical reflexes, it consists of all the activities mediated from the retina through the brain to maintain the images received on the two foveas with the ultimate aim of attaining a single binocular vision. The elements of fusion mechanism are

- ◆ Fixation reflex
- ◆ Refixation reflex
- ◆ Conjugate fusional reflexes – maintains the parallelism of the two eyes in all positions of gaze.
- ◆ Disjunctive reflexes convergence/divergence reflexes.

At birth the fixation reflex is poorly developed, with the child having only random, non-conjugate and aimless ocular movements. There is inability to carry out pursuit movements during the first few weeks of life. The development of optomotor reflex is essentially a post natal event, with the approximate time schedule being

- ◆ 2- 3 weeks –follows light uniocularly
- ◆ 6 weeks to 6 months - follows light binocularly

- ◆ Convergence which is absent at birth starts developing at 1 month of age and is well established by 6 months.
- ◆ The development of accommodation lags behind the development of convergence due to the delay in the development of ciliary muscles, parallels with the convergence by 6 months of age.

Electrophysiological studies have shown that infants can detect retinal disparities between 2-5 months of age but little is known about the development of stereoacuity between the ages of 6 months to 3 years, when the child may sufficiently be able to comprehend subjective tests. However, it is generally agreed that there is a gradual improvement in stereoacuity up to the age of 9 years.

Thus it can be said that in human beings the sensitive period of development of binocular vision begins at about 4 months of age, peaks at 2 years, is well developed by 4 years of age and slowly declines to cease by 9 years of age. These estimates assume that a single sensitive period during which the binocular function appears to be at a risk is during the first 2 years of life. Any obstacle in the reflex pathway is likely to hamper the development of binocular vision.

The obstacles can be in the form of

1. Sensory obstacles

- ◆ Dioptic obstacles – e.g. media opacities, uncorrected errors of refraction.
- ◆ Prolonged unocular activity- e.g. severe ptosis, anisometropia
- ◆ Retinoneural obstacles – lesions of retina, optic nerve
- ◆ Proprioceptive obstacle

2. Motor obstacles

- ◆ Congenital craniofacial malformations
- ◆ Conditions effecting extra-ocular muscles
- ◆ CNS lesions- involving the nerve trunks, root of nuclei

3. Central obstacles

The presence of these obstacles gives rise to various sensory adaptations to binocular dysfunction especially if the disruptive factor is present in the sensitive period. This can be in the form of

- ◆ ARC
- ◆ SUPPRESSION
- ◆ AMBLYOPIA

Theories of Binocular Vision

- ◆ **Correspondence and disparity theory:** According to this theory sensory binocular cooperation is based on system of correspondence and disparity. It assumes the presence of one to one retinocortical relationship between the two eyes. When stimulated simultaneously by one object point they transmit single visual impression with no depth quality. When stimulated simulta-

neously by two object points that differ in character – binocular rivalry occurs. When disparate elements are stimulated by one object point diplopia occurs. However if horizontal disparity remains within limits of Panum's area, a single visual impression is elicited with depth or stereopsis. The perceived depth increases with increasing disparity. However with increasing disparity quality of stereopsis decreases which may eventually lead to diplopia.

- ◆ **Neurophysiological theory of binocular vision and stereopsis:** Animal experiments of Hubel and Wiesel showed that roughly 80% of the neurons in the striate cortex can be driven from either eye in response to a visual stimulus from the retina, assuming that there exists a precise and orderly arrangement of connections along the entire retino-geniculate striate pathway. 25% of these binocularly driven cells were stimulated equally from each eye, while 75% represented graded response from either left or right eye. Cells that could be driven by stimulation of either eye had receptive fields of nearly equal size and in corresponding positions of visual field.

In normal Binocular Single Vision, optical stimulus will excite a cortical cell only if it is presented to its two receptive fields simultaneously. Although two receptive fields are involved, only one object feature is detected by each cortical cell and assigned by it to a single locus in space. The two receptive fields do not always occupy anatomically identical regions in the two retinas. At a given locus in the retino-optic cortical map there are cells whose fields have exactly corresponding points in the two retina and cells whose fields have slightly different position in the two eyes. This retinal field disparity which is caused by the difference in direction or distance of the fields in each retina forms the basis of Panum's fusion area and is detected by sensitive binocular neurons giving rise to binocular vision and stereopsis.

Grades of Binocular Vision

There are three grades of binocular vision as given by Worth's classification

Grade I: *Simultaneous macular perception* is the most elementary type of binocularity. It occurs when the visual cortex perceives separate stimuli to the two eyes at the same time and concerns itself essentially with the absence of suppression. SMP is not the same as superimposition, whereby the two different pictures are seen simultaneously in the same direction. SMP in the true sense just represents simple sensory fusion.

Grade II: It represents *true fusion* with some amplitude. Not only are the two images fused, but some effort is made to maintain this fusion in spite of difficulties. Thus the second grade implies a motor response added to simple sensory fusion.

Grade III: In the highest type of binocularity, not only are the images of the two eyes fused, but they are blended to

produce a *stereoscopic effect*. This involves a perceptual synthesis at a higher level.

These three grades are not necessarily mutually exclusive, since fusion in the periphery, even showing motor responses, may exist coincidentally with the total absence of simultaneous foveal perception.

Investigations for Binocular Vision

All the tests are aimed at assessing the presence or absence of

- ◆ Normal or abnormal retinal correspondence
- ◆ Suppression
- ◆ Simultaneous perception
- ◆ Fusion with some amplitude
- ◆ Stereopsis

Before any test is undertaken it is essential to assess the

- ◆ visual acuity
- ◆ fixation in the squinting eye
- ◆ direction and size of deviation

Test for Retinal Correspondence

Clinically the tests used can be based on either of the two principles

A) Assessment of relationship between the fovea of the fixing eye and the retinal area stimulated in the squinting eye. This includes

- ◆ Bagolini's striated glasses test
- ◆ red filter test
- ◆ Synaptophore using SMP slides for measuring the objective and subjective angles
- ◆ Worth's 4 dot test

B) Assessment of the visual directions of the two foveas. Included in this are

- ◆ After image test (Hering Bielschowsky)
- ◆ Coppers binocular visuoscopy test (foveo-foveal test of Coppers)

Bagolini's Striated Glasses Test: For this the patient fixates a small light, after being provided with plano lenses with narrow fine striations across one meridian (micro Maddox cylinders). These glasses do not affect the vision or the accommodation of the patient. The fixation light is seen as an elongated streak. The lenses are usually placed at 45 degree OS and 135 degree OD (cover the patients glasses, if he wears any) and the patient fixates for distance or near. The interpretation of this test is as follows-

- ◆ Crossing of the lines at right angles to each other
 - If cover test reveals no shift and fixation is central, the patient has NRC
 - If cover test reveals a shift, harmonious ARC is present

- ◆ Foveal suppression scotoma (fixation point scotoma) with peripheral fusion, if no shift occurs with cover test, NRC exists, if shift occurs, ARC exists
- ◆ Single line represents suppression

Red Filter Test: If one examines the visual field of a patient with heterophoria by placing a red filter in front of the habitually fixating eye while the patient is looking at a small light source, number of different responses can be elicited.

- ◆ The patient may report that two lights are seen, a red one and a white one. In esotropia the images appear in homonymous (uncrossed) diplopia, with the red light to the right of the white one when the red filter is in front of the right eye. In exotropia the images appear in heteronymous (crossed) diplopia, with the red light to the left of the white light when the red filter is in front of the right eye. This represents NRC.
- ◆ The patient may report that only one pinkish light in the position of the white fixation light is seen i.e. the red and white images appear to be superimposed. This is clearly an abnormal response in presence of heterophoria. This is termed Harmonious ARC.
- ◆ The patient may report that two lights in uncrossed or crossed diplopia are seen, depending upon the direction of deviation but the measured distance between the double images proves to be smaller than expected from the magnitude of deviation. This represents unharmonious ARC.
- ◆ Suppression is said to occur when the patient reports only a single light (usually the white light) but occasionally red depending upon the density of the red filter and the degree of the dominance of the fellow eye.

Measurement of Angle of Anomaly: The angle of anomaly denotes the degree of shift in visual direction. It is determined by calculating the difference between the objective and subjective angles of deviation.

Procedure of estimating the angle of anomaly -

For this the use of SMP slides is made. The arms of the synaptophore are set at zero. Both the arms of the instrument are moved by the examiner while alternately flashing the light behind each slide until there is no further fixation movement of the patient's eye (alternate cover test). The reading of both the arms is noted at this moment and the sum total of the reading of both the arms gives the objective angle of anomaly. The subjective angle of anomaly is the angle at which the visual targets are superimposed.

The interpretation of this test is as follows-

- ◆ Angle of Anomaly = Objective Angle – Subjective Angle
- ◆ If Subjective Angle = Objective Angle → NRC
- ◆ If Subjective Angle < Objective Angle → ARC
- ◆ If Angle of Anomaly = Objective Angle → Harmonious ARC (full sensory adaptation)
- ◆ If Angle of Anomaly < Objective Angle → Unharmonious ARC

Worth Four Dot Test: This is a simple test utilizing red-green color dissociation. It is more dissociating than the

bagolini glasses and so less physiological. The apparatus for this test consists of a box containing four panes of glass, arranged in diamond formation, which are illuminated internally. The two internal panes are green, the upper one is red and lower one is white. The patient wears red and green goggles (as a convention red in front of right and green in front of left). The test can be performed separately for distance and near vision. The interpretation of this test is as follows-

- A) The patient sees all the four dots.
- normal binocular response with no manifest deviation (NRC with no heterotropia)
 - Harmonious ARC with manifest squint.
- B) The patient sees five dots.
- uncrossed diplopia with esotropia, red dots appear to the right
 - crossed diplopia with exotropia, red dots appear to the left of the green dots.
- C) The patient sees three green dots, suppression of right eye.
- D) The patient sees two red dots, suppression of left eye.

Hering Bielschowsky After-Image Test: This is a highly dissociating orthoptic test in which battery- powered camera flash is used to produce a vertical after image in one eye and a horizontal after image in the other eye. The center of flash is covered with a black mark (serves as a point of fixation and protects the fovea). Once an afterimage is created in each eye, the position of the images in relation to each other no longer depends on whether the eyes are open, closed, straight or crossed. The interpretation of this test depends on the fixation behaviour.

Procedure -

Each eye fixates on the center black mark of a glowing filament, first presented horizontally to the eye with a better visual acuity and then vertically to the poorer eye for 20 sec in a darkened room while the fellow eye is occluded. The patient indicates the relative position of the two gaps in the center of each afterimage. The gaps correspond to the visual direction of each fovea if central fixation is present.

Interpretation of results -

- ◆ **Cross response:** A symmetrical cross with the central gaps superimposed indicates a normal bifoveal correspondence (if eccentric fixation is excluded). This is irrespective of any deviation between the two eyes, i.e. any eso or exo-deviation with NRC still gives a symmetrical cross response.
- ◆ **Asymmetrical crossing:** In case of ARC the horizontal and vertical lines have their center separated, the amount of separation dependent on the angle of anomaly. A patient with right esotropia sees the vertical afterimage displaced to the left and a case of right exotropia sees the vertical afterimage displaced to the right.
- ◆ **Single line with a gap:** A single line with a gap indicates suppression in the fellow eye.

Foveo-Foveal Test of Cuppers: Cuppers test for retinal correspondence determines whether the two foveas have common or different visual directions. It permits quantitative analysis of the angle of anomaly when eccentric fixation is present.

Procedure -

The patient fixates with the normal eye on the central light of a Maddox scale via a plano mirror, which for the convenience of the examiner is turned in such a manner that the amblyopic eye looks straight ahead. The visuoscope asterisk is projected by the examiner onto the fovea of the amblyopic eye. The figure of the Maddox scale on which the patient sees the asterisk indicated the angle of anomaly.

Modification -

To determine which parts of the peripheral retina in the deviating eye have acquired a common visual direction with the fovea of the fixating eye, the patient is asked to guide the Visuoscope until he sees the asterisk superimposed on the central light of the Maddox cross. The examiner views the fundus when this task is completed and notes the position of the asterisk, which indicates the location of retinal elements having a common visual direction with the fovea of the sound eye.

Suppression

Suppression is the active cortical inhibition of the unwanted stimuli, to avoid binocular diplopia and confusion. While the former is overcome by peripheral suppression, the latter is overcome by central/foveal suppression. Tests used to diagnose the suppression are

1. Worth's four dot test
2. Synaptophore
3. Friend test
4. Amsler Grid
5. 4 Δ prism base out test
6. Red filter test
7. Bagolini's striated glasses

Testing extent of suppression: The extent or the area of suppression can be charted under binocular conditions (fixating with one eye while the field of other eye is charted). This may be done by different methods

- ◆ Prisms to displace the central object peripherally till it can be visualized in different directions.
- ◆ Synaptophore: charting of one eye, while the other eye is used for fixation
- ◆ Lee's screen or Hess screen
- ◆ Polaroid Scotometer
- ◆ Phase difference haploscopy of Aulhorn

The various responses that can be observed are

- ◆ With more dissociating tests like prisms, Lee's etc. single large coarse scotomas are seen; these extend from fovea to the diplopia point.
- ◆ With less dissociating tests like Aulhorn phase difference haploscope and Polaroid scotometer, two discrete scotoma are seen. These are foveal scotoma about 2-3 degrees in size and diplopia point scotoma.

Depth of Scotoma - The depth or intensity of scotoma can be seen by using differential stimulation of the two eyes. The graded density filter bar of Bagolini is useful. As the denser filters are brought over the dominant eye, the relative scotoma of the amblyopic eye start disappearing or shrinking in size.

4 Δ prism base out test - Image displacement with a weak base out prism, while one observes the resulting binocular (version) and monocular (fusional) eye movements, is a quick, sensitive screening test to assess whether bifoveal fusion or suppression of one fovea is present. Sudden displacement of an image with a base out prism from one fovea onto the parafoveal temporal retina will elicit a refixation movement if the image has been shifted within a normally functioning retina, but no movement will occur if the image has been shifted within a nonfunctioning (that is, scotomatous) area. According to Hering's law the movement of the fellow eye will be biphic, that is, it will move outward simultaneously and symmetrically (version) when the eye under the prism refixates and then will perform a slow fusional movement (duction) in the opposite direction to correct for the image displacement. However if a central scotoma has impaired foveal function, the second phase (the fusional movement) does not occur, and the eye remains slightly turned out.

Simultaneous Macular Perception

This is the most elementary type of binocularity and is tested with the help of SMP slides on the synaptophore, which depicts objects which are dissimilar, but mutually agnostic (e.g. presenting a picture of a square to one eye and a circle to other). The commonly used slides are bird and cage, lion and cage, butterfly and net.

If superimposition occurs, it is necessary to make a more accurate assessment by using target slides of different sizes.

- ◆ Simultaneous foveal perception slide – subtend an angle of 1 degree at the nodal point
- ◆ Simultaneous parafoveal perception slides – subtend angle of 1-3 degree
- ◆ Simultaneous paramacular perception slides – subtend angle of 3-5 degree
- ◆ Simultaneous peripheral perception slides – subtend angle greater than 5 degrees

The term simultaneous perception does not necessarily mean bifoveal fixation as it can also occur in ARC. It merely indicates the presence or absence of suppression. This

term is erroneous as it embraces both foveal and parafoveal perception in the same definition.

Tests for Fusion: Fusion is demonstrated by using slides in which similar pictures with different controls are presented to the eyes simultaneously e.g. letter L and F fused into E, rabbit with a tail and rabbit with flower in hand, fused into one rabbit having tail and flower.

Normal fusion amplitudes are

- A) Horizontal vergences
 - Convergence → 35 Δ to 40 Δ
 - Divergence → 5 Δ to 7 Δ
- B) Vertical vergence
 - Supravergence → 3 Δ
 - Infravergence → 3 Δ
- C) Cyclovergence → 2-3 Δ

Fusion assessment is essential both for the prognosis and management of strabismus. Fusion is essential for the restoration of BSV. Various tests used to find out the presence of fusion are

- ◆ Worth's 4-dot test
- ◆ Bagolini's striated glasses
- ◆ Synaptophore

Tests for Stereopsis: Tests on stereopsis can be based on two principles-

- ◆ Using targets which lie in two planes, but are so constructed that they stimulate disparate retinal elements and give a three dimensional effect, for example
 - Circular perspective diagram such as the concentric rings
 - Titmus fly test, TNO test, Random dot stereograms, Polaroid test
 - Langs stereo test
 - Stereoscopic targets presented haploscopically in major amblyoscope
- ◆ Using 3 dimensional targets (e.g. Lang's two pencil test).
- ◆ Stereopsis tests may be qualitative or quantitative. Stereopsis is measured in seconds of arc.
 - Qualitative tests for Stereopsis
 - Lang's 2 pencil test
 - Synaptophore
 - Quantitative tests for Stereopsis
 - Random dot test
 - TNO Test
 - Lang's stereo test

Methods using Polarization: Targets are provided as vectographs and images seen by one eye is polarized at 90 degree using polarized glasses.

- ◆ Titmus stereo fly test
- ◆ Polaroid test
- ◆ Random dot stereograms
- ◆ TNO test

Stereograms: Stereogram with three concentric circles and a check dot for each eye is to be seen with both eyes together. Stereograms with three eccentric circles are to be seen with each eye separately. If the patient reports seeing concentric circles, it means stereopsis is present. If they are seen eccentrically one may ask whether the inner circles are closer to the right or left of the outer circle. It determines whether the disparate elements are suppressed in the right or the left eye.

Vectographs: Consists of Polaroid material on which the two targets are imprinted so that each target is polarized at 90 degrees with respect to the other. Patient is provided with Polaroid spectacles so that each target is seen separately with the two eyes.

Titmus stereo test – A gross stereoscopic pattern representing a housefly is provided to orient the patient and check for gross stereopsis (threshold 3000 sec of arc). Can be used in young children. Disadvantage of this test is that it can test only near stereopsis.

Polaroid test – Two common types

1. Contain three rows of animals, one animal in each row imaged disparately (threshold 100, 200 and 400 sec. of arc respectively). The child is asked which one of the animals stands out. The animal figures contain a misleading clue. In each row one of the animals correspondingly imaged in two eyes is printed heavily black. A child without stereopsis will name this animal as the one that stands out.
2. Contains nine sets of four circles arranged in the form of a diamond. In this sequence the upper, lower, left or right are disparately imaged at random with thresholds ranging from 800 to 40 sec of arc. The child is now asked to push down the circle that stands out, beginning with the first set. A child with limited stereopsis will make mistakes or find no circle to push down.

E- Random Dot Test - This test consists of two cards, one with an 'E' stereo figure and the other stereoblank. A model of the figure is shown to the child before the test. The child is provided with Polaroid glasses and seated at 50 cms from the cards is required to point out the card which contains the "E".

Random Dot Stereogram of Julesz - Random dot stereogram, when viewed monocularly, convey no visual information and is seen as scattered random dots. When viewed binocularly, a square pattern appears in vivid depth above or below the level of the page. This test exposes the child to visual demands that are more difficult than those that occur under more casual conditions of seeing.

References

1. Kaufman FL, Alm A, Adler FH: *Adler's physiology of eye: clinical application*, 10th Ed. St Louis: Mosby, 2003.
2. Noorden GK von. *Binocular vision and ocular motility: theory and management of strabismus*, 5th Ed. St Louis: Mosby, 1996.
3. *Duane's Clinical Ophthalmology*. New York: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005.

Suggested Citation Format

Bhola R. Binocular Vision. EyeRounds.org. Jan 23, 2006; Available from <http://eyerounds.org/tutorials/Bhola-BinocularVision.htm>

last updated: 01-23-2006, reviewed for accuracy January 6, 2013

Tutorials

Retina & Vitreous

Intravitreal Injection Technique

A Primer for Ophthalmology Residents and Fellows

Lorraine Myers (Provencher), MD, David Almeida, MD, PhD, Michael D. Abràmoff, MD, PhD

January 6, 2015

Purpose

Treatment of retinal disease by intravitreal injection (IVI) has revolutionized the field of ophthalmology. It is estimated that over four million IVIs were performed in the United States in 2013, a number that is expected to continue to increase [1]. This procedure, considered a subspecialty skill, is increasingly performed in the office of comprehensive ophthalmologists, especially for the treatment of common eye diseases like choroidal neovascularization in age-related macular degeneration. Given the risk of complications, especially endophthalmitis and suprachoroidal hemorrhage, and the need to handle these complications, IVI by generalists is controversial and even opposed by some vitreoretinal specialists [2]. While this "scope of practice" debate continues on, ophthalmology residency programs are now training their residents to properly perform IVIs as part of a comprehensive curriculum. Unfortunately, a wide variety of IVI protocols exist in terms of aseptic technique, anesthetics, use of prophylactic antibiotics, and post-injection monitoring.

This article is intended to be a resource and primer for ophthalmology residents learning IVI. We aim to present a helpful, concise review of recent evidence surrounding IVI technique and describe IVI protocols at the Iowa City Veterans Affairs hospital and the University of Iowa.

IVI Complications: Why we debate protocol in the first place...

Common complications of IVI are injection site discomfort, subconjunctival (SC) hemorrhage, vitreous reflux, and transient elevation of intraocular pressure (IOP). Patients may also develop floaters, vitreous or retinal hemorrhage, and retinal detachment. The most dreaded complication of IVI, though rare, is endophthalmitis (EO), and much of IVI protocol is designed to minimize, or eliminate, EO due to human error. EO rates reported in large multi-center randomized controlled trials of anti-vascular endothelial growth factor (anti-VEGF) IVI range from 0.019% [3] to 0.09% [4] per injection.

Close examination of the events surrounding historical large outbreaks of infectious EO suggest that these outbreaks were not a result of the drug or the injection technique, but rather of the pharmacological compounding procedures used to prepare the syringes containing the drug. Noncompliance with standards and poor aseptic technique were the most likely cause, and implementation of and strict adherence to United States Pharmacopoeia requirements has since been emphasized [5]. "Areas for improvement" that remain are much of what this article will discuss.

Location: Where should IVI be performed?

IVIs are generally performed in the office. In fact, many papers on IVI do not mention the setting, as in-office IVI is assumed. However, performing IVI in the operating room (OR), a more controlled and sterile environment, may decrease EO incidence... but at considerable cost.

EO rates after IVI performed in the OR are very low. In 2014, a retrospective study of two Swiss eye hospitals of 40,011 IVIs, all performed in the OR, reported just three cases of EO for a rate of 0.0075% [6]. The only major procedural difference between the two hospitals was the use of post-operative antibiotics at one hospital, accounting for approximately 13,337 IVIs and two of the three EO cases. This study was limited by its lack of a control group. These EO rates for IVI performed in the OR could be loosely compared to the prospective and randomized CATT 2-year results of 12,886 office-based injections where EO rates were approximately 0.09% [7]. A retrospective series of 14,895 office-based IVIs, by Cheung *et al.*, reported EO rates of 0.057% [8]. Another retrospective study of 10,254 office-based IVIs, by Pilli *et al.*, reported 0.029% [9].

A 2012 report of a single-surgeon cohort study from Australia of 12,249 IVIs showed a statistically significant difference in EO incidence rates for IVIs performed in the office procedure room (0.12%) versus OR (0%) [10]. However, results were limited by a lack of randomization.

A more recent 2014 retrospective review by Tabandeh *et al.* compared EO rates for all patients who underwent IVI from 2009-2011 by two ophthalmologists (retinal specialists), one who performed IVI in the office and the other in the OR [11]. They included 11,710 IVI: 8,647 office-based and 3,063 performed in the OR. Of note, office-based IVI were done without a mask and with no limitation on conversation. There was no significant difference in the rate of EO between the office-based (0.035%) and OR (0.065%).

Based on the most recent data, OR-based injections have very low rates of EO. These rates, however, do not appear to be significantly less than rates for office-based injections. A large, randomized controlled trial comparing the two settings has yet to be published. Moving IVI to the OR would increase running costs, time per patient treated, and overall inconvenience to the patient. With so many patients requiring IVIs, the need to treat the underlying disease may outweigh the additional risk profile of in-office injections. For now, the majority of IVIs are performed in the office.

Lid Retraction Technique

The main goal of lid retraction is to avoid needle contamination by the lashes via involuntary/reflex lid closure during needle insertion. The first anti-VEGF study clearly showed an increase in complications when no retractor was used [12]. Sterility, ease of use, exposure, and patient comfort are all considerations. The majority of ophthalmologists use metal lid retractors [13], but several other mechanisms have been proposed, such as bimanual assisted eyelid retraction [14], conjunctival mold [15], upper lid retraction using a Desmarres retractor [16] and most recently, cotton-tipped applicator lid retraction [17]. No literature compares various retraction techniques and post-IVI complications, particularly EO.

Anesthesia

The primary goals of anesthesia are 1) prevent patient movement and involuntary lid closure during needle insertion and 2) increase patient comfort and patient compliance for a procedure that needs to be repeated frequently. Many approaches to ocular surface anesthesia have been reported and include topical drops, anesthetic-soaked applicators, gels, and SC injection of anesthetics. Most reported data show: 1) Topical anesthesia and SC anesthesia are no different, but SC anesthesia may have more side effects like SC hemorrhage. 2) Various forms of topical anesthesia are no different.

A study by Blaha *et al.* demonstrated no difference in pain score between proparacaine drops, tetracaine drops, lidocaine-soaked, cotton-tipped swabs, and SC lidocaine. SC lidocaine had the most side effects [18]. Another study found IVI to be less painful with SC injection, but when the pain from the SC injection was included, pain scores were no different than with topical anesthesia [19]. A study comparing proparacaine 0.5% drops, proparacaine + 4% lidocaine-soaked, cotton-tipped swabs, and 3.5% lidocaine gel found no difference in pain or burning scores [20].

One concern is that gel anesthetic may reduce the efficacy of ocular surface antisepsis (discussed in the next section). When povidone-iodine (PI) and lidocaine gel are inocu-



Figure 1: Subconjunctival injection, showing the injection of 0.2-0.4 mL of SC lidocaine in the superotemporal quadrant using a 1 mL syringe with a 30-gauge needle.

lated into culture media with bacteria, the same amount of bacteria grow as with lidocaine gel alone [21]. Another similar study confirmed these results but also found that PI applied for 5-30 seconds prior to lidocaine gel is as effective as PI alone [22]. Meaning, if gel is used, it should be applied after PI.

Topical Antisepsis

In a 2011 survey of 765 retinal specialists, > 99% use PI prior to IVI [13]. It is cheap, has broad-spectrum coverage over a range of concentrations, a fast kill-time (15-120 seconds), no reported resistance, and no reports of anaphylaxis [23]. If it is inadvertently "pushed" into the eye during injection, it should cause no harm to the eye [24].

- ◆ **Concentration:** A prospective, randomized study of 131 eyes by Friedman *et al.* showed that 5% PI for 30 seconds achieves a significant reduction in bacterial colonies formed [25].
- ◆ **Instillation vs Irrigation:** The Royal College of Ophthalmologists recommends irrigation of 5% PI in the conjunctival sac prior to cataract surgery [26]. The American Academy of Ophthalmology recommends 5% PI drops by instillation [27]. In a prospective controlled trial of 200 eyes undergoing anterior segment intraocular surgery, irrigation of the fornices with 5% PI was associated with significantly fewer positive conjunctival cultures compared to application of two drops on the conjunctiva [28].

While chlorhexidine may be more effective than PI when used in other settings, alcoholic chlorhexidine is toxic to the corneal epithelium. Aqueous chlorhexidine is safe and could be used in the setting of PI allergy [29].

To Mask or Not to Mask

Streptococci are reported to comprise 7% of the conjunctival flora [30]. In a report of 52 cases of EO, occurring in 105,536 IVIs, Staphylococci were responsible for 65% of cases and streptococci 31% [31]. A 2011 meta-analysis of most major US studies from 2005-2010 of EO after IVI of anti-VEGF agents reported streptococcal species were approximately three times more commonly the cause of post-IVI EO than post-intraocular surgery, where masks are worn [31]. This over-representation of streptococcus is believed to come from the oral cavity of either healthcare providers or the patient.

Wen *et al.* simulated an IVI under different conditions and found significantly more colony-forming bacteria are dispersed onto an agar plate when patients were speaking without a face mask compared with when wearing a face mask or remaining silent. They also found that speaking in a reclined position (in an ophthalmic exam chair, reclined so that the patient's face is parallel to the floor) results in significantly MORE colony-forming bacteria on the culture plate (placed on the forehead) than on the background control plate [32]. This indicates that a fully reclined, unmasked patient may disperse bacteria towards the eyes. There is currently no published data on masked

and reclined patients and whether this would increase or decrease contamination. In the OR, a patient's nasopharyngeal area is typically covered by an adhesive drape to isolate the eye and periorbital region. It is unlikely that a simple surgical mask would be as efficacious.

A study of ten surgeons reciting a 30-second script in four different scenarios compared bacterial growth on a blood agar plate with no facemask, the use of a standard surgical facemask, no mask but 5% PI pre-treated plate, and no mask but silence. There was significantly less bacterial growth for the facemask group and silence group compared to no mask, but pre-treated PI plates, even without facemask, demonstrated the least bacterial growth overall [33]. Conversely, a study of needle contamination between unmasked talking versus silent breathing over a sterile needle for 30 seconds found no significant difference between needle cultures, suggesting there may be no need for silence during IVI [34]. This study, however, was limited by a very small sample size.

Shimada *et al.* published an efficacy report for IVI protocol at a single university hospital, where all anti-VEGF IVIs over 3 years (15,144 injections) were done with doctors and nurses wearing surgical masks, eyelid skin disinfected with 10% PI and conjunctiva with 0.25% PI, patients' faces were draped, and the conjunctival surface was washed with 5 ml of 0.25% PI, waiting 30 seconds before IVI. Post-IVI site was washed again and patients received three days of levofloxacin. EO rates were zero. Without a control group, unfortunately, it is impossible to know if results are related to masks, draping, antibiotics, or some other variable [35].

Despite simulation studies demonstrating reduced contamination of culture plates with masking and silence, wearing a facemask is still not considered a uniform standard in the ophthalmology community. Because of the sheer volume of IVI annually, the addition of facemasks for physicians and staff assisting in IVI would amount to an astounding increase in healthcare costs, up to \$1.5 million annually [35].

Needle Size and Injection Technique: What needle to use...and how to use it.

A variety of options exist. The needle gauge used for IVI, the angle of needle insertion (or "incision"), the depth of insertion, and the speed of insertion and how these variables affect drug reflux, needle contamination, vitreous incarceration, pain, scleral damage, and drug delivery have all been reported.

Several comparative studies of human eyes undergoing IVI report that vitreous reflux (measured by the size of post-IVI subconjunctival bleb) is significantly lower in tunneled scleral injection when compared to straight injection techniques [36-39]. There appears to be no difference in patient discomfort between tunneled and straight techniques [36,38], and there was no difference in IOP spike at 5 minutes after injection [38]. A more recent prospective study, by Özkaya *et al.*, compared the effects of straight, oblique, and double-plane tunnel scleral IVI, on short-term

IOP changes, vitreous reflux, and other complications [40]. They found that double-plane tunneled IVI prevents VR from the injection site and has no more complications than alternative techniques (Figure 2).

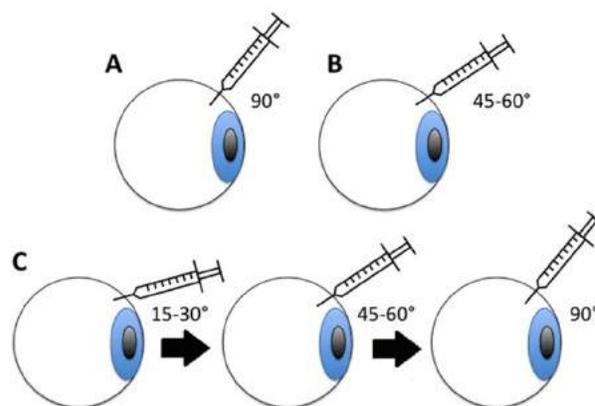


Figure 2: Schematic illustration of three different needle path penetration techniques—(A) perpendicular or straight, (B) oblique, and (C) double-plane tunnel, where the sclera is penetrated at 15-30°, then the needle is repositioned to a 45-60° angle while sclera is still engaged (this creates a tunnel in two separate planes). The drug is delivered and then the needle is withdrawn at 90°.

Larger 26- and 27-gauge needles are reported to cause greater vitreous reflux in comparison to 29- and 30-gauge needles. However, the width of the needle significantly affected the degree of reflux only when using the non-beveled incision [36]. Another study of IVI on porcine eyes found that 30-gauge needles showed less drug reflux than 32-gauge or 27-gauge. Thirty-two-gauge needles demonstrated less incarceration of vitreous at the tract site, but all needle tracts showed some internal vitreous incarceration (Figure 3). Deep IVI showed less reflux than superficial, but vitreous incarceration did not differ. Speed of injection did not modify the reflux or the vitreous incarceration [41]. Patients injected with the 26- or 27-gauge needle experienced more pain matched to the 29- and 30-gauge needles [36].



Figure 3: Intravitreal injection using straight technique and a 32-gauge needle.

A study analyzing the effects of various needles on porcine eyes found less ocular damage and smaller scleral holes with increased needle gauge for both perpendicular (or straight) and tunneled injection. Statistical analysis of data showed higher probability of scleral opening reduction when a tunneled incision was used [39]. The same study found that residual drug volume was lower in small syringes of 0.3 mL connected to long 12.7-mm needles, implying that the popular use of 1-mL syringes may not be most appropriate. Needle size appears not to be a risk factor for contamination during IVT injection [42].

The IOP Spike

The mechanism of post-IVI elevation in IOP is likely due to increased volume of intraocular contents [43]. The spike is usually transient. Gismondi *et al.* found a significant difference in pre-IVI IOP and post-IVI IOP after five seconds to 30 minutes but not after one hour or one day [44]. Several other studies report similar findings, with most patients measuring increased IOP compared to baseline at 30 minutes post-IVI and then normal IOP by one week of follow-up [45]. Interestingly, there appears to be no difference in IOP for the type of medication injected, which often vary in volume [46]. There may be a relationship between axial length and very transient post-IVI spike in IOP, but data are conflicting. Gismondi *et al.* found a significant relationship between shorter axial length and post-ranibizumab IOP after five seconds but not one hour [44]. A more recent study using bevacizumab showed shorter eyes had a higher IOP at one and 15 minutes post-IVI [47]. Goktas *et al.*, however, found no relationship between axial length or anterior chamber depth and post-ranibizumab IOP [48].

Strategies to prevent the IOP spike, temporary artery occlusion, and loss of vision

- ◆ Prophylactic IOP-lowering medications are ineffective at preventing IOP spikes post-pegaptanib, ranibizumab, and bevacizumab, as increased IOP persists in the setting of pre-IVI IOP-lowering drops [49].
- ◆ A few studies have investigated use of the Honan Intraocular Pressure Reducer (HIPR) to prevent post-IVI pressure spikes. A prospective, controlled, investigator-blinded, randomized clinical study of 60 eyes showed that HIPR effectively decreased pre-IVI IOP but post-IVI IOP was not significantly different in eyes that underwent pre-IVI HIPR compared to controls. Pre-IVI use of HIPR did appear to reduce vitreous reflux [50]. Conversely, an earlier prospective, controlled, non-randomized study of 60 eyes showed lower post-IVI IOP in the HIPR group at 10 minutes compared to a non-HIPR group. HIPR did NOT appear to reduce vitreous reflux in this report [51].
- ◆ Ocular digital massage is a technique often employed in the management of glaucoma. A small non-randomized study showed that eyes receiving pre-IVI, intermittent

digital massage for 5 minutes had significantly lower IOP immediately following and 10 minutes after IVI compared to eyes that did not receive ocular massage [52].

Occasionally, post-IVI IOP remains elevated. The exact mechanism of sustained ocular hypertension is controversial. Though sustained elevation in IOP is reported to occur in patients with no prior history of glaucoma, glaucoma suspect, or ocular hypertension (OHT), some studies suggest that patients with glaucoma may experience sustained IOP elevation at a greater rate than those without an existing diagnosis of glaucoma or OHT [45].

As with any other cause (or unknown cause) of elevated IOP, concern surrounds potential damage to the optic nerve resulting from decreased perfusion. Post-IVI temporary occlusion of central retinal artery, which quickly resolved with anterior paracentesis, has been reported [53]. In a 2011 survey of United States retinal specialists, nearly three-fourths of survey respondents (72%) routinely assess post-IVI optic nerve perfusion in some way. Of these, 32% perform a gross visual acuity examination by finger counting (Figure 4) or hand motion assessment, 21% visualize the optic nerve by indirect ophthalmoscopy, 15% measure the IOP, and 31% use a combination of these techniques [13].

Post IVI Antibiotics

The use of topical antibiotics is standard after ocular surgery. This principle was carried over to IVI, and logically so. In a 2011 survey of AAO retinal specialists, 81% (608/753) of respondents reported using post-IVI prophylactic antibiotics [13]. Topical antibiotics do reduce conjunctival bacterial growth [30], but no randomized controlled trials show a reduction in EO with post-IVI antibiotic use.

A low rate of EO can be achieved without topical antibiotics. Bhavsar *et al.* reported EO rates based on protocol requiring topical PI, sterile lid speculum, and topical anesthetic across four DRCR.net randomized trials. No topical antibiotics, sterile gloves, or sterile drapes were used. Of 8,027 IVIs, seven cases of EO occurred, and six of these seven received antibiotics [4].

A retrospective case control study of 117,171 IVI with or without antibiotics, reported that antibiotics do not seem to reduce EO but are actually associated with a trend toward higher incidence of EO, though the increased risk (odds ratio 1.54) was not statistically significant [54].

In a retrospective review of 15,895 IVIs of ranibizumab, bevacizumab, triamcinolone acetonide, or pegaptanib sodium where 9 eyes of 9 patients developed suspected EO (only 3 were culture positive), the incidence per injection was 0.06% for patients who were given 5 days of post-IVI antibiotics, 0.08% for those who received antibiotics immediately after IVI, and 0.04% for those receiving no antibiotics. However, statistical significance was not demonstrated [8].

Use of topical antibiotics may lead to increase in resistant organisms. Dave *et al.* demonstrated that eyes treated with

post-IVI topical fluoroquinolones develop multi-drug resistant conjunctival flora (90% *S. epidermidis*) compared to controls (69% *S. epidermidis*) after just four IVIs ($p < 0.02$) [55]. Similarly, Milder *et al.* found that treated eyes had 87.5% resistance to fluoroquinolones compared to 25% in controls ($P = 0.04$) [56]. In a non-randomized, prospective cohort study by Vin *et al.*, the group receiving three days of post-IVI topical moxifloxacin had a higher culture-positive rate at one, two, and three months compared to the control group. MIC levels increased by 20% in the intervention group compared to a 5% decrease in the control group, and resistant isolates and MIC90 were approximately four times higher in the intervention group [57].

In a prospective, controlled longitudinal study of 24 patients (48 eyes), Dave *et al.* reported *S. epidermidis* and *S. aureus* comprise 54.5% and 18.2% of cultured isolates, respectively, prior to azithromycin exposure, and 90.9% ($P < 0.01$) and 4.5% ($P < 0.01$), respectively, after azithromycin exposure. In another group, 45.7% and 6.5% of isolates are *S. epidermidis* and *S. aureus*, respectively, at baseline, then 63.4% ($P < 0.03$) and 13% ($P = 0.24$) after fluoroquinolone exposure [55].

The good news? Ocular surface preparation for IVI using PI 5% alone in the absence of post-injection topical antibiotics does not appear to promote bacterial resistance or a discernible change in conjunctival flora [58].

The Safety of Bilateral Injections

Many patients with bilateral disease, like choroidal neovascularization from age-related macular degeneration and diabetic macular edema, require IVI of both eyes. Same-day IVI is more convenient and cost-effective for patients, and many patients prefer bilateral injections [59]. Ophthalmologists must carefully weigh the risks and benefits of bilateral IVI. The most dreaded result of bilateral, same-day IVI is described in a 2013 case report of two patients who developed acute, bilateral EO following bilateral IVI [60].

A recent editorial by Chao *et al.* summarizes previous studies reporting bilateral, same-day IVI and associated EO incidence: From the University of Iowa, 102 patients, 452 injections, no EO [59]; From Bascom Palmer Eye Institute, 127 patients, 1,322 injections, no EO [61]; From a cohort in Korea, 135 patients, 574 injections, no EO [62]; From New York City cohort, 367 patients, 1,552 injections, one case of unilateral, culture-negative EO (0.033%) and two cases of culture-proven, unilateral EO (0.065%) [63]. They also give data from retina clinics at the Miami Veterans Affairs Hospital, where bilateral, same-day IVI are often performed, and performed by residents and fellows. From October 2007 to May 2014, 660 same-day, bilateral and 3,570 unilateral IVI were delivered. Patients undergoing same-day injections had each eye performed without reuse of any instruments or medications, meaning each eye was treated as though it belonged to a separate patient. There were zero cases of EO, and 438 of the 660 bilateral injections were delivered without topical antibiotics, as they discontinued use of topical antibiotics in August 2011. Masks, sterile gloves, and drapes were not used. They concluded,

based on the data presented and data reviewed, that bilateral, same-day injections are safe [64].

Our Protocol

The protocol described below is used at the Iowa City Veterans Affairs Medical Center (VAMC). There is minor variation in protocol at University of Iowa Hospitals and Clinics (UIHC), based primarily on specialist preference.

UIHC variation is shown in italics and portrayed in Video 1

Video: UIHC technique for intravitreal injection.
vimeo.com/116066821.

1. Put the patient in an exam chair reclined at 30 degrees.
2. Verify the correct patient, correct eye, and correct medication. If bilateral injections are to occur, make sure drug lot numbers are different, i.e. different compounding.
3. Draw up the medication in a 1 mL syringe with an 18-gauge filter needle, using sterile technique.
4. Exchange the needle for a 30-gauge, *or 32-gauge*, 0.5 inch needle.
5. Set up a sterile field on tray table.
6. Place 1 drop of proparacaine in the eye to be injected
7. Anesthesia:
 - a. Take two cotton swabs, soaked in 4% lidocaine, and hold over injection site for 60 seconds, repeat two more times.
 - b. Inject 0.2-0.4 mL of SC lidocaine in the superotemporal or inferotemporal quadrant using a 1 mL syringe with a 30-gauge needle.*
8. All medical personnel in the room should wear a mask, and the patient is asked not to speak during the procedure.
 - a. The patient is also asked to wear a mask for simultaneous, bilateral injections at the VAMC.
9. Put on sterile gloves.
10. Insert the lid speculum.
11. Drench the conjunctiva with PI using soaked cotton-tipped applicators. Massage the anterior chamber at the limbus with the cotton-tipped applicator when administering PI. Similar to ocular digital massage, this may evacuate the anterior chamber and reduce IOP, both pre-IVI and post-IVI. *Limbal massage is not done at UIHC.*
12. Mark a superotemporal injection site 3.5 mm from limbus using calipers, taking care to avoid trabeculec-tomy blebs if necessary.
13. Apply one drop of 5% PI to the injection site, and wait 30 seconds.

14. Apply one final drop of 5% PI to injection site, immediately followed by:
15. Injection by scleral tunnel technique, ensuring a smooth and gradual insertion of the needle.
 - a. *Inject directly into the eye (no scleral tunnel). Immediately cover the wound with a cotton-tipped applicator for 5 seconds after the medicine has been injected.*
16. Cover opposite eye and assess whether the patient can count fingers held directly in front of them.
17. Remove the eyelid speculum.
18. Verify the absence of central retinal artery pulsations by indirect ophthalmoscopy. If there are pulsations or reduced vision, check IOP with a Tonopen. *Post-IVI monitoring is not routinely performed at UIHC.*
19. Rinse the eye with 3 mL 0.9% sodium chloride, repeat two more times.

References

1. Williams GA. IVT Injections: Health Policy Implications, 2014. [rev. Jun 5, 2014; Accessed Oct 13, 2014] www.reviewofophthalmology.com/content/d/retinal_insider/c/48732/.
2. Karmel M. Community Eye M.D.s Tackle The Intravitreal Injection. *EyeNet Magazine* 2008;12(3):39-43.
3. Mason JO, 3rd, White MF, Feist RM, Thomley ML, Albert MA, Persaud TO, Yunker JJ, Vail RS. Incidence of acute onset endophthalmitis following intravitreal bevacizumab (Avastin) injection. *Retina* 2008;28(4):564-7.
4. Bhavsar AR, Stockdale CR, Ferris FL, 3rd, Brucker AJ, Bressler NM, Glassman AR, Diabetic Retinopathy Clinical Research N. Update on risk of endophthalmitis after intravitreal drug injections and potential impact of elimination of topical antibiotics. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2012;130(6):809-10.
5. Gonzalez S, Rosenfeld PJ, Stewart MW, Brown J, Murphy SP. Avastin doesn't blind people, people blind people. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2012;153(2):196-203 e1.
6. Casparis H, Wolfensberger TJ, Becker M, Eich G, Graf N, Ambresin A, Mantel I, Michels S. Incidence of presumed endophthalmitis after intravitreal injection performed in the operating room: a retrospective multicenter study. *Retina* 2014;34(1):12-7.
7. Comparison of Age-related Macular Degeneration Treatments Trials Research G, Martin DF, Maguire MG, Fine SL, Ying GS, Jaffe GJ, Grunwald JE, Toth C, Redford M, Ferris FL, 3rd. Ranibizumab and bevacizumab for treatment of neovascular age-related macular degeneration: two-year results. *Ophthalmology* 2012;119(7):1388-98.
8. Cheung CS, Wong AW, Lui A, Kertes PJ, Devenyi RG, Lam WC. Incidence of endophthalmitis and use of antibiotic prophylaxis after intravitreal injections. *Ophthalmology* 2012;119(8):1609-14.
9. Pilli S, Kotsolis A, Spaide RF, Slakter J, Freund KB, Sorenson J, Klanchnik J, Cooney M. Endophthalmitis associated with intravitreal anti-vascular endothelial growth factor therapy injections in an office setting. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2008;145(5):879-82.
10. Abell RG, Kerr NM, Allen P, Vote BJ. Intravitreal injections: is there benefit for a theatre setting? *Br J Ophthalmol* 2012;96(12):1474-8.
11. Tabandeh H, Boscia F, Sborgia A, Ciraci L, Dayani P, Mariotti C, Furino C, Flynn HW, Jr. Endophthalmitis associated with intravitreal injections: office-based setting and operating room setting. *Retina* 2014;34(1):18-23.
12. Gragoudas ES, Adamis AP, Cunningham ET, Jr., Feinsod M, Guyer DR, Group VISiONCT. Pegaptanib for neovascular age-related macular degeneration. *N Engl J Med* 2004;351(27):2805-16.
13. Green-Simms AE, Ekdawi NS, Bakri SJ. Survey of intravitreal injection techniques among retinal specialists in the United States. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2011;151(2):329-32.
14. Fineman MS, Hsu J, Spirn MJ, Kaiser RS. Bimanual assisted eyelid retraction technique for intravitreal injections. *Retina* 2013;33(9):1968-70.
15. Ratnarajan G, Nath R, Appaswamy S, Watson SL. Intravitreal injections using a novel conjunctival mould: a comparison with a conventional technique. *Br J Ophthalmol* 2013;97(4):395-7.
16. Mason RW. Use of a Desmarres retractor for upper lid and lash isolation during intravitreal injections. *Retina* 2013;33(10):2175-6.
17. Shrier EM. Cotton-tip applicator lid retraction technique for controlled intravitreal injection. *Retina* 2014;34(6):1244-6.
18. Blaha GR, Tilton EP, Barouch FC, Marx JL. Randomized trial of anesthetic methods for intravitreal injections. *Retina* 2011;31(3):535-9.
19. Kaderli B, Avci R. Comparison of topical and subconjunctival anesthesia in intravitreal injection administrations. *Eur J Ophthalmol* 2006;16(5):718-21.
20. Davis MJ, Pollack JS, Shott S. Comparison of topical anesthetics for intravitreal injections : a randomized clinical trial. *Retina* 2012;32(4):701-5.
21. Boden JH, Myers ML, Lee T, Bushley DM, Torres MF. Effect of lidocaine gel on povidone-iodine antisepsis and microbial survival. *J Cataract Refract Surg* 2008;34(10):1773-5.
22. Doshi RR, Leng T, Fung AE. Povidone-iodine before lidocaine gel anesthesia achieves surface antisepsis. *Ophthalmic Surg Lasers Imaging* 2011;42(4):346-9.
23. Wykoff CC, Flynn HW, Jr., Rosenfeld PJ. Prophylaxis for endophthalmitis following intravitreal injection: antisepsis and antibiotics. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2011;152(5):717-9 e2.

24. Whitacre MM, Crockett RS. Tolerance of intravitreal povidone-iodine in rabbit eyes. *Curr Eye Res* 1990;9(8):725-32.
25. Friedman DA, Mason JO, 3rd, Emond T, McGwin G, Jr. Povidone-iodine contact time and lid speculum use during intravitreal injection. *Retina* 2013;33(5):975-81.
26. *Cataract Surgery Guidelines*. London, England: The Royal College of Ophthalmologists, Scientific Department, 2010.
27. American Academy of Ophthalmology Cataract and Anterior Segment Panel. *Preferred Practice Pattern Guidelines: Cataract in the adult eye*. San Francisco, CA: American Academy of Ophthalmology, 2011.
28. Mino de Kaspar H, Chang RT, Singh K, Egbert PR, Blumenkranz MS, Ta CN. Prospective randomized comparison of 2 different methods of 5% povidone-iodine applications for anterior segment intraocular surgery. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2005;123(2):161-5.
29. Hamill MB, Osato MS, Wilhelmus KR. Experimental evaluation of chlorhexidine gluconate for ocular antisepsis. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1984;26(6):793-6.
30. Moss JM, Sanislo SR, Ta CN. A prospective randomized evaluation of topical gatifloxacin on conjunctival flora in patients undergoing intravitreal injections. *Ophthalmology* 2009;116(8):1498-501.
31. McCannel CA. Meta-analysis of endophthalmitis after intravitreal injection of anti-vascular endothelial growth factor agents: causative organisms and possible prevention strategies. *Retina* 2011;31(4):654-61.
32. Wen JC, McCannel CA, Mochon AB, Garner OB. Bacterial dispersal associated with speech in the setting of intravitreal injections. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2011;129(12):1551-4.
33. Doshi RR, Leng T, Fung AE. Reducing oral flora contamination of intravitreal injections with face mask or silence. *Retina* 2012;32(3):473-6.
34. Friedman DA, Lindquist TP, Mason JO, 3rd, McGwin G. Needle contamination in the setting of intravitreal injections. *Retina* 2014;34(5):929-34.
35. Schimel AM, Scott IU, Flynn HW, Jr. Endophthalmitis after intravitreal injections: should the use of face masks be the standard of care? *Arch Ophthalmol* 2011;129(12):1607-9.
36. Rodrigues EB, Grumann A, Jr., Penha FM, Shiroma H, Rossi E, Meyer CH, Stefano V, Maia M, Magalhaes O, Jr., Farah ME. Effect of needle type and injection technique on pain level and vitreal reflux in intravitreal injection. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther* 2011;27(2):197-203.
37. Rodrigues EB, Meyer CH, Grumann A, Jr., Shiroma H, Aguni JS, Farah ME. Tunneled scleral incision to prevent vitreal reflux after intravitreal injection. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2007;143(6):1035-7.
38. Knecht PB, Michels S, Sturm V, Bosch MM, Menke MN. Tunnelled versus straight intravitreal injection: intraocular pressure changes, vitreous reflux, and patient discomfort. *Retina* 2009;29(8):1175-81.
39. De Stefano VS, Abechain JJ, de Almeida LF, Verginassi DM, Rodrigues EB, Freymuller E, Maia M, Magalhaes O, Nguyen QD, Farah ME. Experimental investigation of needles, syringes and techniques for intravitreal injections. *Clin Experiment Ophthalmol* 2011;39(3):236-42.
40. Ozkaya A, Alkin Z, Celik U, Yuksel K, Ozgurhan EB, Agca A, Yazici AT, Demirok A. Comparing the effects of three different intravitreal injection techniques on vitreous reflux and intraocular pressure. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther* 2013;29(3):325-9.
41. Hubschman JP, Coffee RE, Bourges JL, Yu F, Schwartz SD. Experimental model of intravitreal injection techniques. *Retina* 2010;30(1):167-73.
42. Tufan HA, Vural A, Gencer B, Kara S, Arikan S, Yuksel E. Bacterial contamination of needles used for intravitreal injections: comparison between 27-gauge and 30-gauge needles. *Ocul Immunol Inflamm* 2013;21(5):366-70.
43. Kotliar K, Maier M, Bauer S, Feucht N, Lohmann C, Lanzl I. Effect of intravitreal injections and volume changes on intraocular pressure: clinical results and biomechanical model. *Acta Ophthalmol Scand* 2007;85(7):777-81.
44. Gismondi M, Salati C, Salvatat ML, Zeppieri M, Brusini P. Short-term effect of intravitreal injection of Ranibizumab (Lucentis) on intraocular pressure. *J Glaucoma* 2009;18(9):658-61.
45. SooHoo JR, Seibold LK, Kahook MY. The link between intravitreal antivascular endothelial growth factor injections and glaucoma. *Curr Opin Ophthalmol* 2014;25(2):127-33.
46. Bakri SJ, Pulido JS, McCannel CA, Hodge DO, Diehl N, Hillemeier J. Immediate intraocular pressure changes following intravitreal injections of triamcinolone, pegaptanib, and bevacizumab. *Eye (Lond)* 2009;23(1):181-5.
47. Cacciamani A, Oddone F, Parravano M, Scarinci F, Di Nicola M, Lofoco G. Intravitreal injection of bevacizumab: changes in intraocular pressure related to ocular axial length. *Jpn J Ophthalmol* 2013;57(1):63-7.
48. Goktas A, Goktas S, Atas M, Demircan S, Yurtsever Y. Short-term impact of intravitreal ranibizumab injection on axial ocular dimension and intraocular pressure. *Cutan Ocul Toxicol* 2013;32(1):23-6.
49. Frenkel MP, Haji SA, Frenkel RE. Effect of prophylactic intraocular pressure-lowering medication on intraocular pressure spikes after intravitreal injections. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2010;128(12):1523-7.
50. Hong SW, Jee D. Effect of the Honan intraocular pressure reducer to prevent vitreous reflux after intravitreal bevacizumab injection. *Eur J Ophthalmol* 2012;22(4):615-9.
51. Kim KS, Jee D. Effect of the Honan intraocular pressure reducer on intraocular pressure increase following intravitreal injection using the tunneled scleral technique. *Jpn J Ophthalmol* 2011;55(6):632-7.

52. Lee J, Hwang JH, Park YS, Lee YJ, Lee BR. Preoperative ocular massage to lower the immediate intraocular pressure spike following intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide injection. *Investigative Ophthalmology & Visual Science* 2005;46(5):1454.
53. Baath J, Ells AL, Crichton A, Kherani A, Williams RG. Safety profile of intravitreal triamcinolone acetonide. *J Ocul Pharmacol Ther* 2007;23(3):304-10.
54. Storey P, Dollin M, Pitcher J, Reddy S, Vojtko J, Vander J, Hsu J, Garg SJ, Post-Injection Endophthalmitis Study T. The role of topical antibiotic prophylaxis to prevent endophthalmitis after intravitreal injection. *Ophthalmology* 2014;121(1):283-9.
55. Dave SB, Toma HS, Kim SJ. Changes in ocular flora in eyes exposed to ophthalmic antibiotics. *Ophthalmology* 2013;120(5):937-41.
56. Milder E, Vander J, Shah C, Garg S. Changes in antibiotic resistance patterns of conjunctival flora due to repeated use of topical antibiotics after intravitreal injection. *Ophthalmology* 2012;119(7):1420-4.
57. Yin VT, Weisbrod DJ, Eng KT, Schwartz C, Kohly R, Mandelcorn E, Lam WC, Daneman N, Simor A, Kertes PJ. Antibiotic resistance of ocular surface flora with repeated use of a topical antibiotic after intravitreal injection. *JAMA Ophthalmol* 2013;131(4):456-61.
58. Hsu J, Gerstenblith AT, Garg SJ, Vander JF. Conjunctival flora antibiotic resistance patterns after serial intravitreal injections without postinjection topical antibiotics. *Am J Ophthalmol* 2014;157(3):514-8 e1.
59. Mahajan VB, Elkins KA, Russell SR, Boldt HC, Gehrs KM, Weingeist TA, Stone EM, Abramoff MD, Liu D, Folk JC. Bilateral intravitreal injection of antivascular endothelial growth factor therapy. *Retina* 2011;31(1):31-5.
60. Tabatabaie A, Ahmadraji A, Khodabande A, Mansouri M. Acute bilateral endophthalmitis following bilateral intravitreal bevacizumab (avastin) injection. *Middle East Afr J Ophthalmol* 2013;20(1):87-8.
61. Davis RP, Scheffler AC, Murray TG. Concomitant bilateral intravitreal anti-VEGF injections for the treatment of exudative age-related macular degeneration. *Clin Ophthalmol* 2010;4:703-7.
62. Woo SJ, Han JM, Ahn J, Heo JW, Yu HG, Chung H, Song J, Park KU, Park KH. Bilateral same-day intravitreal injections using a single vial and molecular bacterial screening for safety surveillance. *Retina* 2012;32(4):667-71.
63. Lima LH, Zweifel SA, Engelbert M, Sorenson JA, Slakter JS, Cooney MJ, Klanck JM, Yannuzzi LA, Freund KB. Evaluation of safety for bilateral same-day intravitreal injections of antivascular endothelial growth factor therapy. *Retina* 2009;29(9):1213-7.
64. Chao DL, Gregori NZ, Khandji J, Goldhardt R. Safety of bilateral intravitreal injections delivered in a teaching institution. *Expert Opin Drug Deliv* 2014;11(7):991-3.

Citing this article

Myers (Provencher) LA, Almeida D, Abramoff MD. Intravitreal Injection Technique: A Primer for Ophthalmology Residents and Fellows. EyeRounds.org. January 6, 2015; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/intravitreal-injection/

last updated: 01/06/2015

Full-Thickness Macular Hole (FTMH)

Ben J. Janson, MD and Ian C. Han, MD

posted November 22, 2017

CASE PRESENTATION

Chief Complaint

"My vision is blurry and distorted."

History of Present Illness

The patient is a 68-year-old female with a history of non-exudative macular degeneration referred for vision changes. She began to notice increased difficulty reading due to blurry vision and distortion of vision in the right eye (OD) about 6 months prior to presentation. The left eye (OS) was unchanged. She had no previous history of exudative macular degeneration.

Past Ocular History

Non-exudative macular degeneration of both eyes (OU), nuclear sclerosis cataracts OU

Past Medical History

Hypertension, gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), hemifacial spasm with facial nerve release, carpal tunnel syndrome, bilateral knee replacements

Medications

AREDS vitamins, hydrochlorothiazide, propranolol, ranitidine

Allergies

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

Family History

Non-contributory

Social History

Non-contributory

Review of Systems

Negative except for what is detailed in the history of present illness

OCULAR EXAMINATION

Visual Acuity with correction by Snellen chart

- ◆ OD: 20/80-1 eccentrically (pinhole no improvement)
- ◆ OS: 20/20-2 (pinhole no improvement)

Ocular Motility/Alignment

- ◆ Full ocular motility OU, orthophoria in primary gaze

Intraocular Pressure (by Tonopen)

- ◆ OD: 17 mmHg
- ◆ OS: 17 mmHg

Pupils

- ◆ OD: 4 mm in dark, 3 mm in light, no relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD)
- ◆ OS: 4 mm in dark, 3 mm in light, no RAPD

External

Normal

Slit lamp exam

- ◆ Lids/lashes: Normal OU
- ◆ Conjunctiva/sclera: Clear and quiet OU
- ◆ Cornea: Clear OU
- ◆ Anterior chamber: Deep and quiet OU
- ◆ Iris: Normal architecture OU
- ◆ Lens: 2+ nuclear sclerosis OU

Dilated fundus examination (DFE)

- ◆ Vitreous: No posterior vitreous detachment (PVD) OU
- ◆ Disc: Normal OU
- ◆ Cup-to-disc ratio: 0.2 OU
- ◆ Macula: 400 micron full-thickness macular hole OD. Pigment mottling and fine drusen OS.
- ◆ Vessels: Normal OU
- ◆ Periphery: Reticular pigment change OU

Additional Testing

- ◆ Spectralis ocular coherence tomography (OCT) OD: presence of full-thickness macular hole with interstitial and subretinal fluid. (Figure 1, next page)

Differential Diagnosis

- ◆ Full-thickness macular hole (primary or secondary)
- ◆ Lamellar macular hole
- ◆ Pseudohole

DIAGNOSIS

Full-thickness macular hole (FTMH) OD

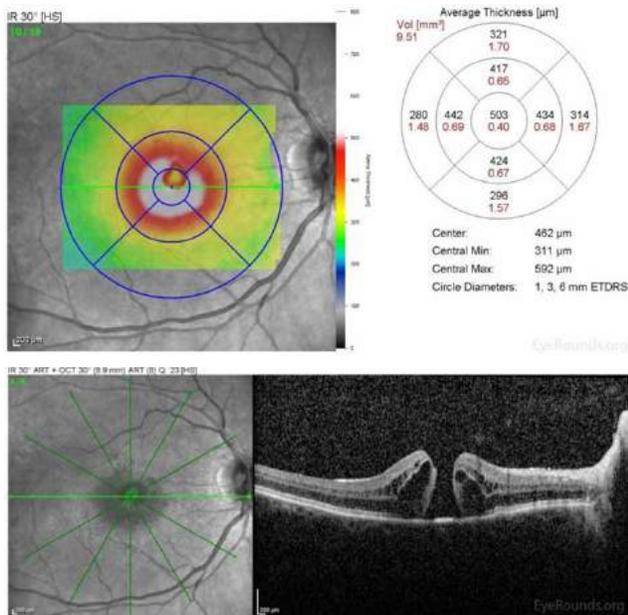


Figure 1: Spectralis ocular coherence tomography (OCT) of the macula OD on initial presentation demonstrating the presence of a full-thickness macular hole with interstitial and subretinal fluid.

CLINICAL COURSE

The patient underwent 23-gauge pars plana vitrectomy, epiretinal membrane (ERM) peel, fluid-air exchange, 25% sulfur hexafluoride (SF6) OD. At the one-month post-operative visit, the patient's vision with correction had improved from 20/80-1 eccentrically to 20/60-2 eccentrically. On OCT images there was interval closure of the macular hole (Image Set 2). Vision ultimately returned to 20/30 over six months and was stable five years later.

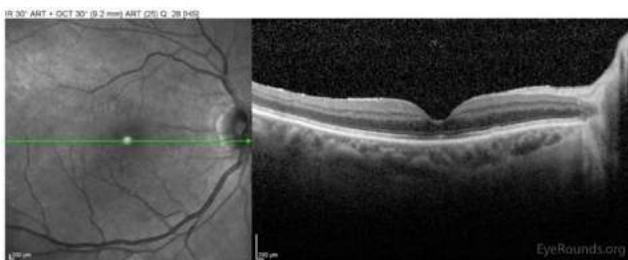


Figure 2: Spectralis OCT of the macula OD at the one-month post-operative visit demonstrating interval closure of the macular hole.

DISCUSSION

Etiology/Epidemiology

FTMHs are a relatively uncommon problem of the retina with a reported prevalence of 0.2 per 1000 persons in the Blue Mountains Study and to up to 3.3 per 1000 persons in the Baltimore Eye Study.[1] Incidence is 8 per 100,000 persons per year.[2] There is bilateral involvement in 5-20% of cases, but FTMHs rarely present simultaneously.[1-3]

FTMHs occur most in the 6th and 7th decades of life and have a female:male incidence of 2:1.[2,3] It is unknown why females are more likely to have a FTMH in this age-related, idiopathic disease.

Pathophysiology

FTMHs were first described in 1869 by Knapp.[1] Initially, the pathophysiology was believed to be degenerative, and hence the early name by Kuhnt was "retinitis atrophicansive rarificans centralis." [4] The understanding of the pathophysiology has expanded as examination techniques improved and with the advent of OCT.[1] FTMHs are currently divided into primary and secondary macular holes based on etiology.[1]

Vitreomacular traction plays a major role in the formation of primary FTMHs.[1,4,5] Gass, in his descriptions of the stages of macular holes, hypothesized that the shrinking of prefoveal vitreous cortex leads to anterior traction on the retina.[5] As the vitreous continues to detach, tangential traction from the prefoveal vitreous forms the hole within the fovea.[5] OCT has helped further our understanding of the vitreoretinal interface, showing that the process of PVD tends to begin peripherally, leading to persistent adherence at the fovea.[4] This detachment of the vitreous can begin early in life.[1]

The following points further illustrate the role of the vitreous detachment in the pathophysiology of FTMH. In patients with a FTMH, if the fellow eye has already undergone PVD, there is a very low risk of FTMH in the fellow eye.[4,5] In a study by Niwa, the fellow eyes of 201 patients with FTMHs were observed for two years. Of the fellow eyes of 201 patients, 58 still had vitreofoveal attachments. Of those 58 patients with vitreofoveal attachments, three patients developed a FTMH in the fellow eye, 24 had PVD over the fovea without macular hole, and 31 eyes did not have any changes in the vitreofoveal relationship over the two years.[6] Notably, macular holes developed only in those patients with changes in the vitreofoveal relationship.[6] In a series by Johnson, 96% of 26 eyes with Stage 1 or 2 idiopathic macular holes had a shallow, localized perifoveal vitreous detachment.[7] The vitreous often separates from the fovea last because of firm adherence to the areas of thinnest internal limiting membrane (ILM), including the 500 microns of the fovea. It is hypothesized that vitreous motion due to eye movement may exert localized forces on the fovea at the points of adherence.[7]

While the role of the vitreous is important in the pathophysiology of primary macular holes, retinal degeneration may also play a role. For example, some patients have developed macular holes after extended periods following vitrectomy, where vitreous has been previously removed. [8] Retinal thinning and degeneration may cause small holes to develop, which may close spontaneously via glial proliferation, and this hypothesis would explain the predominance of glial cells and Muller cells in the operculum. [8] Vitreous that is present may prevent closure due to the traction and chemical inhibition of cell migration.[8] It is likely that both degenerative and vitreous traction mechanisms are contributing to the pathophysiology.

In contrast to primary macular holes, FTMH can also be secondary, for example after trauma and sudden axial compression.[1] This leads to retinal rupture of the fovea in addition to other traumatic injuries including sclopetaria, peripheral retinal breaks, and commotio retinae. One major distinguishing feature of secondary macular holes is that the vitreous may not be detached and is a far less common etiology of macular holes than primary macular holes.[1]

Symptoms/Signs

Patients with macular holes may present with painless decreased central vision with a central scotoma and/or metamorphopsia.[3] In some cases, patients may not notice vision loss unless the other eye is occluded, especially for Stage 1 macular holes.[3] Visual acuity is not only decreased due to the central retinal tissue defect but also worsened by the surrounding retinal detachment and cystic changes that can be present.[3]

The clinical signs of macular holes depend on the stages as first defined by Gass.[5] Clinically, these stages were revised by Gass in 1995 and represented in Figure 1.[9] In Stage 1 macular holes, there is cystic foveal change that appears clinically as a yellow spot (Stage 1a) or a yellow foveal ring (Stage 1b). Stage 2 is a full-thickness retinal defect that has a pseudo-operculum and appears as an eccentric oval or crescent shaped defect on a yellow ring. Stage 2 often has an irreversible progression to Stage 3, which is a >400 micron full-thickness retinal defect with a persistent hyaloid attachment, often with a small ring of subretinal fluid. The presence of a Weiss ring suggesting the presence of a complete PVD qualifies as a Stage 4, and yellow deposits are often visible in the defect. The Watzke-Allen test is a useful clinical test for confirming a FTMH. In the Watzke-Allen test, a thin slit beam is projected over the suspected hole, and patients are asked to report if they see a break in the light beam, which confirms a full-thickness retinal defect.

Testing

Optical coherence tomography (OCT) is very useful in diagnosing a FTMH and distinguishing it from other similar-appearing diagnoses. Lamellar macular holes have missing inner retinal tissue, but the RPE and photoreceptor layers are intact on OCT and often have a tri- or bilobulated appearance on fundus exam/photos.[1] Lamellar macular holes often lack the thickening, subretinal fluid, or cystic changes common to FTMHs.[3] Pseudoholes are due to centripetal contraction of an ERM resulting in the appearance of a hole on clinical examination, but pseudoholes do not have loss of retinal tissue on OCT.[1, 3] OCT can also help distinguish FTMHs from other similar-appearing conditions such as solar retinopathy, central serous chorioretinopathy, macular druse, pattern dystrophy, and pseudo-operculum.[3, 4] Macular holes can be sized on OCT and are classified as small <250 microns, medium 250-400 microns, or large >400 microns.[2] These are sized based on using the narrowest point in the mid retina in a plane parallel to the retina.[1]

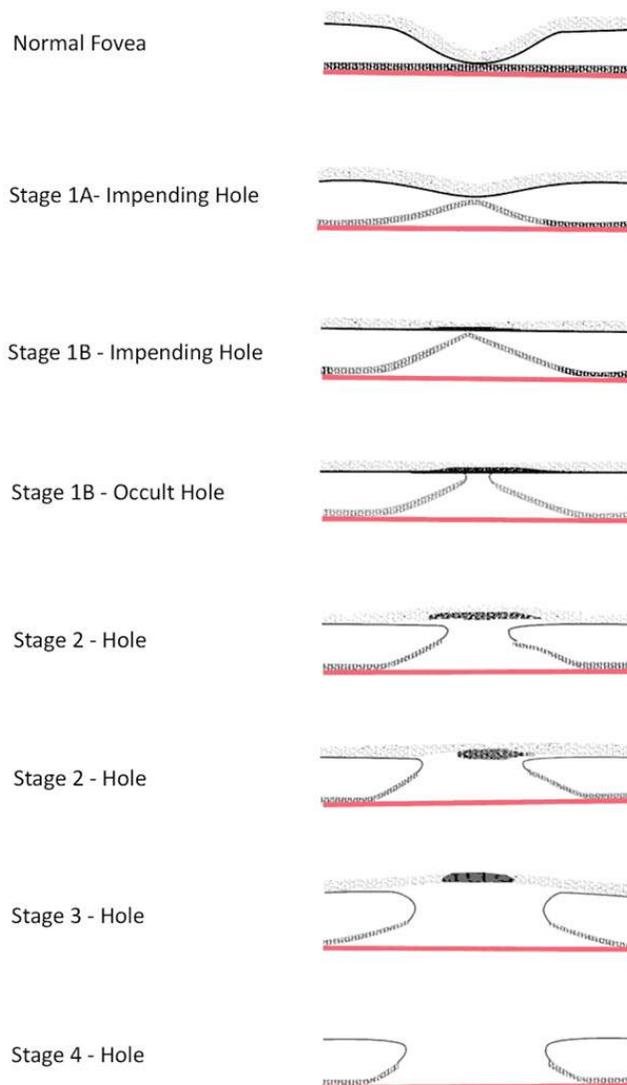


Figure 3: This figure demonstrates the stages of macular holes based on the 1995 paper by J. Donald M. Gass.[9] This figure shows the range of pathology between cystic changes (Stage 1) to full thickness defects with a complete posterior vitreous detachment (Stage 4)

Treatment/Management/Guidelines

Treatment of FTMHs was initially proposed by Kelly and Wendel in 1991, and in their early series of 52 patients, pars plana vitrectomy with vitreous cortex detachment and fluid-gas exchange was successful in closing 58% of macular holes.[10] In those who had closure, 73% had improvement in visual acuity by two lines or better.[10] The proposed mechanism in which this procedure closes holes is the release of vitreomacular traction, then gas to dehydrate the hole edges, occlude fluid, and allow glial cells to proliferate and close the hole.[1] With modern surgical techniques, the successful anatomical closure rates approach 100%.[1] Complications of the surgery include iatrogenic retinal tears (10%), ocular hypertension, endophthalmitis, cataract (50% at two-year follow up) and visual field loss.[1-3] The addition of ILM peeling has the

additional complications of ganglion cell layer loss and dissociation of the nerve fiber layer.[1] The treatment and prognosis is often dependent on the stage. Stage 1 holes will spontaneously resolve in about 50% of eyes.[2] If they do progress, it is usually early and the Vitrectomy for Prevention of Macular Hole Study Group reported that 40% of eyes with Stage 1 holes progressed over 4.1 months.[4] Once the hole is Stage 2 or more, the spontaneous closure rate is low (2-4%), and surgery is indicated to close the hole and restore vision. [3] The size of the hole is important, as holes <250 microns have a 98% surgical closure rate, while holes >400 microns have a lower closure rate at about 90%.[1] By 2-4 weeks after surgery, the successful closure is apparent on OCT with reapproximation of the retinal tissue.(3) Final vision after treatment is quite good, with 2/3 of patients 20/50 or better.[3]

Despite the relatively high success rate of repair, many controversies in macular hole surgery remain. This includes the utility of adjuvant therapies including TGF-b, autologous serum, whole blood, and autologous concentrated platelets to aid in the closure of chronic or large holes. Another controversy is the benefit of ILM removal for improved closure rates versus posterior hyaloid removal and/or ERM removal alone.[1] In one study of FTMHs >400 microns, the closure rate was 73.3%

without peel and 100% with ILM peel.(1) In FTMHs <400 microns, the closure rates were 100% for both groups (with and without ILM peel), arguing against the need for ILM peel in small FTMHs.[1]

Post-operative face down positioning has been recommended since the invention of the surgery, but its necessity is becoming less clear. Often, face down positioning for one week is recommended to provide maximum gas tamponade.[2] More recent studies have found comparable success rates with no face-down positioning after surgery, or assuming a less-strict "reading" position.[3] This is especially true if enough gas is present to isolate the hole from the vitreous over the 3-7 days required for closure.[1] Additionally, the role of gas tamponade itself is unclear. Vitreous release without gas has successfully closed some holes.[8] The release of vitreomacular traction may be the mostportant factor in allowing the hole to close and reparative gliosis to occur.[8]

Pharmacologic therapy has been developed, and intravitreal ocriplasmin is FDA-approved for the treatment of macular holes. There remains controversy about the utility of ocriplasmin, and success rates are best in the treatment of small holes with persistent vitreomacular traction.[1] In phase 3 clinical trials, small holes <250 microns had a closure rate of 58.3%.[2]

EPIDEMIOLOGY OR ETIOLOGY

- ◆ Bilateral involvement in 5-20%
- ◆ 6th and 7th decades of life
- ◆ Female to male incidence of 2:1

SIGNS

Gass Stages:

- ◆ Stage 1 - cystic foveal change
- ◆ Stage 2 - 100-300 micron full-thickness retinal defect with pseudo-operculum
- ◆ Stage 3 - 250-600 micron full-thickness retinal defect with a persistent hyaloid attachment
- ◆ Stage 4 - stage 3 with complete PVD

SYMPTOMS

- ◆ Central scotoma
- ◆ Painless central vision loss
- ◆ Metamorphopsia
- ◆ Central blurred vision

TREATMENT/MANAGEMENT

- ◆ Observation of Stage 1 holes often is appropriate
- ◆ Pars plana vitrectomy with vitreous cortex detachment, epiretinal/internal limiting membrane peel, and fluid-gas exchange
- ◆ Intravitreal ocriplasmin in select cases

References

1. Guadric, A and Tadayoni, R. Macular Hole. Ryan's Retina. Atlanta: Elsevier; 2018; p. 2213-2232.
2. McCannel, CA. Diseases of the vitreous and vitreoretinal interface. Section 12: Retina and Vitreous. San Francisco: American Academy of Ophthalmology; 2016-2017; Chapter 16, p. 294-297.
3. Moshfeghi, AA and Duker, JS. Macular hole. Ophthalmology. Edinburgh: Mosby/Elsevier; 2009; Chapter 6.31, p. 610-613.
4. Gottlieb, JL. Idiopathic macular hole. Albert & Jakobiec's Principles and Practice of Ophthalmology. Atlanta: Elsevier; 2008; p. 2029-2037.
5. Gass, JD. Idiopathic senile macular hole. Its early stages and pathogenesis. Arch Ophthalmol 1988;106(5):629-39.
6. Niwa, H, Terasaki, H, Ito, Y and Miyake, Y. Macular hole development in fellow eyes of patients with unilateral macular hole. Am J Ophthalmol 2005;140(3):370-5.

7. Johnson, MW, Van Newkirk, MR and Meyer, KA. Perifoveal vitreous detachment is the primary pathogenic event in idiopathic macular hole formation. Arch Ophthalmol 2001;119(2):215-22.
8. Smiddy, WE and Flynn, HW, Jr. Pathogenesis of macular holes and therapeutic implications. Am J Ophthalmol 2004;137(3):525-37.
9. Gass, JD. Reappraisal of biomicroscopic classification of stages of development of a macular hole. Am J Ophthalmol 1995;119(6):752-9.
10. Kelly, NE and Wendel, RT. Vitreous surgery for idiopathic macular holes. Results of a pilot study. Arch Ophthalmol 1991;109(5):654-9.

Suggested Citation Format

Janson BJ, Han IC. Full-Thickness Macular Hole (FTMH). EyeRounds.org. November 22, 2017. Available from EyeRounds.org/cases/261-FTMH.htm

last updated: 12/03/2017

Tutorials

On-Call and Trauma

The Bedside Ocular Examination

Jesse Vislisel, MD and Nasreen Syed, MD

October 26, 2012

Introduction

Ophthalmology clinics are filled with technical devices that are routinely used in patient exams. After becoming accustomed to these tools, seeing patients outside the comfortable confines of the clinic can be awkward and even challenging. For this reason, ophthalmologists should become familiar with the different tools and techniques of the bedside ocular examination.

History

Most inpatients examined by ophthalmology are seen in consultation at the request of another medical specialty. The consulting team should provide you with specific questions or concerns they would like you to address. If they have not, you should request this information from them.

Focus your history on the concerns of the requesting service. From a billing perspective, lack of a documented order from the requesting service in the medical record could result in denial of payment for the consult.

Acquire a past ocular history, paying particular attention to things such as history of eye diseases, past ocular surgeries, refractive error, history of ocular trauma, and ophthalmic medications.

For relevant cases, such as acute ocular trauma, ascertain the mechanism of injury, whether the patient was wearing glasses or eye protection, and the time and location of the incident.

Determine if the patient has family history of ocular disorders.

Also obtain relevant past medical and surgical history, social history, and review of systems (often required for consultation billing codes).

If the patient is unable to communicate, attempt to acquire information from family members, if available. If this information cannot be obtained, document this in your note. Occasionally, the patient's outside eye care provider must be contacted for additional information.

Examination

The bedside exam differs from the clinic exam in several ways.

- ◆ Typically, if you are seeing a patient at the bedside it is because he or she is physically unable to come to clinic. This may be because he or she is very ill or recovering from a recent operation. The patient may even be comatose.

- ◆ Often these patients will have a lower tolerance for the exam.
- ◆ Patients may only be able to position themselves in certain ways, and in some instances, they may not be awake or able to participate in the exam at all.
- ◆ What you are able to accomplish is highly dependent on how much the patient can cooperate.

As in clinic, always **wash your hands** before entering and when leaving each patient room.

Use **universal precautions** if there is any evidence of blood or an open wound. This is especially important for inpatients, as they may be particularly susceptible to infection, depending on their medical condition.

Make sure your instruments are clean. They usually do not need to be sterile but should not be a vector for spreading infection.

If the eyelids are exceptionally swollen, you may need to utilize one or two Desmarres retractors to assist in the exam.

Measure **visual acuity** using a near card. Always assess whether the patient normally wears refractive correction and have him or her wear it if available. Occasionally you will receive a consult for a patient with blurry vision only to discover that the vision is blurred because he or she is not wearing his or her spectacles.

Carry a few loose trial lenses (e.g. +2.00 and +3.00 diopters) with you as patients over 40 years of age may require near assistance if they do not have their usual reading correction with them. Pinhole can be used at near just as it is when measuring distance acuity if the patient can position properly.

If you plan to have serial visual acuity checks performed, remember that mydriasis and cycloplegia can have a significant impact on acuity at near, particularly in a young patient.

Confrontational visual fields are highly reliant on patient cooperation. Try to obtain them if you are able. Using two red objects, such as the bottle tops of dilating drops, usually yields better results than fingers alone.

Motility also depends on cooperation. This is critically important in facial trauma patients to assess for extraocular muscle entrapment. If a patient is unable to cooperate with this portion of the exam and there is concern for entrapment, forced ductions can be performed using toothed forceps under topical anesthesia.

The **pupil exam** is critical, especially in comatose patients. Assess pupil size, reactivity, and whether there is an afferent pupillary defect. The pupil exam can be performed

using a Finhoff illuminator, a bright pen light, or an indirect lamp on maximum brightness. If you cannot hold open both eyelids at the same time, ask for assistance from the nurse or other staff.

Intraocular pressure is usually measured using a Tono-Pen. This device requires careful technique and can be quite inaccurate in the wrong hands. If you are unsure of your result, repeat the measurement multiple times. Try to avoid pressure on the globes while holding open the eyelids as this may give a falsely elevated measurement.

The **external exam** is especially important in trauma patients. Look for evidence of fractures and lacerations. Make sure the lacrimal drainage system appears intact. Palpate for crepitus which could suggest an orbital fracture communicating with a paranasal sinus. Measure ocular position using a Hertel exophthalmometer in patients with facial trauma or proptosis.

The **anterior segment exam** is limited when compared to the detail available under the slit lamp in clinic. Portable slit lamps can be helpful, but the amount of detail is still significantly diminished compared to the full-sized models. Be careful to document only things you can reliably assess given the limitations of your equipment. For instance, do not state the anterior chamber is quiet if you cannot confidently assess for cell or flare. Instead, make more general statements such as the anterior chamber is formed. Portable slit lamps are expensive and not available everywhere. Alternatively, the anterior chamber may be assessed using the magnification from a 20-diopter binocular indirect ophthalmoscopy lens and the illumination from a Finhoff illuminator, penlight, or indirect headset.

The **fundus** may be examined by indirect or direct ophthalmoscopy, similar to what one would perform in clinic. Always check with the primary service before dilating a patient with neurologic issues, as they may be monitoring neurologic status via pupil exam. Sometimes dilation must be deferred to a later date when the patient is more stable. If it is imperative that you perform a dilated exam on an eye in a neurologically unstable patient, you may be able to dilate only that eye while leaving the other eye undilated for neurologic evaluation. It is always a good idea to notify the patient's nurse when you have dilated a patient, specifying approximately how long the drops should be expected to last. Additionally, you may wish to leave this information on a note at the patient's bedside to prevent any confusion other care providers may have after noticing the acute change in pupillary status. For patients in whom you do not need to perform a peripheral fundus exam, such as an assessment for papilledema, you can use a direct ophthalmoscope to visualize the optic nerve head and posterior pole.

Even when **dilation** is absolutely contraindicated, limited information may be gained by examining any imaging studies (computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging) for signs of disruption in the posterior pole. In cases where there may be concern for posterior segment pathology, B-scan echography may be indicated at the bedside.

Orders

In general, if the patient needs ophthalmic medications to treat their condition, these are best written by the ophthalmologist, who is most familiar with these medications. If systemic medications are needed for treatment, discuss this with the primary team and decide who should write the orders. Be clear in your note about whether medications should be continued after discharge.

Documentation

When writing your consult note, focus on the specific questions or concerns the primary team has proposed. Your note is meant to convey information to healthcare providers in other medical fields, thus you should write in a fashion that they can read and understand. The assessment and plan should be written without abbreviations or jargon. Avoid even routine ophthalmology abbreviations such as OD or OS, instead stating right eye or left eye to avoid potential confusion. It is also good practice to leave your pager number or other contact information in the note, encouraging the primary team to contact you if they have any additional questions or concerns.

In addition to your consult note, you may need to contact the consult team directly, depending on the urgency of your findings.

Follow-up

Assess whether the patient requires further ophthalmology follow-up. You may need to perform serial bedside exams during the patient's inpatient stay or it may be appropriate to arrange ophthalmology follow-up after discharge. Include follow-up recommendations in your consult note and send a letter to the patient's eye care provider if appropriate. If follow-up is particularly important, it is often helpful to secure the patient's contact information so you may call them at a later date to assure an appointment has been scheduled.

Citing this article

Vislisel J, Syed N. The Bedside Ocular Examination. EyeRounds.org. October, 26, 2012; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/bedside-ocular-exam.htm

last updated: 10/26/2012

Ocular Ultrasound

A Quick Reference Guide for the On-Call Physician

Aaron Fairbanks BS, Lorraine Myers (Provencher) MD, William Flanary MD, Laura Warner, H. Culver Boldt MD

February 4, 2016

Ocular ultrasound, also known as ocular echography, “echo,” or a B-scan, is a quick, non-invasive test routinely used in clinical practice to assess the structural integrity and pathology of the eye. It can provide additional information not readily obtained by direct visualization of ocular tissues, and it is particularly useful in patients with pathology that prevents or obscures ophthalmoscopy (e.g., large corneal opacities, dense cataracts, or vitreous hemorrhage) (1).

Some academic centers employ a highly trained ocular ultrasonographer to perform ocular ultrasound during regular business hours. Consequently, ophthalmology residents may lack technical and practical experience in ocular ultrasound. These deficiencies are highlighted when seeing patients after hours, while on-call. Proficiency in performing ocular ultrasound is an invaluable tool to the on-call physician who seeks to quickly, safely, and inexpensively examine the globe and properly triage a patient. Please note, in the setting of a suspected open globe injury, echography should only be performed by an experienced echographer, as pressure on the eye can cause further damage. Here, we present a simple, introductory “on-call survival guide” for ophthalmology residents using ocular ultrasound.

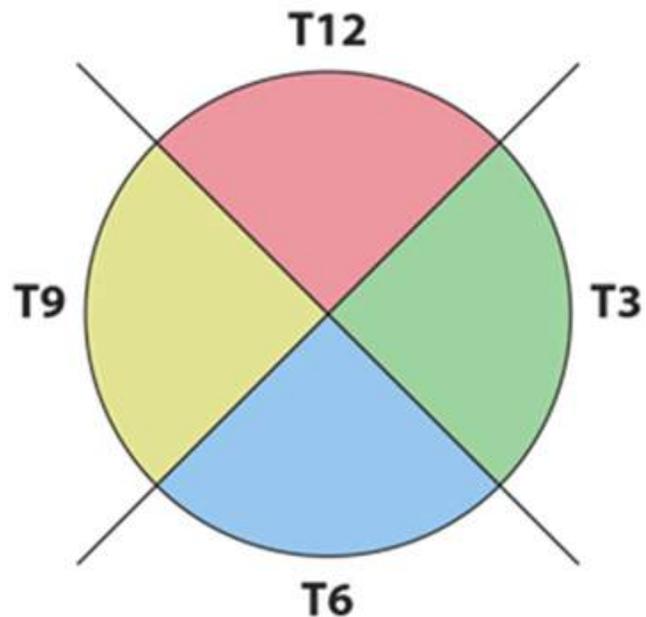


Figure 1: Schematic diagram of ultrasound quadrants

Ocular Ultrasound Technique

One can examine the entire globe in just **five** maneuvers, i.e. four dynamic quadrant views and one more static slice through the macula and optic disc, also known as longitudinal macula (LMAC). The quadrant views are designated T12, T3, T6, and T9. These numbered quadrants correspond to a clock face superimposed on the eye. For example, T12 is a view through the superior quadrant of the eye, T3 the nasal quadrant of the right eye (temporal quadrant of the left eye), and so on (Figure 1) (2).

Ultrasound images can be obtained through the patient’s eyelids (as depicted in this tutorial) or with the probe directly on the surface of the eye with appropriate topical anesthesia. Begin with the gain on high. The patient should look in the direction of the quadrant to be evaluated. The marker on the probe is always oriented superiorly or nasally by convention. Use a limbus-to-fornix rocking, rotational motion so that the tip of the probe moves a small distance, while the base of the probe moves a larger distance (Figure 2) (3). The probe rotates around the globe so that the sound waves always pass through the center of the eye. This rotational motion will maximize the amount of retina visualized during the scan. See the “Additional Information” section for more detail.

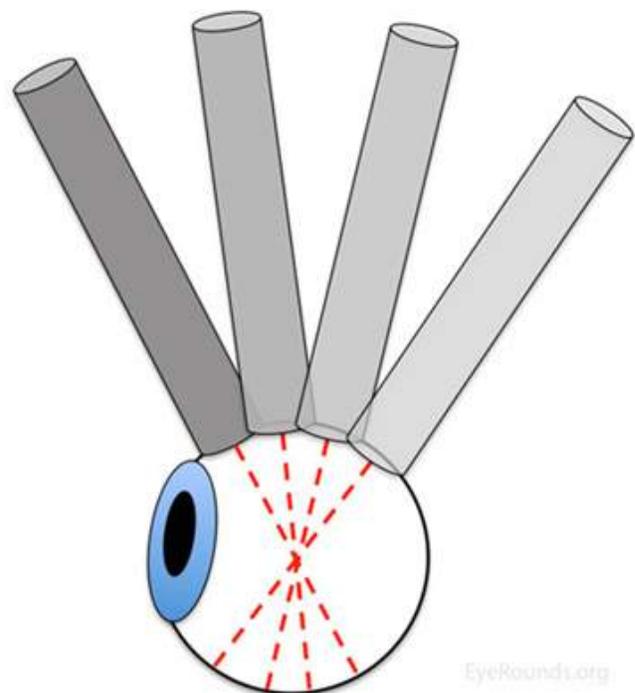


Figure 2: Limbus-to-fornix rotational motion

A Step-Wise Approach

Transverse View 1: T12 (quadrant centered at 12 o'clock)

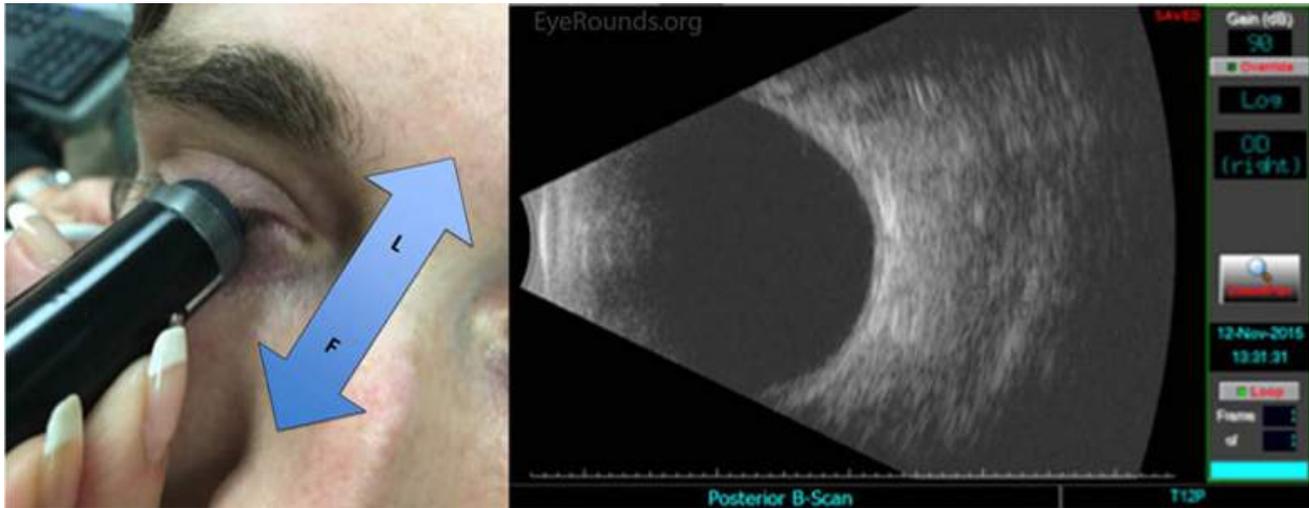


Figure 3: Ask the patient to look up. Place your probe on the inferior aspect of the globe with the marker oriented nasally. Begin at the limbus (L) and locate the optic nerve shadow, both to orient yourself and assure you are imaging the posterior segment. Slowly sweep your probe toward the inferior fornix (F) until visualization of the T12 quadrant is complete. Repeat if necessary. Remember to center any pathology along the equatorial plane of the image for the best resolution.

Transverse View 2: T6 (quadrant centered at 6 o'clock)

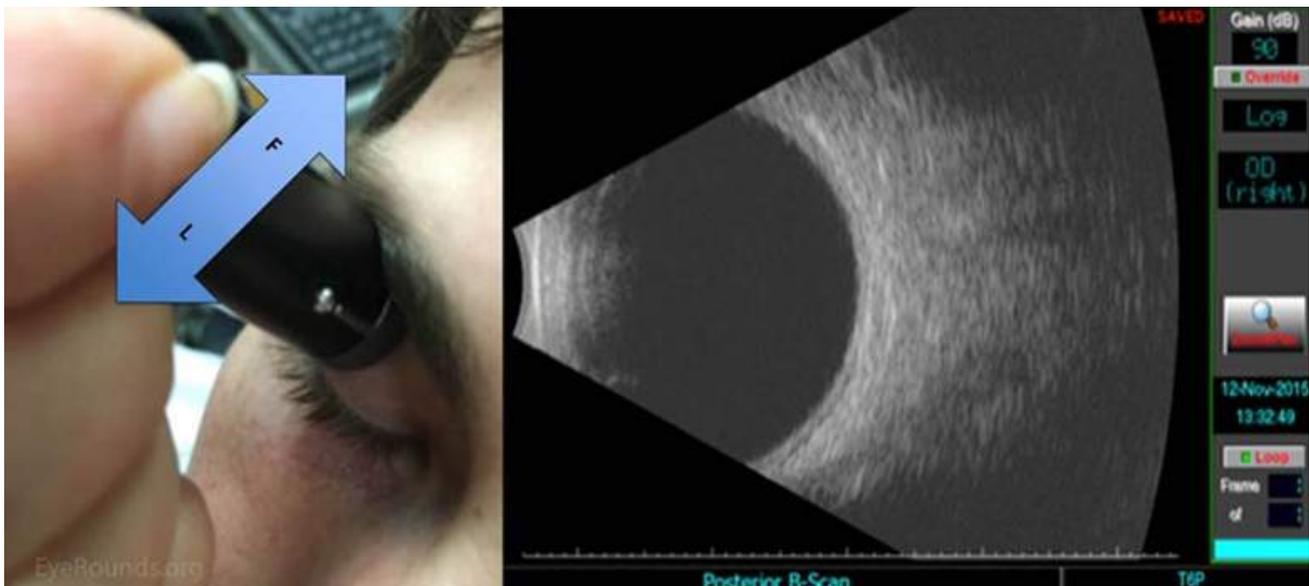


Figure 4: Ask the patient to look down. Place your probe on the superior aspect of the globe with the marker aimed nasally. Again, begin at the limbus (L)). Ensure you have an image of the retina and optic nerve before sweeping the probe toward the superior fornix (F). Repeat if necessary, centering any pathology.

Transverse View 3: T3 (quadrant centered at 3 o'clock)

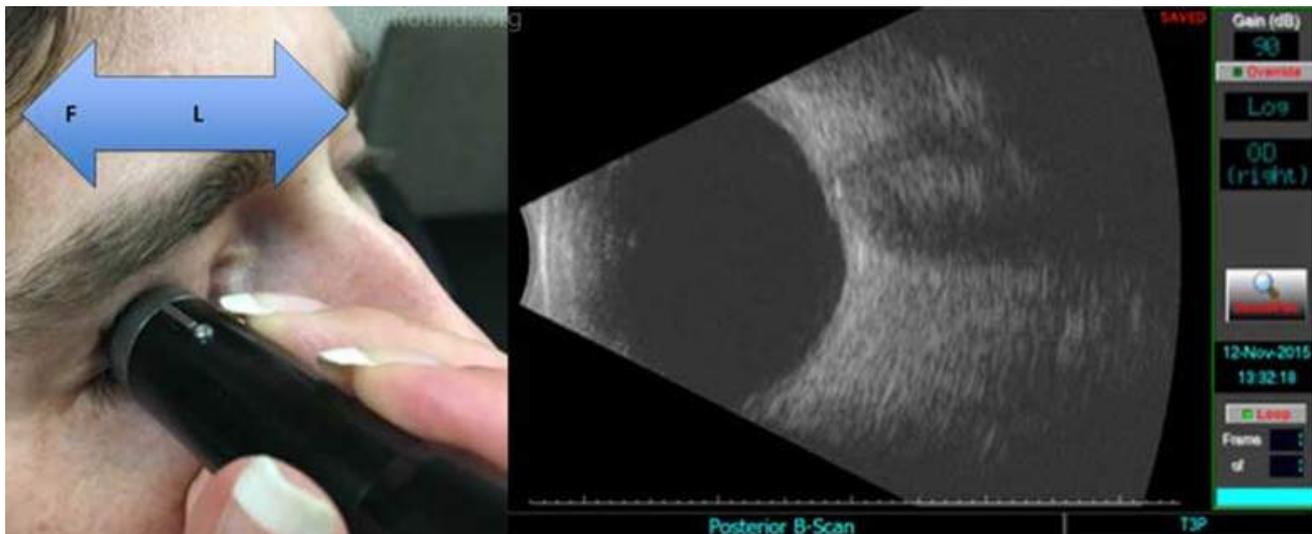


Figure 5: Remember, to scan the medial and lateral quadrants of the eye, the probe marker should point superiorly. For the T3 quadrant of the patient's right eye, instruct the patient to look left. Place the probe on the temporal limbus (L). After obtaining an image of the retina and optic nerve, gently sweep the probe to the fornix (F) to complete evaluation of this quadrant. To view the T3 quadrant of the left eye, the patient should still gaze to the left, but the probe will be placed at the medial limbus, with the marker oriented superiorly.

Transverse View 4: T9 View (quadrant centered at 9 o'clock)

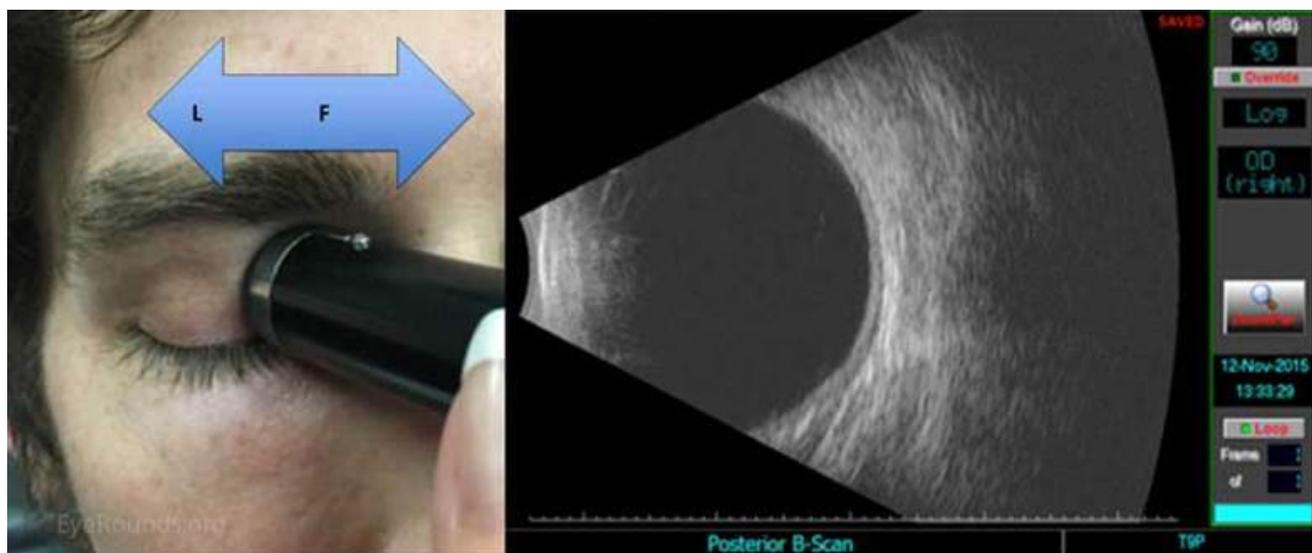


Figure 6: Scanning the T9 quadrant of the right eye is simply the reverse scan of the T3 quadrant. With the probe marker oriented superiorly, instruct the patient to direct their gaze to the right. Place the probe on the globe at the nasal limbus (L). For the T9 quadrant of the left eye, place the probe at the temporal limbus. Proceed, again with a limbus-to-fornix (F) rotational sweeping movement.

Longitudinal Macula (LMAC) View

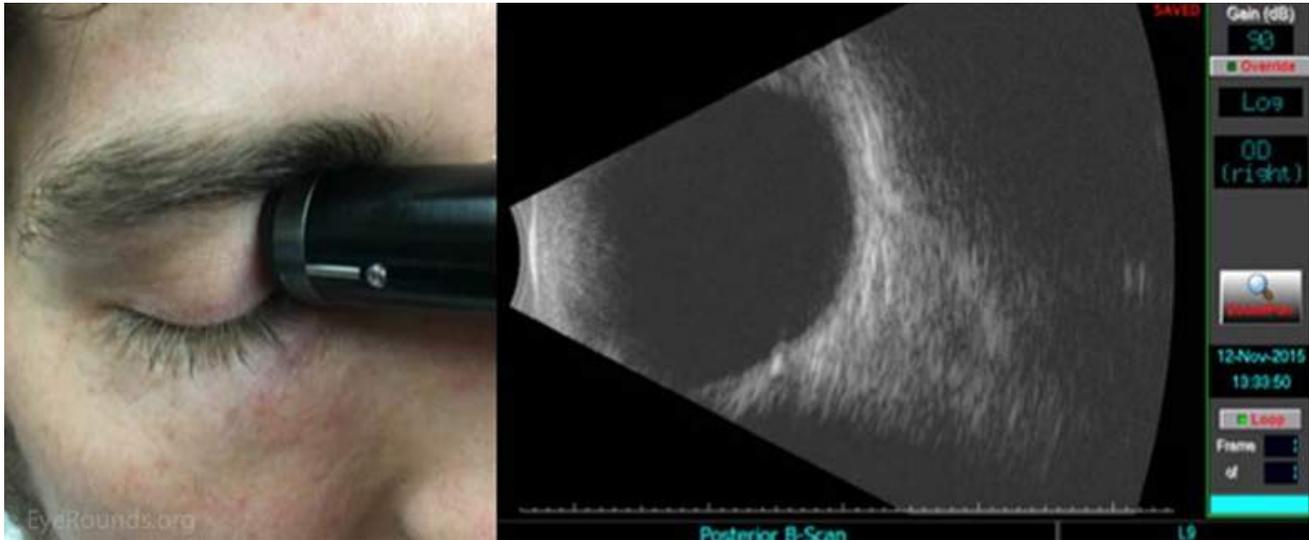


Figure 7: The LMAC view allows for proper visualization of the macula and optic nerve. Gently place the probe on the nasal aspect of the eye with the patient's gaze directed temporally. Note: For this position, the marker of the probe should be directed toward the pupil, instead of superiorly. A longitudinal scan is the only scan where this occurs! In this view, the optic nerve will be below the macula. Maneuver the probe to bring the macula into the center of the image to obtain the best resolution.

Summary

The on-call ophthalmologist must be proficient at ocular ultrasound, as it is an indispensable tool for the diagnosis and triage of ophthalmic emergencies. One can systematically examine the entire globe with just five maneuvers, i.e. four dynamic quadrant views and one longitudinal cut through the macula and disc. One must always remember that this is simply a starting point, and a more detailed, comprehensive ultrasound examination should be guided by additional clinical data and preliminary ultrasonographic findings.

Supplemental information on ocular ultrasonography (2)

1. High frequencies (approximately 10MHz) are used in ocular echography because they produce an image with greater resolution than low frequencies. While this comes at the expense of poorer tissue penetration, high frequencies retain enough penetration to properly examine the delicate ocular structures.
2. The B-scan creates a two dimensional image from a very thin slice of tissue oriented perpendicular to the cylinder of the probe.
3. The area of best resolution is along the center axis of the probe, parallel to the probe itself. Thus, the area of interest should be placed along the equatorial line of the image. In ocular ultrasound, the retina will appear on the right hand side of the image;

this is where any pathology should be focused.

4. The denser the tissue, the brighter (hyperechoic) it will appear and vice versa. If the tissue is dense enough, it will cast a "shadow" directly behind it, preventing that tissue from being evaluated.
5. As the gain is adjusted higher, weaker signals are more easily visualized (vitreous opacities, posterior vitreous detachment, small foreign bodies, etc.). As the gain is adjusted lower, stronger signals are more easily visualized (masses, tumors, etc.) and the weaker signals may be absent.
6. For transverse images, the marker on the probe is always oriented superiorly or nasally by convention. This allows any reader to interpret your images given the stated cut (e.g. T12).
7. The most effective method to examine the extent of the retina during a B-scan is to use the limbus-to-fornix technique. To perform this technique, the ultrasonographer should gently glide the probe from the limbus of the eye to the fornix in a sweeping motion to maximize the amount of retina visualized during the scan.
8. By convention, a clock face is superimposed on each eye to identify the quadrants to be scanned, similar to the method used to describe fundus lesions. While the T12 and T6 remain superiorly and inferiorly (respectively) on each eye, the T3 quadrant on the patient's right eye is located nasally, while on their left it is the temporal quadrant. The same is true for the T9 quadrant, which is located temporally on the right eye and nasally on the left eye.

References

1. Byrne SF, Green RL. Ultrasound of the eye and orbit. 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby Year Book; 2002.
2. Boldt HC, Ossoinig KC, Warner LL, Fuhrmesiter L. Echography. medicine.uiowa.edu/eye/pathology/eye/node/266. Accessed Nov. 25, 2015.
3. Waldron RG. Contact B-Scan Ultrasonography. Emory Eye Center. 2003:1-9.

Suggested Citation Format

Fairbanks A, Myers (Provencher) L, Flanary W, Warner L, Boldt HC. Ocular Ultrasound: A Quick Reference Guide for the On-Call Physician. EyeRounds.org. posted February 4, 2016; Available from: www.EyeRounds.org/tutorials/ultrasound/

last updated: 2/4/2016

Emergent Evaluation of Eyelid Lacerations

A guide for ophthalmology residents

Thomas J.E. Clark, MD; Erin M. Shriver, MD, FACS
January 4, 2016

Step 1: ALWAYS clear the globe

Step 2: History

- A. Patient age
- B. Mechanism of injury
 - 1. What type of object inflicted the injury?
 - a. Dog bites:
 - i. Recommend the dog be put down as the second bite is many times worse than the first
 - ii. Give antibiotics covering mixed flora (e.g. Streptococcal spp., Anaerobes, Pasteurella, and gram negative rods (GNR))[1]:
 - o Ampicillin/Sulbactam (Unasyn®): 1.5-3gm IV q6h [adults], 150- 300mg/kg/d IV divided q6h [pediatrics]
 - o Amoxicillin/Clavulanate (Augmentin®): 875mg/125mg PO bid [adults], 25mg/kg/d PO divided bid [pediatrics]
 - o Meropenem: 500mg IV q8h [adults] with dose adjustment for CrCl <51mL/min, 10mg/kg (max dose: 500mg) IV q8h [pediatrics]
 - o Moxifloxacin: 400mg IV or PO qd [adults], contraindicated in pediatrics
 - o Clindamycin (misses GNR and Pasteurella): 600-900mg IV q8h or 300- 450mg PO q6h [adults], 20-40mg/kg/d IV or 8-16mg/kg/d divided in 3 or 4 equal doses [pediatrics]
 - 2. Is there a potential for retained foreign body (metal vs organic material)?
- C. Time lapse since injury occurred
- D. Last oral intake
- E. Last Tetanus shot (see Tetanus Vaccination Protocol below)

Step 3: Exam

- A. Take a picture
- B. Look for **RED FLAGS** that warrant Oculoplastic involvement
 - 1. Visible orbital fat (signifies septal violation concerning for damage to deeper structures)
 - 2. Laceration of the eyelid margin (requires meticulous closure to avoid long-term sequelae from lid margin notching)
 - 3. Damage to the lacrimal system (shearing forces commonly damage the medial canthal structures) – may need to probe and irrigate to rule out canalicular involvement
 - a. Supplies needed for lacrimal system probing and irrigation:
 - i. 4% topical lidocaine
 - ii. Cotton-tipped applicator
 - iii. Punctal dilator
 - iv. Bowman probe (size 00 or 0)
 - v. 23-gauge curved lacrimal cannula on a 3cc syringe filled with fluorescein- infused saline (*this can be created with saline and a standard fluorescein strip*)

Step 4: Repair

- A. Obtain consent
- B. Take a photo
- C. Obtain necessary materials:
 - 1. Lidocaine (1% or 2% with 1:100,000 epinephrine)
 - 2. 20- and 27- or 30-gauge needles [draw with 20-gauge, administer with 27- or 30- gauge]
 - 3. 3mL or 5mL syringe
 - 4. Sterile saline with irrigation tip
 - 5. 5% Betadine (Povidone-iodine)
 - 6. 0.5% topical proparacaine drops
 - 7. Castroviejo needle holder
 - 8. Paufrage forceps
 - 9. Suture (5-0 or 6-0 Fast vs 7-0 Vicryl vs 7-0 nylon)
 - 10. Straight scissors
 - 11. Sterile gloves
 - 12. Mask
 - 13. Erythromycin ointment
 - 14. Sterile eye drape
 - 15. Sterile gauze and cotton-tipped applicators
 - 16. Mayo stand and sterile drop cloths, if available (if not, can set instruments and supplies on the opened sterile gloves wrapper)
- D. Anesthetize
- E. Explore
- F. Irrigate with copious amounts of sterile saline
- G. Anti-sepsis: prep with 5% Betadine *until the tissue bleeds*
- H. Prepare a sterile surgical field utilizing a Mayo stand with sterile drop cloths (can then open and arrange instruments and suture), sterile gloves, mask, and sterile drape
- I. Close the wound
 - 1. General principles [2]
 - a. Tissue is almost never missing
 - b. Strive for tension-free closure to avoid lagophthalmos/exposure keratopathy
 - c. Unless completely unavoidable, avoid making vertically-oriented suture passes as closing a horizontally-oriented wound with vertically-oriented suture passes can cause vertical cicatrization resulting in ectropion/lagophthalmos/exposure keratopathy
 - d. Cicatricial changes pull the lower lid down—attempt to elevate the lower lid as much as possible during repair (in cases of unavoidable vertical tension, a frost suture or temporary tarsorrhaphy may need to be placed)
 - e. *NEVER* suture the orbital septum
 - 2. Suture selection considerations
 - a. Patient expectations regarding scarring
 - o If aesthetics are important to the patient and the patient is able to return to clinic in order to have the sutures removed, non-absorbable monofilament sutures (e.g. nylon or Prolene) are preferable

- b. Patient reliability for follow-up
 - o Avoid non-absorbable sutures in patients unlikely to return for removal
 - c. Amount of tension
 - o Braided sutures are superior for wound closure under tension
 - d. Complexity of laceration/necessity of both deep and cutaneous closures
 - o Use 5-0 or 6-0 Vicryl for deep closures
3. Suturing technique
- a. Simple, interrupted closure is sufficient and preferable in most cases
 - o Divide the wound in half with the first suture pass, then continue to halve the remaining unclosed wound segments
 - a. For extensive lacerations, a running closure is more expedient
 - b. Can use a combination of interrupted and running closures, with interrupted sutures placed at points of tension and locations where the laceration changes direction

J. Apply erythromycin ophthalmic ointment to the wound

1. If the patient has an erythromycin allergy, can use bacitracin ointment or Polysporin® (bacitracin + polymyxin B) ointment

Suture	Absorbability	Filament Type	Advantages	Disadvantages
5-0 Fast Gut	Absorbable (1 week)	Mono	Infection less likely	More difficult to handle
				Highly inflammatory
7-0 Vicryl	Absorbable (4-6 weeks)	Braided	Easy to handle	Infection and suture granuloma more likely
			least inflammatory of absorbable sutures	
7-0 Nylon	Non-absorbable	Mono	Least inflammatory	Requires follow-up for removal
			Best aesthetic outcomes	
			Infection less likely	

*Table adapted from Lee & Carter, 2006 [3]

Step 5: Post-closure cares/follow-up

- A. Apply erythromycin (vs bacitracin vs Polysporin®) ophthalmic ointment to the wound TID
- B. Arrange follow-up in Oculoplastics clinic within 10 days
- C. Remove sutures (if Vicryl or nylon were used) 6-10 days post-operatively

Step 6: Wound management/scar maintenance

- A. Avoid direct sunlight exposure for at least 6 months
- B. *Once wound is healed...* MASSAGE, MASSAGE, MASSAGE
 1. 20 strokes TID
 2. Topical vitamin E or Mederma®

Tetanus Vaccination Protocol

	Clean knife wound		All other wounds	
History	Tet Vac	Tet Ig	Tet Vac	Tet Ig
< 3 doses	Y	N	Y	Y
≥ 3 doses	If ≥ 10 yrs since last Tet Vac	N	If ≥ 5 yrs since last Tet Vac	N

***Tet Vac**

- o if < 7 years old, give DTap
- o if > 7 years old with no prior Tdap, give Tdap
- o if > 7 years old with prior Tdap, give Td

^Tet Ig

- o give 250 Units IM at site away from Tet Vac site
- o if no Tet Ig available, give Tet IVIg

Table adapted from CDC, 2011 [4]

References

1. Stevens DL, Bisno AL, Chamber HF, et al. Practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of skin and soft tissue infections: 2014 update by the Infectious Disease Society of America. *Clin Infect Dis.* 2014;59:e10-52.
2. Nerad JA. Chapter 13. Eyelid and Orbital Trauma. IN: *Techniques in Ophthalmic Plastic Surgery— A Personal Tutorial.* Elsevier, 2010; pp 355-369.
3. Lee J, Carter KD. Chapter 6. Suture Materials and Needle. IN: *Basic Principles of Ophthalmic Surgery*, TA Oetting (Second Ed.) American Academy of Ophthalmology, 2006, 2011; pp 83-89.
4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Updated recommendations for use of tetanus toxoid, reduced diphtheria toxoid and acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine from the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices 2010. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep.* 2011;60:13.

Citing this document

Clark TJE, Shriver EM. Emergent Evaluation of Eyelid Lacerations: A guide for ophthalmology residents. EyeRounds.org. December 17, 2015; Available from: EyeRounds.org/tutorials/eyelid-lacerations

Index

- Aphakic Glaucoma 35-39
- Apraxia of Eyelid Opening 84-86
- Aqueous Misdirection 45-49
- Bedside Ocular Exam 321-322
- Bell's Palsy 96-102
- Benign Lesions, External Periocular Tissues 246-253
- Binocular Vision 297-308
- Blepharospasm 84-86
- Carotid Cavernous Fistula 87-90
- Cataract 19-222, 188-193
- Chalazion 91-95
- Congenital dacryocystocele 112-114
- Cornea 1-18, 143-187
- Corneal Degeneration, Salzmann's Nodular 2-8
- Corneal Dystrophies 168-176
- Corneal Hydrops 14-18
- Corneal Imaging 144-155
- Corneal Transplantation 156-167
- Dacryocystocele 112-114
- Dystrophy, Corneal 168-176
- Endophthalmitis 136-142
- Epithelial Basement Membrane Dystrophy 9-13
- Ethambutol Toxicity 71-76
- Exfoliation Syndrome 29-33
- External Disease 1-18, 143-198
- Eye Injury 120-123
- Eyelid Lacerations 328-331
- Facial Nerve Decompression 96-102
- Fistula, Carotid Cavernous 87-90
- Functional Visual Loss 61-65
- Fungal endophthalmitis 136-142
- Glaucoma Surgery 201-214
- Glaucoma 34-59, 194-214
- Glaucoma, Medical Management 195-200
- Glaucomatocyclitic Crisis 56-59
- Hydrops, Corneal 14-18
- Hypotony 50-55
- Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension 224-235
- Idiopathic Juxtafoveal Telangiectasia Type II 124-130
- Imaging, Cornea 144-155
- Injection Technique 307-314
- Intraocular Foreign Body 120-123
- Intravitreal Injection Technique 307-314
- Iris Prolapse 192-193
- Keratotomy 9-13
- Keratoconjunctivitis, Phlyctenular 115-118
- Lesions, Benign, External Periocular Tissues 246-253
- Lesions, Malignant, External Periocular Tissues 256-261
- Macular Hole 315-319
- Macular Telangiectasia type 2 124-130
- Maculopathy, hypotony 50-55
- Malignant Lesions, External Periocular Tissues 256-261
- Marfan Syndrome 20-23
- MIGS 201-214
- Myokymia, Superior Oblique 103-106
- Nasolacrimal Stents 280-286
- Nerve Blocks 287-289
- Neuro-Ophthalmology 60-82, 215-244
- Nystagmus 236-244
- Ocular Exam, Bedside 321-322
- Ocular Surface Tumors 177-187
- Ocular Tilt Reaction 66-70
- Ocular Ultrasound 323-327
- Oculoplastic Surgery 83-106, 245-289
- On-Call and Trauma 320-331
- Optic Neuritis 77-82
- Optic Neuropathy, Ethambutol 71-76
- Orbital Cellulitis 108-111
- Patient Communication 189-191
- Pediatric Ophthalmology 107-118
- Pediatric Spectacle Prescription 291-296
- Peribulbar Block 287-289
- Phlyctenular Keratoconjunctivitis 115-118
- Posner-Schlossman Syndrome 56-59
- Posterior Polar Cataract 24-28
- Posterior Vitreous Detachment, Impending 131-135
- Prescription, Pediatric Spectacle 291-296
- Prolapse, Iris 192-193
- Pseudotumor Cerebri 224-235
- Retina and Vitreous 119-142, 306-319
- Retinoscopy 291-296
- Retrobulbar Block 287-289
- Saccadic Oscillations 236-244
- Salzmann's Nodular Corneal Degeneration 2-8
- Staphylococcal Blepharitis 115-118
- Strabismus 290-305
- Thyroid Eye Disease 262-279
- Trabeculectomy 50-55
- Transplantation, Cornea 156-167
- Tumors, Ocular Surface 177-187
- Uveitis Glaucoma Hyphema (UGH) Syndrome 40-44
- Vertical Oscillopsia 103-106
- Visual Field Testing 216-223
- Visual Loss, Functional 61-65
- Vitreous Syneresis 131-135